HEATH'S PRACTICAL LATIN COURSE

MOULTON

D. C. HEATH & COMPANY
LONDON

HEATH'S PRACTICAL LATIN COURSE

HARRAP'S GRAMMARS

HEATH'S PRACTICAL FRENCH GRAMMAR
By W. H. FRASER and J. SQUAIR. 4s. 6d. The most popular French Grammar on modern lines.

HEATH'S NEW PRACTICAL FRENCH GRAMMAR
By W. H. FRASER and J. SQUAIR. 5s. Identical with the preceding book, but the exercises and material for oral drill in Section I have been re-written and rearranged.

HEATH'S MODERN FRENCH GRAMMAR
By W. H. FRASER and J. SQUAIR. 3s. 6d. A complete course on the lesson-by-lesson method.

A GRAMMAR OF PRESENT-DAY FRENCH
By J. E. MANSION. 3s. 6d. A new grammar for middle and senior forms.

HARRAP'S MODERN GERMAN GRAMMAR
By W. H. FRASER and W. H. VAN DER SMISSEN. 3s. 6d. Resembles in method the successful *Modern French Grammar*.

HEATH'S PRACTICAL GERMAN GRAMMAR
By E. S. JOYNES and E. C. WESSELHOEFT. 4s. 6d. A thorough and systematic course, adequate for university students.

ELEMENTARBUCH DER DEUTSCHEN SPRACHE
By A. WERNER-SPANHOOFD. 3s. 6d. Contains many new and excellent features.

A FIRST SPANISH COURSE
By E. C. HILLS and J. D. M. FORD. 3s. 6d. A somewhat easier course than the authors' earlier *Practical Spanish Grammar*.

ITALIAN GRAMMAR
By C. H. GRANDGENT. 3s.

HARRAP'S PRACTICAL RUSSIAN GRAMMAR
By R. T. CURRALL. With Phonetic Transcript, Exercises in Russian Handwriting, and Full Vocabularies. 6s.

* * *

Write for new Catalogue of our Modern Language Series, containing over 450 *titles*

THE ROMAN FORUM — *After Von Falke*

HEATH'S PRACTICAL LATIN COURSE

FOR BEGINNERS

BY

FRANK PRESCOTT MOULTON M.A.

WITH A SELECTION OF

EXTRACTS FROM OVID

BY

J. T. PHILLIPSON M.A.

HEADMASTER OF CHRIST'S COLLEGE
FINCHLEY

REVISED EDITION

LONDON
D. C. HEATH AND COMPANY
39–41 PARKER STREET KINGSWAY W.C.
AND AT SYDNEY

First published March 1908
Reprinted: September 1912; August 1916; February 1918;
February 1920; March 1922; March 1924;
August 1925; September 1926

Printed in Great Britain by Turnbull & Spears, Edinburgh

PREFACE

CONCENTRATION and economy of effort are the first conspicuous aims of this book. Things naturally belonging together are grouped together: third declension nouns are followed by third declension adjectives, and the declension of adjectives by the comparison of adjectives. No two difficult and confusing subjects — like, for instance, the conjugation of *iō*-verbs and nouns with *i*-stems — are brought into the same chapter.

No division or grouping of topics can possibly be so made that each chapter will be just enough for a lesson. Therefore into each chapter are grouped such subjects and such exercises as should be studied together, and the teacher is left free to give to each chapter whatever time is necessary. Many chapters will require more than one lesson.

Forms and constructions are introduced, so far as possible, only when they can afterwards be continually used. Connected Latin for reading is introduced early — but not till preparation for it has been made; after being once introduced, it is kept up.

The pronouns are not introduced till after connected discourse, for their meanings and force cannot be understood from detached sentences. When the pronouns are introduced, they are treated with such discrimination and precision that the pupil gains a distinct and accurate knowledge of their use and meanings.

After the second declension the verb is introduced. *Laudō* and *moneō* are studied at the same time, for the two can be learned together just as easily as either alone. Several lessons are then concentrated on the verb, till the entire indicative of three conjugations is learned. This knowledge of verb forms makes possible a greater variety of sentences in connection with the study of the third declension, adjectives, pronouns, etc.

pupil finishes the exercises, he will have read an epitome of the first thirty chapters of Cæsar containing a connected account of the whole Helvetian war. And the work is so gradual and progressive that he will not realize any break in his work when taking up Cæsar. In short, the reading lessons furnish not only a preparation for Cæsar, but a preparation in Cæsar.

A selection of extracts from Ovid, a few fables and some early Roman history, adapted directly from Livy by the author, are given at the end of the book. No young student of Latin ought to miss this, for no other Latin so quickly introduces the learner into the method of thought and speech of the Romans. Yet, if for any reason the teacher wishes to shorten the course, the seventy-four chapters will give the pupils such an acquaintance with the vocabulary and style of Cæsar that the class can begin at once the reading of that author with a feeling of confidence.

It has been the constant aim in preparing this book to secure clearness of statement, adaptation to the class-room, completeness, accuracy, and logical development. The degree of success with which this object has been secured is due largely to the helpful suggestions and criticisms offered by those who have read the manuscript and proof.

FRANK PRESCOTT MOULTON.

CONTENTS

CHAPTER		PAGE
I.	THE ALPHABET. PRONUNCIATION. SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS	1
II.	SYLLABLES. QUANTITY OF VOWELS. QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES	3
III.	ACCENT. GENDER. INFLECTION	5
IV.	FIRST DECLENSION	8
V.	FIRST DECLENSION, Continued. **Laudō**: Present Indicative Active	10
VI.	FIRST DECLENSION, Continued. **Moneō**: Present Indicative Active. GENITIVE AND INDIRECT OBJECT	12
VII.	SECOND DECLENSION. THE VOCATIVE CASE AND THE ABLATIVE OF MEANS	15
VIII.	ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS. AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES. QUESTIONS	18
IX.	SECOND DECLENSION, Continued: Nouns in **-er** and **-ir** and Adjectives in **-er**	21
X.	REVIEW OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS	23
XI.	**Laudō** AND **Moneō**: Future and Imperfect Active	25
XII.	**Laudō** AND **Moneō**: Present, Future, and Imperfect Passive. ABLATIVE OF AGENT	27
XIII.	CONJUGATION OF **Sum**: Present, Future, and Imperfect. PREDICATE: NOUN AND ADJECTIVE	30
XIV.	CONJUGATION OF **Sum**: Perfect, Future Perfect, Pluperfect. DATIVE OF POSSESSOR	32
XV.	**Laudō** AND **Moneō**: INDICATIVE, Completed. PERFECT INFINITIVE	34
XVI.	THIRD CONJUGATION: **Regō**	39
XVII.	THIRD CONJUGATION: **-iō** VERBS	42
XVIII.	**Regō** AND **Capiō**: INDICATIVE, Completed	44
XIX.	REVIEW OF VERB-FORMS	46
XX.	THIRD DECLENSION: Mute Stems. ABLATIVE OF MANNER, ETC.	48
XXI.	THIRD DECLENSION: Liquid Stems	51

XXII. THIRD DECLENSION: **i**-Stems. GENITIVE OF QUALITY 54
XXIII. THIRD DECLENSION: Mixed **i**-Stems. ABLATIVE OF CAUSE 57
XXIV. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION 60
XXV. REVIEW OF THE THIRD DECLENSION. READING LESSON. *Demosthenes the Orator* 63
XXVI. READING LESSON WITH INTRODUCTION TO CÆSAR. ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION 65
XXVII. REVIEW OF ADJECTIVES AND THE RULES OF SYNTAX. READING LESSON 67
XXVIII. FOURTH CONJUGATION: INDICATIVE, Complete. COMPARATIVE VIEW OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS . . 68
XXIX. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES. THE ABLATIVE WITH THE COMPARATIVE 70
XXX. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES, Continued. ABLATIVE OF MEASURE OF DIFFERENCE 72
XXXI. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES: Irregular Comparison. THE PARTITIVE GENITIVE 74
XXXII. FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS 77
XXXIII. TEN ADJECTIVES WITH GENITIVE IN **-ius**. DECLENSION OF **ūnus, duo, trēs,** AND **mīlle** 80
XXXIV. NUMERALS. READING LESSON 82
XXXV. FOURTH DECLENSION: Stem in **-u** 84
XXXVI. FIFTH DECLENSION: Stem in **-ē**. ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT AND ABLATIVE OF TIME 86
XXXVII. REVIEW OF COMPARISON. READING LESSON: *Story of Deucalion and Pyrrha* 89
XXXVIII. REVIEW OF ADJECTIVES WITH GENITIVE IN **-ius**, NUMERALS, ETC. READING LESSON: *Story of Deucalion and Pyrrha*, Continued 90
XXXIX. RELATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS 92
XL. PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS. POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES 96
XLI. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS: **is, īdem** 99
XLII. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS: **hĭc, ille, iste, ipse** . . 102
XLIII. REVIEW OF PRONOUNS. READING LESSON: *The Golden Touch of Midas* 105
XLIV. DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES. COMPOUND VERBS. READING LESSON 107

XLV. Derivative Nouns and Adjectives. Reading Lesson 108

XLVI. Subjunctive Mood: Active Voice, All Conjugations. Subjunctive of Purpose 111

XLVII. Subjunctive Mood: Its General Character. Subjunctive with **cum**, and Subjunctive of Result . . . 114

XLVIII. Subjunctive Mood: Passive Voice, All Conjugations. Indirect Questions and Sequence of Tenses . 117

XLIX. Imperative Mood: Active Voice. Reading Lesson . 121

L. Imperative Mood: Passive Voice. Reading Lesson 123

LI. Infinitive: Active and Passive. Complementary and Object Infinitive. Indirect Discourse 125

LII. Uses of the Participles. Dative with the Gerundive 128

LIII. Geruni and Supine: Formation and Uses . . . 131

LIV. Review of **Laudō**: Active with Synopsis. Reading Lesson 134

LV. Review of **Laudō**: Passive with Synopsis. Reading Lesson 135

LVI. Review of **Moneō**: Complete. Reading Lesson . . 135

LVII. Review of **Regō** and **Capiō**: Complete. Reading Lesson 136

LVIII. Review of **Audiō**: Complete. Ablative Absolute and Relative Clause of Purpose. Reading Lesson 137

LIX. **Sum**, **Possum**, **Prōsum**. Dative with Compounds and Dative of Service 139

LX. **Volō**, **Nolō**, **Malō** 141

LXI. **Eō** and **Adeō**. Rules for Names of Cities, and **domus** and **rūs** 142

LXII. **Ferō** and **Fīō**. Dative with Special Verbs . . . 145

LXIII. Deponent Verbs. The Ablative with **ūtor**, **fruor**, etc. 146

LXIV. Impersonal Verbs. Passive of Intransitive Verbs 148

LXV. Two Accusatives and Ablative of Separation. Reading Lesson 150

LXVI. Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Discourse. Cognate Accusative. Reading Lesson 152

LXVII. Genitive with Adjectives and the Ablative of Quality. Reading Lesson 154
LXVIII. Verbs of Fearing and Indirect Requests. Hortatory Subjunctive. Reading Lesson 155
LXIX. Indefinite Pronouns. Reading Lesson 157
LXX. Review of Tenses of the Subjunctive in Dependent Clauses. Reading Lesson 159
LXXI. Tenses of Participles and Infinitives. Reading Lesson 160
LXXII. Temporal Clauses with **dum**, **dōnec**, etc. Reading Lesson 163
LXXIII. The Indicative with **postquam**, **ubi**, etc. Reading Lesson 164
LXXIV. Conditions and Wishes 166
Selections for Reading 171
Fables 171
Roman History 173
Extracts from Ovid 189
Appendix 203
Tables of Declensions, Conjugations, etc. 203
Rules of Syntax 241
Vocabulary 247
Latin-English Vocabulary 247
English-Latin Vocabulary 279
Index 285

HEATH'S PRACTICAL LATIN COURSE

HEATH'S PRACTICAL LATIN COURSE

CHAPTER I

THE ALPHABET

1. The Latin Alphabet is the same as the English except that it has no **w**.

2. The vowels, as in English, are **a, e, i, o, u, y**. All other letters are consonants.

NOTE. — Vowels are letters representing sounds that can be uttered by themselves alone. A consonant can be sounded only in combination with a vowel.

3. Consonants are classified as:

MUTES	**b, c, d, g, k, p, q, t.**
LIQUIDS	**l, m, n, r.**
SIBILANT	**s.**
DOUBLE CONSONANTS . .	**x** = **cs** or **gs**, and **z** = **ds**.

PRONUNCIATION

Vowels

4. A vowel in Latin has only one sound. This sound is sometimes prolonged and sometimes shortened. A straight mark (¯), called a *macron*, placed over a vowel shows that the vowel is long; a curved mark (˘), called a *breve*, shows that the vowel is short.

NOTE. — As all vowels are either long or short, for convenience the long vowels only are marked; all unmarked vowels are to be considered short.

SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS

Vowels

5.

Long **a** (ā) is sounded like *a* in *father*;	short **a** (ă) as *a* in *idea.*
Long **e** (ē) is sounded like *e* in *they*;	short **e** (ĕ) as *e* in *then.*
Long **i** (ī) is sounded like *i* in *machine*;	short **i** (ĭ) as *i* in *pin.*
Long **o** (ō) is sounded like *o* in *note*;	short **o** (ŏ) as *o* in *obey.*
Long **u** (ū) is sounded like *oo* in *pool*;	short **u** (ŭ) as *u* in *pull.*

Diphthongs

6. A diphthong is the combination of two vowels in one syllable. Diphthongs have the following sounds:

ae is sounded like *ai* in *aisle.*
oe is sounded like *oi* in *boil.*
au is sounded like *ou* in *our.*
eu is sounded like *eu* in *feud.*
ei is sounded like *ei* in *eight.*

NOTE. — When two vowels, which ordinarily make a diphthong, are to be pronounced separately, two dots, called *diæresis*, are placed over the second vowel to show that the vowels make two syllables instead of one, as: **coërcēre**, pronounced **co-er-cē-re**, *to coërce* or *restrain.*

Consonants

7. Consonants are sounded as in English except that **b** before **s** or **t** has the sound of ***p***, and **h** is not sounded.

c is always hard like *c* in *come*;	never like *c* in *cent.*
g is always hard like *g* in *get*;	never like *g* in *gem.*
s is always sharp like *s* in *this*;	never like *s* in *his.*
t is always like *t* in *native*;	never like *t* in *nation.*
v is always like *w* in *wine*;	never like *v* in *vine.*
ch is always like *ch* in *chasm*;	never like *ch* in *chant.*

I-Consonant

8. When **i** is followed by a vowel in the same syllable, it has the force of a consonant. The i-consonant (or **j**, which is sometimes used in place of it) is pronounced as *y* in *yes*, *your*, *yard*, etc., as: **iacet**, pronounced **yá-ket**.

9. Pronounce the following words according to the rules given:

1. Dūcō, *I lead.* 2. Cantūs avium amāmus, *the songs of birds we love.* 3. Mors est certa, *death is certain.* 4. Hīc liber est tuus, *this book is yours.* 5. Achillēs erat audāx vir, *Achilles was a bold man.* 6. Ītalia est in Eurōpā, *Italy is in Europe.* 7. Prīma pars īnsulae, *the first part of the island.* 8. Hōc genus pugnae, *this kind of fighting.* 9. Hae nātiōnēs, *these nations.* 10. Is quī, *he who.* 11. Aristīdēs vocābātur Iūstus, *Aristides was called the Just.* 12. Urbs Trōiāna ā Graecīs obsidēbātur, *the Trojan city was besieged by the Greeks.*

CHAPTER II

SYLLABLES

10. Two vowels with a consonant between them are never pronounced in one syllable. Compare the English *more*, one syllable, with the Latin **mōre**, pronounced **mṓ-re**, two syllables; the English *reside*, two syllables, and the Latin **resīde**, pronounced **re-sī́-de**, three syllables; the English *delicate*, three syllables, with the Latin **dēlicātē**, pronounced **dē-li-cā́-tē**, four syllables. *Therefore in a Latin word there are as many syllables as there are vowels or diphthongs.*

11. *a.* A single consonant in Latin is always pronounced with the vowel, or diphthong, that follows it, as: **referō**, pronounced **ré-fe-rō**; **domine**, pronounced **dó-mi-ne**.

b. Doubled consonants, like **ll** or **ss**, must be separated and each distinctly sounded, as: **ille**, íl-le; **missus**, mís-sus. This is like the English *ill-luck* rather than *hilly*; *mis-sent* rather than *missile*; *rat-trap* rather than *rattle.*

c. When two or more different consonants come together, as many as can be pronounced together are sounded with the following vowel, as: **restringō**, re-strín-gō.

d. But compound words are divided so as to show the parts of the compound, as: **ab-est** (**ab**, *away* + **est**, *he is*), *he is away.*

12. Divide into syllables these words: **dōnō**, **minimus**, **lēgātus**, **mittō**, **referre**, **cōnstanter**, **patris**, **intrā**, **ratiō**, **dominus**, **sagitta.**

QUANTITY OF VOWELS

13. *a.* A vowel before a vowel or **h** is short, as: **dĕa**, *goddess*; **nĭhil**, *nothing.*

NOTE. — The few exceptions to this rule will be properly marked as they occur.

b. A vowel is short before **nd** or **nt**, as: **cŏntĕndĕnt**, *they will contend.*

c. Diphthongs are always long, as: **fo͞edus**, *treaty.*

d. A vowel, formed by contracting two vowels into one, is long, as: **cōgō** (**cŏ** + **ăgō**), *I gather.*

e. A vowel is long before **nf** or **ns**, as: **īnfāns**, *child.*

QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES

14. A syllable is long or short according to the time it takes to pronounce it properly.

a. A syllable is long by nature if it contains a diphthong or a long vowel, as: **audāx**, *bold.*

b. A syllable is long by position if its vowel is followed by two or more consonants (except a mute before *l* or *r*)

even though the vowel itself be short, as: **impéllunt**, *they impel.*

NOTE. — The reason for this is evident; if there are two or more consonants (except a mute with *l* or *r*), one at least of these consonants must be pronounced with the vowel before it; and it takes longer to pronounce distinctly a vowel and a consonant than to pronounce a vowel alone. *But the vowel itself must nevertheless be pronounced short.*

Names of Syllables

15. The last syllable of a word is called the *ultima*, the next to the last the *penult*, and the syllable before the penult is called the *antepenult.*

Enclitics

16. An enclitic is a word, generally of one syllable, attached to another word. The most common are **-ne**, the sign of a question, **-que**, *and*, **-ve**, *or*, and sometimes **cum**, *with*, as: **mēcum**, *with me*; **vidēsne**, *do you see?*

CHAPTER III

ACCENT

17. *a.* Words of two syllables are accented on the penult, as: **dō̆num**, *gift*; **déa**, *goddess.*

b. Words of more than two syllables are accented on the penult, if the penult is long; on the antepenult, if the penult is short, as: **amā̆mus**, **reférre**, **hómĭnēs**, **fĭlius.**

c. When an enclitic is joined to a word, the accent falls on the syllable before the enclitic, whether that syllable is long or short, as: **fīliáque.**

18. Divide into syllables, mark the accent, and pronounce the following words: **puer**, **puella**, **dominus**, **cōnferō**, **cōnferre**, **fīlius**, **contulī**, **conlātus**, **nātiō**, **deaque**, **habēsne**, **Orgetorīx**, **Achillēs**, **Pompēius.**

GENDER

19. Gender in Latin is either Natural, as in English, or merely Grammatical, thus:

a. Names of males are masculine, names of females are feminine.

b. Names of objects neither male nor female, called *neuter* (that is, *neither* gender) in English, are masculine, feminine, or neuter, as indicated by certain endings. (These endings are given later.)

INFLECTION

20. Inflection is the change made in the form of a word to indicate case, number, mood, tense, etc.

a. The inflection of nouns, adjectives, pronouns, and participles, to denote gender, number, and case, is called *declension.*

b. The inflection of verbs to denote voice, mood, tense, number, and person is called *conjugation.*

c. Adverbs, prepositions, conjunctions, and interjections have no inflection, and are sometimes called *particles.*

Declension

21. Nouns, pronouns, adjectives, and participles are declined in two numbers, *singular* and *plural;* and in five cases, *nominative, accusative, genitive, dative,* and *ablative.*

a. The Nominative is the case of the Subject of a sentence.

b. The Accusative is the case of the Direct Object of a verb. It is used also after some prepositions.

c. The Genitive corresponds to the English Possessive or the Objective with the preposition *of.*

d. The Dative is the case of the Indirect Object. It may usually be translated by *to* or *for.*

e. The Ablative may generally be translated by *with*, *by*, *from*. It is used also with many prepositions.

NOTE. — There is also a Vocative case, used, however, only in addressing a person; and a Locative case, used only with names of cities and a very few other words. These two cases will be given and explained later, as they are needed.

NOTE TO THE TEACHER. — No division or grouping of topics can possibly be so made that each chapter will be just enough for a lesson in all schools. Therefore into each chapter are grouped such subjects and such exercises as should be studied together, and the teacher is left free to give to each chapter whatever time is necessary. Many chapters will require more than a lesson. For further suggestions see preface.

SCHOLA ROMANA — A ROMAN SCHOOL

CHAPTER IV

FIRST DECLENSION

Stem in -ā-

22. *Paradigm*

	SINGULAR	TERMINATIONS
Nom.	puella, *a girl* (as subject)	-a
Acc.	puellam, *a girl* (as object)	-am
Gen.	puellae, *of a girl* or *a girl's*	-ae
Dat.	puellae, *to* or *for a girl*	-ae
Abl.	puellā, *with, by, from, a girl*	-ā
	PLURAL	
Nom.	puellae, *girls* (as subject)	-ae
Acc.	puellās, *girls* (as object)	-ās
Gen.	puellārum, *of girls* or *girls'*	-ārum
Dat.	puellīs, *to* or *for girls*	-īs
Abl.	puellīs, *with, by, from, girls*	-īs

a. There is no article in Latin. Therefore **puella** may be translated *a girl* or *the girl*; the plural, **puellae**, *girls* or *the girls*.

b. That part of the word which is not changed by inflection is the root, as **puell-**. To the root is often added a vowel which helps in inflection. This vowel is called the stem-vowel, or characteristic vowel. The root, with the stem-vowel added, is the stem; thus the base **puell-**, + the stem-vowel **-ā-**, gives the stem **puellā-**. The terminations consist of case-endings combined with the stem-vowel; but sometimes the stem-vowel disappears, and sometimes the case-ending.

c. The root may be found by dropping the termination from the genitive singular.

d. In Latin adjectives are declined like nouns, as follows:

23. *Paradigm*

	Singular	Plural
Nom.	hasta longa, *a long spear*	hastae longae, *long spears*
Acc.	hastam longam, *a long spear*	hastās longās, *long spears*
Gen.	hastae longae, *of a long spear*	hastārum longārum, *of long spears*
Dat.	hastae longae, *to* or *for a long spear*	hastīs longīs, *to* or *for long spears*
Abl.	hastā longā, *with*, etc., *a long spear*	hastīs longīs, *with*, etc., *long spears*

24. Rule of Gender. *Nouns of the first declension are feminine unless they denote males.* See 19, *a* and *b*.

25. VOCABULARY

hasta, f., *spear.*	**stella**, f., *star.*
tuba, f., *trumpet.*	**āla**, f., *wing.*
aquila, f., *eagle.*	**magna**, adj., *large, great.*
agricola, m., *farmer.*	**longa**, adj., *long.*
lūna, f., *moon.*	**parva**, adj., *small, little.*
rēgīna, f., *queen.*	**et**, conj., *and.*

Decline the nouns and adjectives in the vocabulary. Then, observing the meaning of the cases as given in the paradigms, translate the following

EXERCISES

26. 1. Tuba agricolae. 2. Tubā et hastā rēgīnae. 3. Lūnae et stellārum. 4. Aquilārum ālae longae. 5. Tubīs et hastīs longīs. 6. Puellae tubā parvā. 7. Tubārum et hastārum. 8. Hastā longā. 9. Parvārum puellārum tubae. 10. Magnīs tubīs agricolārum.

27. 1. The farmer's spear. 2. By the moon and stars.

3. For the queen. 4. Of the moon and stars. 5. With a small trumpet and a long spear. 6. With the farmer's long spears. 7. To the moon and stars. 8. The long wings of the eagle.

CHAPTER V

FIRST DECLENSION (*continued*)

CONJUGATION OF LAUDŌ: Present Indicative Active

28. *Paradigm*

PERSON	SINGULAR	PERSONAL ENDINGS
1st.	laud**ō**, *I praise, am praising, do praise*	**-ō**, *I*
2d.	laudā**s**, *you praise, are praising, do praise*	**-s**, *you (thou)*
3d.	laudat, *he praises, is praising, does praise*	**-t**, *he*
	PLURAL	
1st.	laudā**mus**, *we praise, are praising, do praise*	**-mus**, *we*
2d.	laudā**tis**, *you praise, are praising, do praise*	**-tis**, *you*
3d.	laud**ant**, *they praise, are praising, do praise*	**-nt**, *they*

a. The present stem of **laudō** is **laudā-**. The stem-vowel **-ā-** is dropped before **-ō** in the first person.

b. The **root laud-** (compare 22, *b*), which appears in all forms of the verb, is sometimes called the verb-stem.

c. As each person has a special personal ending, the subject, when a pronoun, is not expressed, unless it be emphatic. Learn the list of personal endings.

d. In Latin there is but one form for the present tense. So **laudat** stands for the simple form, progressive form, or emphatic form, and may mean *he praises*, *he is praising*, or *he does praise*. To make the verb interrogative, **-ne** (16) is attached, as: **laudāsne?** *do you praise?*

RULES OF SYNTAX

29. *The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative case.*

30. *The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative case.*

31. *A finite verb agrees with its subject in person and number.*

NOTE. — A finite verb is a verb not in the infinitive mood. A transitive verb is one that admits of a direct object.

32. VOCABULARY

poēta, m., *poet.*	**portō**, *carry, bring.*
aqua, f., *water.*	**pugnō**, *fight.*
sagitta, f., *arrow.*	**vocō**, *call.*
rosa, f., *rose.*	**arō**, *plough.*
terra, f., *land.*	**nōn**, adv., *not.*

EXERCISES

33. 1. Portās, portāmus, portantne? 2. Pugnātis, nōn pugnat, hastam longam portat. 3. Hastīs et sagittīs nōn pugnāmus. 4. Poēta rēgīnam laudat. 5. Arantne agricolae terram? 6. Rēgīna agricolae rosās magnās laudat. 7. Agricolae puellās parvās laudāmus. 8. Portātisne aquam?

34. 1. I call, they call, we call. 2. You do not fight, he carries, do they praise? 3. We praise the queen. 4. The queen praises the girls. 5. The farmer is ploughing the land. 6. The small girls are carrying large roses. 7. Does the farmer carry a long spear?

GLADIUS

CHAPTER VI

FIRST DECLENSION (*continued*)

CONJUGATION OF MONEŌ: Present Indicative Active

Genitive and Indirect Object

35.

Person	Singular
1st.	moneō, *I advise, am advising, do advise*
2d.	monēs, *you advise, are advising, do advise*
3d.	monet, *he advises, is advising, does advise*
	Plural
1st.	monēmus, *we advise, are advising, do advise*
2d.	monētis, *you advise, are advising, do advise*
3d.	monent, *they advise, are advising, do advise*

a. The present stem of **moneō**, a verb of the second or ē-conjugation, is **monē-**; base **mon-**.

b. The endings of **moneō** are the same as those of **laudō**, and the two verbs are conjugated alike, except that in **laudō** the **-ā-** disappears before **-ō** in the first person, while the **-ē-** in **moneō** is retained and shortened (13, *a*).

c. The vowels **a** and **e**, characteristic respectively of the first and second conjugations, are long (**ā** and **ē**) except before a vowel (13, *a*) or **nd** and **nt** (13, *b*), and before *final* **m**, **r**, and **t**.

36. VOCABULARY

fābula, f., *story.*	**nārrō**, **-āre**, *tell, narrate.*
nauta, m., *sailor.*	**dō**, **dare**, *give.*
silva, f., *forest, woods.*	**videō**, **-ēre**, *see.*
via, f., *road, street, way.*	**habeō**, **-ēre**, *have.*
in, prep., *in* or *on*, with the abl.; or *into*, with the acc.	**doceō**, **-ēre**, *teach.*
cūr, adv., *why?*	**quis**, interrog. pronoun, *who?*

a. The letters **-āre** and **-ēre**, after the verbs in the vocabulary, are the terminations for the infinitive, as: **nārrō**, *I tell*; **nārrāre**, *to tell*; **moneō**, *I advise*; **monēre**, *to advise*. These terminations show whether the verbs belong to the first conjugation like **laudō**, or to the second conjugation like **moneō**. The **a** in the stem of **dare** is, contrary to rule, short.

37. ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

1. **Rosās puellārum** videō, { *I see the girls' roses,* or, *I see the roses of the girls.*

2. **Viās silvae** videō, *I see the roads of the forest.*

The first sentence does not mean that I see all roses, but simply those which belong to the girls. The word **puellārum** thus limits **rosās**. In the same way **silvae** limits **viās** in 2.

38. RULE. *A noun or pronoun used to limit another, not meaning the same person or thing, is in the genitive case.*

a. When the genitive denotes possession, as in the first sentence, it is often called *the possessive genitive* or *the genitive of possession*, otherwise merely the *limiting genitive.*

39. ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLE

Puellae rosās dō, { *I give roses to the girl,* or, *I give the girl roses.*

a. In this sentence the dative **puellae** represents the person to whom I give the roses, and is called the *indirect object.* The word *to* is not always written in English before the indirect object.

40. RULE. *The indirect object is in the dative.*

41. **Order of Words**

a. The order of words in Latin is quite varied, and must be learned largely by observation. The regular, or normal, order is:

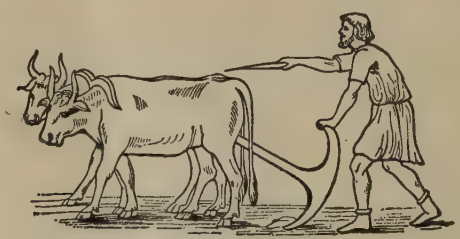
subject	modifiers of subject	indirect object	direct object	modifiers of verb	verb.

b. A genitive or an adjective, if emphatic, generally comes before the noun it limits, otherwise after it. The most common adjectives, like **bonus**, **parvus**, **multus**, etc., very often precede the noun, because by nature they are emphatic.

EXERCISES

42. 1. Vidēs, nōn vident, vidēmusne? 2. Docet, docēre, docētis, quis docet? 3. In viā, in viam, in silvās; viam in silvīs nōn videō. 4. Quis nautam in viā videt? 5. Parvās rosās agricolae vidēmus. 6. Agricola puellīs fābulās nārrat. 7. Quis rēgīnae rosās dat? 8. Nauta tubam et hastam longam habet. 9. Puellae rēgīnae fābulam nārrant et rēgīna puellās laudat. 10. Cūr nautae fābulās longās nārrātis?

43. 1. He sees, we see, to see, do you see? 2. They have, he has, who has? 3. I am teaching, we are teaching, you do not teach. 4. The sailor tells a long story to the queen. 5. The queen praises the story of the sailor. 6. The farmer gives roses to the little girls. 7. Who sees the small girls in the street?



AGRICOLA ARAT

CHAPTER VII

SECOND DECLENSION: Stem in -O-

The Vocative Case and the Ablative of Means

44. *Paradigm*

	SINGULAR					
	servus, m.	**fīlius**, m.	**bellum**, n.	**cōnsilium**, n.		
	slave	*son*	*war*	*plan*		
Stem:	**servo-**	**fīlio-**	**bello-**	**cōnsilio-**	TERMINATIONS	
Root:	**serv-**	**fīli-**	**bell-**	**cōnsili-**	MAS.	NEU.
Nom.	servus	fīlius	bellum	cōnsilium	-us	-um
Acc.	servum	fīlium	bellum	cōnsilium	-um	-um
Gen.	servī	fīliī	bellī	cōnsiliī	-ī	-ī
Dat.	servō	fīliō	bellō	cōnsiliō	-ō	-ō
Abl.	servō	fīliō	bellō	cōnsiliō	-ō	-ō
	PLURAL					
Nom.	servī	fīliī	bella	cōnsilia	-ī	-a
Acc.	servōs	fīliōs	bella	cōnsilia	-ōs	-a
Gen.	servōrum	fīliōrum	bellōrum	cōnsiliōrum	-ōrum	-ōrum
Dat.	servīs	fīliīs	bellīs	cōnsiliīs	-īs	-īs
Abl.	servīs	fīliīs	bellīs	cōnsiliīs	-īs	-īs

a. The vocative singular of nouns in **-us** of the second declension ends in **-e**, as **serve**, *O slave.* Since in other nouns of this declension, and in all nouns of other declensions, both singular and plural, the vocative has the same form as the nominative, the vocative is not given in the paradigms.

b. Nouns ending in **-ius** and **-ium** contract the **-iī** of the genitive to **-ī**, as **fīlī** for **fīliī**, but the contracted form retains the accent of the uncontracted form, even if the penult be short, as **cōnsĭlī** for **cōnsĭliī**.

c. Nouns in **-ius** contract the **-ie** in the vocative to **-ī** and retain the accent of the nominative, as: **Horātius**, voc. **Horātī** (not **Horātie**), (*O*) *Horatius*; **fīlī** (not **fīlie**), (*O*) *son.*

d. In the neuter of all declensions the nominative and accusative cases have the same form, and in the plural end in **-a**.

45. There are five declensions in Latin, distinguished by the final letter (characteristic) of the stem, and by the termination of the genitive singular, thus:

Declension	Stem-Vowel (or Characteristic)	Termination of the Genitive
I	**ā**	**-ae**
II	**o**	**-ī**
III	**i**, or a consonant	**-is**
IV	**u**	**-ūs**
V	**ē**	**-ēī**

Note. — The termination of the genitive will hereafter be given after each noun in the vocabularies to show to which declension it belongs.

46. Illustrative Examples

1. **Hastīs, domine,**[1] **servōs armant,** *master, they are arming the slaves with spears.*

2. **Servī vigilantiā oppidum servant,** *the slaves by vigilance save the town.*

Rules of Syntax

47. *The vocative is used in addressing a person.*

48. *The means or instrument by which something is done is expressed by the ablative, without a preposition.*

[1] The vocative seldom comes first in the sentence.

49. VOCABULARY

gladius, -ī, m., *sword.*	**vigilantia**, -ae, f., *vigilance, watchfulness.*
dominus, -ī, m., *master.*	**deus**, -ī, m., *god.*
mūrus, -ī, m., *wall.*	**dea**, -ae, f., *goddess.*
hortus, -ī, m., *garden.*	**armō**, -āre, *arm.*
dōnum, -ī, n., *gift.*	**servō**, -āre, *save.*
oppidum, -ī, n., *town.*	**dēleō**, -ēre, *destroy.*
servus, -ī, m., *slave.*	**monēo**,-ēre, *advise, warn.*
templum, -ī, n., *temple.*	

EXERCISES

50. 1. Servōrum, servīs, servī, (Ō)[1] serve! 2. Dominī hortus mūrum habet. 3. Quis in hortum aquam portat? 4. In hortō fīliōs et fīliās vidēmus. 5. Quis dōna fīliīs[2] et fīliābus[3] portat? 6. Vidēsne templa deōrum et deārum in oppidō? 7. Mūrōs oppidī hastā et gladiō dēlent. 8. Quis, fīlī, servō gladium et tubam dat? 9. Dominus gladiō et tubā servum armat. 10. Habēs, serve, dōnum gladiī et tubae; tubā dominī fīliōs vocās, gladiō pugnās.

51. 1. Of the master, for the master, (O) master,[1] (O) son.[1] 2. By war, of wars, for war, for the son, of the son. 3. The plans of the master, by the master's plans. 4. The slave teaches the master's sons. 5. We see the temples of the gods and goddesses. 6. The slaves are bringing gifts for the gods[2] and goddesses.[3] 7. The master praises the vigilance of the slave. 8. (O) slave, who is calling the master's sons with the trumpet?

[1] With the vocative, this word *O* may be used or omitted in both Latin and English, according to the sense.

[2] The indirect object (40) is sometimes translated by *for* (21, *c*).

[3] **Fīlia**, *daughter*, and **dea**, *goddess*, nouns of the first declension, though otherwise regular, have **fīliābus** and **deābus** in the dative and ablative plural to distinguish them from the corresponding forms of **fīlius** and **deus**.

CHAPTER VIII

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

Questions. Agreement of Adjectives

52. *Paradigm*

		SINGULAR	
Nom.	bonus dominus	bona puella	bonum dōnum
Acc.	bonum dominum	bonam puellam	bonum dōnum
Gen.	bonī dominī	bonae puellae	bonī dōnī
Dat.	bonō dominō	bonae puellae	bonō dōnō
Abl.	bonō dominō	bonā puellā	bonō dōnō
		PLURAL	
Nom.	bonī dominī	bonae puellae	bona dōna
Acc.	bonōs dominos	bonās puellās	bona dōna
Gen.	bonōrum dominōrum	bonārum puellārum	bonōrum dōnōrum
Dat.	bonīs dominīs	bonīs puellīs	bonīs dōnīs
Abl.	bonīs dominīs	bonīs puellīs	bonīs dōnīs

a. From the paradigm (see also 23) it is seen that adjectives are declined like nouns, and that the endings change according to the gender of the nouns to which they belong.

53. Decline **bonus**, *good*, in the three genders, thus :

		SINGULAR	
	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.
Nom.	bonus	bona	bonum
Acc.	bonum	bonam	bonum
Gen.	bonī	bonae	bonī
Dat.	bonō	bonae	bonō
Abl.	bonō	bonā	bonō
		PLURAL	
Nom.	bonī	bonae	bona
Acc.	bonōs	bonās	bona
Gen.	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
Dat.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
Abl.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

54. Rule. *An adjective agrees in gender, number, and case with the noun to which it belongs.*

55. Though an adjective must agree with its noun in gender, number, and case, it may differ in form. For example, if a noun of the first declension is masculine, the form of the adjective must be masculine, thus:

	Singular	Plural
Nom.	bonus agricola	bonī agricolae
Acc.	bonum agricolam	bonōs agricolās
Gen.	bonī agricolae	bonōrum agricolārum
Dat.	bonō agricolae	bonīs agricolīs
Abl.	bonō agricolā	bonīs agricolīs

56. Illustrative Examples

1. Quis fīlium agricolae videt? *Who sees the farmer's son?*
2. Cūr dominus servōs armat? *Why does the master arm the slaves?*
3. Vidēsne fīlium agricolae?
4. Agricolaene fīlium vidēs?
5. Fīliumne agricolae vidēs?

Do you see the farmer's son?

6. Nōnne fīlium agricolae vidēs? *Do you not see the farmer's son?*

a. An interrogative sentence, in Latin as in English, may be introduced by an interrogative pronoun or adverb, as in 1 and 2.

b. If the interrogative sentence has no interrogative pronoun or adverb, the enclitic -nə (see 16) is generally attached to the word about which the question is asked. This word usually comes at the beginning of the sentence. As the verb usually contains the leading idea, that very frequently comes first, as in 3. In 4 the question is whether you see the son of the *farmer* rather than the son of some other man. (Cf. 41, *b*.) In 5 the

question is whether you see the *son* of the farmer instead of his daughter, or some other relative. In 6 the question is whether you do *not* see the farmer's son, which implies that the questioner supposes that you do see him.

c. In answering, the verb is generally repeated, as:

Vidēsne viam, *do you see the road?* **Videō**, *yes; I see it.*

57. VOCABULARY

carrus, -ī, m., *wagon.*
equus, -ī, m., *horse.*
numerus, -ī, m., *number.*
frūmentum, -ī, n., *grain.*
auxilium, -ī, n., *help, aid.*
cōpia, -ae, f., *supply, abundance*; plur., *forces, troops.*
longus, -a, -um, *long.*
magnus, -a, -um, *large, great, big.*
parvus, -a, -um, *little, small.*
novus, -a, -um, *new.*
multus, -a, -um, *much*; plur., *many.*
rogō, -āre, *ask, ask for.*

58. EXERCISES

1. Bonus agricola magnum numerum equōrum et carrōrum habet. 2. In oppidō multōs carrōs nōn habēmus. 3. Bonī agricolae multum frūmentum in oppidum portant. 4. Quis auxilium rogat? Dominus auxilium rogat. 5. Rogāsne, parve fīlī, auxilium? Nōn rogō. 6. Nōnne servī auxilium rogant? 7. Parvāsne puellās vidētis? 8. Magnās puellās vidēmus. 9. Fīliāsne bonī agricolae vidēs? 10. Fīliōs, nōn fīliās, videō.

59. 1. We have a great supply of grain. 2. Many farmers have large wagons. 3. In the good farmer's new wagon. 4. Who is fighting with the long spear and large sword? 5. Who teaches the queen's sons and daughters? 6. Do you not praise the master's slave? 7. Do the slaves teach the master's sons? (Read 56, *b*; then write 7 in several ways.)

CHAPTER IX

SECOND DECLENSION (*continued*)

Nouns in -er and -ir and Adjectives in -er

60. *Paradigm*

	puer, m., *boy*	**ager**, m., *field*	**vir**, m., *man*	
Stem:	**puero-**	**agro-**	**viro-**	
Root:	**puer-**	**agr-**	**vir-**	
		SINGULAR		TERMINATIONS
Nom.	puer	ager	vir	——
Acc.	puerum	agrum	virum	**-um**
Gen.	puerī	agrī	virī	**-ī**
Dat.	puerō	agrō	virō	**-ō**
Abl.	puerō	agrō	virō	**-ō**
		PLURAL		
Nom.	puerī	agrī	virī	**-ī**
Acc.	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	**-ōs**
Gen.	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	**-ōrum**
Dat.	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	**-īs**
Abl.	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	**-īs**

61. *a.* The masculine form of the adjective **miser, -era, -erum**, *poor, pitiable*, is declined like **puer**, thus:

	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.
Nom.	miser	misera	miserum
Acc.	miserum	miseram	miserum
Gen.	miserī	miserae	miserī
	etc.	etc.	etc.

b. The masculine form of the adjective **aeger, -gra, -grum,** *sick*, is declined like **ager**, thus:

	Mas.	Fem.	Neu.
Nom.	aeger	aegra	aegrum
Acc.	aegrum	aegram	aegrum
Gen.	aegrī	aegrae	aegrī
	etc.	etc.	etc.

Complete the declension of **miser** and **aeger.**

62. *a.* Nouns in **-er** and **-ir** are declined like **servus** (44), except that the nominative has no **-us.**

b. **Ager** is like **puer**, except that the **e** occurs only in the nominative. Most nouns in **-er** are declined like **ager.** The genitive shows which paradigm is to be followed.

c. Some adjectives in **-er** are declined like **miser** and some like **aeger.** The vocabulary will show by the forms given for the feminine and neuter whether **e** is retained in inflection as in **puer** or dropped as in **ager.**

d. Decline together **pulcher equus, asper nauta, pulchrum dōnum, novus liber, līber gener.**

63. Rule of Gender. *Nouns of the second declension ending in* **-us, -er,** *and* **-ir** *are masculine; those in* **-um** *are neuter.*

64. VOCABULARY

gener, -erī, m., *son-in-law.*
liber, -brī, m., *book.*
magister, -trī, m., *master.*[1]
caper, -prī, m., *goat.*
niger, -gra, -grum, *black.*
pulcher, -chra, -chrum, *beautiful.*
asper, -era, -erum, *rough.*
tener, -era, -erum, *tender.*
līber, -era, -erum, *free.*
līberī, -ōrum, plu., m., *children.*[2]
līberō, -āre, *liberate, free.*
labōrō, -āre, *work, toil.*

[1] **Magister** means *master, director, teacher.* **Dominus** means *master, proprietor, owner*, especially of slaves.

[2] In Rome the *family*, **familia**, often included the entire household, sometimes containing many slaves. So the children were called **līberī**, the free ones, in distinction from the slaves.

EXERCISES

65. 1. In agrīs asperīs, novī librī, līberī virī, dōna pulchra. 2. Tenerae puellae, nigrī equī, miserō equō, nautae asperō. 3. Parvus puer nigrum caprum habet. 4. Magister bonō puerō novum librum dat. 5. Vidēsne, parve puer, pulchra dōna magistrī? 6. Vir līberīs fābulam longam nārrat. 7. Miserī servī in dominī agrīs labōrant. 8. Cūr, domine, miserum servum nōn līberās? 9. Nōnne fīlium virī et generum in hortō vidēs? 10. Magister fīliōs et fīliās generī docet.

66. 1. Of the new book, for the black horse. 2. Of the free man, for the sick man's daughters. 3. The master's slave is toiling in the field. 4. He gives the sons and daughters beautiful gifts. 5. The children have a large horse and a small goat. 6. Do you see the boy's beautiful books? 7. The poor slave does not have a new book.

CHAPTER X

REVIEW

67. Review the rules for pronunciation, quantity, and accent, 4–17; the paradigms, 22, 23, 28, 35, 44, 52, 53, 60; the vocabularies, 25, 32, 36, 49, 57, 64; and rules of syntax thus far given.

Decline **poēta**, **fābula**, **numerus**, **auxilium**, **frūmentum**, **gener**, **liber**; the adjectives **longus**, **tener**, **pulcher**, in the three genders; and decline together **aeger nauta**, **novus gladius**, **līber vir**, **asper caper**. Give the genitive and vocative singular and plural of **dominus**, **fīlius**, and **magister**.

Conjugate **portō**, **videō**, **servō**, and **doceō** in the present indicative. Write out the list of terminations of the first declension; of the second declension, masculine and feminine; also the list of personal endings of the verb.

EXERCISES

68. 1. Auxiliō novae lūnae et stellārum viam asperam in silvā vidēmus. 2. Vidēsne, serve, puerī nigrōs caprōs? Nōn videō, domine. 3. Magisterne fīliōs et fīliās līberī virī docet? 4. Nauta asper pulchrae[1] virī fīliae fābulam nārrat. 5. Fīliī rēgīnae dōna multa et pulchra in templum portant. 6. In pulchrīs deōrum templīs multa dōna vidētis. 7. Miserī agricolae servī asperīs in[2] agrīs labōrant. 8. Nōnne dominus vigilantiam servōrum miserōrum laudat? 9. Quis, parve puer, agricolae līberōs tubā vocat? 10. Nautae asperī in terrā gladiīs et hastīs pugnant.

69. 1. Horatius, do you see in the town the temple of the gods? 2. Yes,[3] master; and I am bringing gifts into the temple for the gods and goddesses. 3. Who teaches the sons and daughters of the queen? 4. The son-in-law of Horatius gives the farmer's son a black horse. 5. With the black horse the boy ploughs the rough fields.

[1] When an adjective and a genitive both limit the same noun, the order often is | adjective[1] | genitive[2] | noun[3] |.

[2] The preposition often, as here, comes between the adjective and the noun.

[3] 56, *c*.

DENARIUS ROMANUS

A Roman coin with the head of Julius Cæsar

CHAPTER XI

LAUDŌ AND MONEŌ: Future Active and Imperfect

70. I. laudō, -āre

Future

SINGULAR	PLURAL
laudābō, *I shall praise*	laudābimus, *we shall praise*
laudābis, *you will praise*	laudābitis, *you will praise*
laudābit, *he will praise*	laudābunt, *they will praise*

Imperfect

SINGULAR	PERSONAL ENDINGS
laudābam, *I was praising, I praised*	**-ō**, or **-m**, *I*
laudābās, *you were praising, you praised*	**-s** *you* (*thou*)
laudābat, *he was praising, he praised*	**-t**, *he*
PLURAL	
laudābāmus, *we were praising, we praised*	**-mus**, *we*
laudābātis, *you were praising, you praised*	**-tis**, *you*
laudābant, *they were praising, they praised*	**-nt**, *they*

II. moneō, -ēre

Future		*Imperfect*	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
monēbō	monēbimus	monēbam	monēbāmus
monēbis	monēbitis	monēbās	monēbātis
monēbit	monēbunt	monēbat	monēbant

a. The personal endings of the imperfect are the same as those of the present (28) and future, except that in the first person singular the imperfect has **-m**, the present and future **-ō**. Learn the table of personal endings given above.

b. The imperfect may be formed from the present stem (28, *a*) by inserting -bā- (cf. 35, *c*) before the personal endings (28). This -bā- is called the tense-sign of the imperfect. The vowel before -bā- is long.

c. The tense-sign of the future is -bi-, modified in the first singular to -b- and in the third plural to -bu-.

d. Conjugate all verbs whose infinitive ends in -āre, like laudō; those whose infinitive ends in -ēre, like moneō. Observe the meaning of the tenses as given for *laudō*.

71. VOCABULARY

populus, -ī, m., *people.*	**audeō**, -ēre, *dare.*
rēgnum, -ī, n., *power, sovereign power, royalty.*	**dēbeō**, -ēre, *ought.*
victōria, -ae, f., *victory.*	**obtineō**, -ēre, *hold, obtain.*
castra, -ōrum, n. plu., *camp.*	**moveō**, -ēre, *move.*
occupō, -āre, *seize, occupy.*	**nūntiō**, -āre, *announce, report.*

EXERCISES

72. 1. Laudās, laudābās, laudābunt. 2. Movet, movēbat, movēbit. 3. Movēbāmus, pugnābimus, pugnāmus, pugnāre dēbēmus. 4. Portō, portābis, portābant. 5. Rogātis, rogābimus, rogāre dēbent. 6. Nōnne servī oppidum occupābant? 7. Cūr castra movēre nōn audētis? 8. Victōriam cōpiīs nūntiābimus. 9. Miserī servī aquam in hortum dominō portābant. 10. Quis rēgnum obtinet? Populus rēgnum obtinēre dēbet.

73. 1. He praises, he praised, he will praise. 2. They were praising, you are praising, we shall praise. 3. We shall move, he is moving, I ought to move. 4. Does he call? Who was ploughing? 5. Does not the farmer praise the boy? 6. A good friend is bringing water for the sick boy. 7. We ought by vigilance to save the town.

CHAPTER XII

LAUDŌ AND MONEŌ: Present, Future, and Imperfect Passive

Ablative of Agent

74. **laudō, -āre**

Present

Singular	Personal Endings
laud**or**, *I am praised, am being praised*	**-r**
laudā**ris** (**-re**), *you are praised, are being praised*	**-ris** [1]
laudā**tur**, *he is praised, is being praised*	**-tur**
Plural	
laudā**mur**, *we are praised, are being praised*	**-mur**
laudā**minī**, *you are praised, are being praised*	**-minī**
laud**antur**, *they are praised, are being praised*	**-ntur**

Future

Singular	Plural
laudā**bor**, *I shall be praised*	laudā**bimur**, *we shall be praised*
laudā**beris** (**-re**), *you will be praised*	laudā**biminī**, *you will be praised*
laudā**bitur**, *he will be praised*	laudā**buntur**, *they will be praised*

Imperfect

Singular

laudā**bar**, *I was praised, I was being praised*
laudā**bāris** (**-re**), *you were praised, you were being praised*
laudā**bātur**, *he was praised, was being praised*

Plural

laudā**bāmur**, *we were praised, were being praised*
laudā**bāminī**, *you were praised, were being praised*
laudā**bantur**, *they were praised, were being praised*

[1] In the second singular passive the ending **-re** is sometimes used instead of **-ris**, as: **laudāre** for **laudāris**.

75.	moneō, -ēre	
Present	*Future*	*Imperfect*
	Singular	
1. moneor	monēbor	monēbar
2. monēris (-re)	monēberis (-re)	monēbāris (-re)
3. monētur	monēbitur	monēbātur
	Plural	
1. monēmur	monēbimur	monēbāmur
2. monēminī	monēbiminī	monēbāminī
3. monentur	monēbuntur	monēbantur

a. For the translation of 75 compare 74.

b. Review 70, *a*, *b*, *c*, *d*. The passive may be made from the active by merely substituting the passive endings (74) for the active (70). Learn very carefully the two sets of endings.

c. The present infinitive passive of the first and second conjugations may be formed from the infinitive active by changing the final **e** to **ī**, as : **laudāre**, *to praise*, **laudārī**, *to be praised*; **monēre**, *to advise*, **monērī**, *to be advised.*

d. Observe from the translations of 74 that the English passive is formed by using the *perfect passive participle* with some form of the auxiliary verb *be*. Carefully distinguish between such English forms as the progressive active, *I was praising*, and the passive, *I was praised*, or *I was being praised.*

76. Illustrative Examples

1. *Active*

Magister puerum laudat, *the master praises the boy.*

2. *Passive*

Puer ā magistrō laudātur, *the boy is praised by the master.*

a. That which is the object of the verb in the active becomes the subject in the passive. Of course if the verb has no object

in the active, there will be no passive, as: **puer ambulat**, *the boy walks*. [No passive.]

b. The subject of the active, if a person, becomes the agent in the passive. The agent is the person by whom something is done, and is denoted by the ablative with **ā** or **ab**.

c. Before a consonant **ā** (rarely **ab**) is used, as **ā magistrō**; before a vowel or **h**, **ab** is used, as **ab agricolā**; just as in English we say *a pear*, but *an apple*.

77. RULE. *The personal agent with the passive voice is expressed by the ablative with* **ā** *or* **ab**.

NOTE. — Observe that the agent is a person and always takes the preposition; the means is that *by* or *with which* something is done, and never takes the preposition (46, 48), thus: *the boy was wounded* **by** *a friend* (agent) **with** *a sword* (means), **puer gladiō ab amīcō volnerābātur.**

78. VOCABULARY

amīcus, **-ī**, m., *friend*.	**volnerō**, **-āre**, *wound*.
tyrannus, **-ī**, m., *tyrant*.	**vāstō**, **-āre**, *devastate, lay waste*.
Gallia, **-ae**, f., *Gaul*.	**terreō**, **-ēre**, *frighten*.
ōlim, adv., *once, formerly*.	**habitō**, **-āre**, *live, dwell*.
ubi, adv., *where*.	**amō**, **-āre**, *love*.

America, -ae, f., **America**

EXERCISES

79. 1. Laudāris, laudābāris, laudāberis. 2. Monēmur, monēbāminī, monēbuntur. 3. Laudābit, laudābiminī, docēbitur. 4. Vocāmur, vidēbitur, vidēbant, monēris. 5. Multa oppida bellō dēlēbantur. 6. In Galliā ōlim rēgnum ā tyrannō occupābātur. 7. In Americā ā līberō populō rēgnum obtinētur. 8. Dominus gladiō ab asperō servō volnerābātur. 9. Bonī servī ā dominō laudābuntur. 10. Bonus dominus ab amīcō servī miserī laudābitur.

80. 1. You will be praised, I was being praised, they are advised. 2. Will you be frightened? are we not taught?

why was he praised? 3. We ought to praise the farmer's son. 4. A friend will be loved by a friend. 5. The poor slaves were not freed by the master. 6. In Gaul many fields were devastated by war. 7. Where do you live? I live in America.

CHAPTER XIII

CONJUGATION OF SUM: Present, Future, and Imperfect

Predicate: Noun and Adjective

81. *Paradigm*

Present	*Future*	*Imperfect*
	SINGULAR	
sum, *I am*	**erō**, *I shall be*	**eram**, *I was*
es, *you are*	**eris**, *you will be*	**erās**, *you were*
est, *he is*	**erit**, *he will be*	**erat**, *he was*
	PLURAL	
sumus, *we are*	**erimus**, *we shall be*	**erāmus**, *we were*
estis, *you are*	**eritis**, *you will be*	**erātis**, *you were*
sunt, *they are*	**erunt**, *they will be*	**erant**, *they were*

NOTE. — The stem of **sum** is **es-**; but in some forms the **e** is dropped, and in some forms **s** is changed to **r**.

82. A noun used to explain or identify another noun, or a pronoun, denoting the same person or thing, is an *appositive*, as: **Mercurius, nūntius deōrum**, *Mercury, the messenger of the gods.*

83. RULE. *An appositive is in the same case as the word it limits.*

84. A noun in the predicate after an intransitive or passive verb, and denoting the same person or thing as the subject, is a *predicate* noun, as: **Mercurius erat nūntius**

deōrum, *Mercury was messenger of the gods*; or **Mercurius vocābātur nūntius deōrum**, *Mercury was called the messenger of the gods.*

85. RULE. *A predicate noun agrees in case with the subject of the verb.*

86. *a.* An adjective that limits its noun directly is an *attributive* adjective, as: **novus liber**, *a new book.*

b. An adjective that is connected with its noun by a verb is a *predicate* adjective, as: **liber est novus**, *the book is new.*

87. RULE. *A predicate adjective agrees with the subject in gender, number, and case.*

88. VOCABULARY

sum, **esse**, *am, be.*
vīcus, -ī, m., *village.*
lēgātus, -ī, m., *lieutenant, deputy, envoy, ambassador, legate.*
nūntius, -ī, m., *messenger.*
verbum, -ī, n., *word.*
incendium, -ī, n., *fire.*
contentus, -a, -um, *contented.*
Mārcus, -ī, m., *Marcus.*
Mercurius, -ī, m., *Mercury.*
Vesta, -ae, f., *Vesta.*
Sabīnus, -ī, m., *Sabinus.*

EXERCISES

89. 1. Es, erās, eris, esse. 2. Erāmus, sumus, eritis. 3. Est, erat, eritne? 4. Eram, estis, erimus. 5. Eritis, sunt, erātisne? 6. Quis est aeger? Miserī servī sunt aegrī. 7. Quis nōn audet esse bonus? 8. Bonī esse dēbēmus. 9. Librī nōn sunt novī. 10. In parvō vīcō nōn erant multī librī. 11. Nōnne rēgīna vocābātur pulchra? 12. Nūntiī Vestae, deae pulchrae, multa dōna portant. 13. Pulchrī librī sunt dōnum Mārcī, bonī amīcī.

90. 1. You are, they will be, we were, to be. 2. I was, you will be, are they? 3. We are, you were, who will be?

4. You are free and ought to be contented. 5. I gave the new books to Marcus, a dear friend. 6. Who was the friend of Marcus? 7. Many towns were destroyed with fire and sword by Sabinus, the lieutenant.

CHAPTER XIV

CONJUGATION OF SUM: Perfect, Future Perfect, Pluperfect

Dative of Possessor

91. *Paradigm*

Perfect

Singular	Personal Endings
fuī, *I have been* or *I was*	**-ī**
fuistī, *you have been* or *you were*	**-istī**
fuit, *he has been* or *he was*	**-it**
Plural	
fuimus, *we have been* or *we were*	**-imus**
fuistis, *you have been* or *you were*	**-istis**
fuērunt (**-ēre**), *they have been* or *they were*	**-ērunt** (**-ēre**)

Future Perfect	*Pluperfect*
Singular	Singular
fuerō, *I shall have been*	**fueram**, *I had been*
fueris, *you will have been*	**fuerās**, *you had been*
fuerit, *he will have been*	**fuerat**, *he had been*
Plural	Plural
fuerimus, *we shall have been*	**fuerāmus**, *we had been*
fueritis, *you will have been*	**fuerātis**, *you had been*
fuerint, *they will have been*	**fuerant**, *they had been*

Perfect Infinitive — **fuisse**, *to have been*

a. The personal endings of the perfect tense are different from those of all the other tenses, and should be carefully learned. In the third plural the ending **-ēre** is sometimes used instead of **-ērunt.**

b. The stem of the perfect is also different from the stem of the present, and may always be found by dropping the personal ending **-ī** from the first person of the perfect.

c. The pluperfect and future perfect are formed by adding the imperfect **eram, erās,** etc., and the future **erō, eris,** etc., to the perfect stem. But in the third plural of the future perfect **-erint** occurs instead of **-erunt.**

92. Illustrative Examples

1. **Puerō est liber,** *the boy has (to the boy there is) a book.*

2. **Puer librum habet,** *the boy has a book.*

a. Possession may be expressed in either of these two ways, but for practice it is well, in the exercises, to write both ways till they become familiar.

93. Rule. *The dative may be used with the verb* **sum** *to denote the possessor.*

Note. — The thing possessed is the subject.

94. VOCABULARY

Rōmānus, -a, -um, *Roman.*
Rōmānī, -ōrum, plu., *the Romans.*
validus, -a, -um, *strong.*
iūstus, -a, -um, *just, regular.*
incola, -ae, m. and f., *inhabitant.*
fugitīvus, -ī, m., *fugitive, deserter.*
necō, -āre, *kill, put to death.*
teneō, -ēre, *hold.*
videō, -ēre, *see*; in passive *be seen* or *seem, appear.*
mox, adv., *soon.*
nunc, adv., *now.*

EXERCISES

95. 1. Fuistī, fuerās, fueris. 2. Fuimus, fueritis, fuerint. 3. Esse, fuisse, quis fuit? 4. Fuerās, fueritis, fuērunt. 5. Fueritis, fuerātis, fuistis. 6. Puerō est novus liber, dōnum amīcī. 7. Puellae sunt dōna pulchra. 8. Lēgātus fuerat amīcus populī Rōmānī. 9. Rōmānī multōs vīcōs et oppida Galliae dēlēbant. 10. Lātī agrī ā Rōmānīs nunc vāstantur. 11. Incolae erant multī et validī. 12. Validī fuisse videntur. 13. Fugitīvus ā lēgātō tenētur et mox necābitur.

96. 1. I have been, you will have been, they have been. 2. We have been, they had been, I shall have been. 3. Have they been just? had you not been strong? 4. He seems to be strong, they seem to have been strong. 5. We ought to be just. 6. Will the lieutenant dare to fight? 7. The deserters will be put to death with the sword by the Romans. 8. The Romans had strong swords.

CHAPTER XV

LAUDŌ AND MONEŌ: Indicative (*completed*)

Perfect Infinitive

97. *Principal Parts*

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Perfect Passive Part.
laudō, *I praise*	**laudāre,** *to praise*	**laudāvī,** *I have praised*	**laudātus,** *having been praised,* or *praised*
moneō, *I advise*	**monēre,** *to advise*	**monuī,** *I have advised*	**monitus,** *having been advised,* or *advised*

Note. — These four forms of the verb are called the *principal parts*, since all other parts of the verb are formed from them.

98. **laudō**: perfect stem **laudāv-**

ACTIVE VOICE	*Perfect*	PASSIVE VOICE
I have praised, I praised, etc.		*I have been praised, I was praised*, etc.
	SINGULAR	
1. laudāv**ī**		laudāt**us sum**
2. laudāv**istī**		laudāt**us es**
3. laudāv**it**		laudāt**us est**
	PLURAL	
1. laudāv**imus**		laudāt**ī sumus**
2. laudāv**istis**		laudāt**ī estis**
3. laudāv**ērunt** (**-ēre**)		laudāt**ī sunt**

	Future Perfect	
I shall have praised, etc.		*I shall have been praised*, etc.
	SINGULAR	
1. laudāv**erō**		laudāt**us erō**
2. laudāv**eris**		laudāt**us eris**
3. laudāv**erit**		laudāt**us erit**
	PLURAL	
1. laudāv**erimus**		laudāt**ī erimus**
2. laudāv**eritis**		laudāt**ī eritis**
3. laudāv**erint**		laudāt**ī erunt**

	Pluperfect	
I had praised, etc.		*I had been praised*, etc.
	SINGULAR	
1. laudāv**eram**		laudāt**us eram**
2. laudāv**erās**		laudāt**us erās**
3. laudāv**erat**		laudāt**us erat**
	PLURAL	
1. laudāv**erāmus**		laudāt**ī erāmus**
2. laudāv**erātis**		laudāt**ī erātis**
3. laudāv**erant**		laudāt**ī erant**

99. **moneō** : perfect stem **monu-**

ACTIVE VOICE	*Perfect*	PASSIVE VOICE
I have advised, etc.		*I have been advised*, etc.
	SINGULAR	
1. **monuī**		**monitus sum**
2. **monuistī**		**monitus es**
3. **monuit**		**monitus est**
	PLURAL	
1. **monuimus**		**monitī sumus**
2. **monuistis**		**monitī estis**
3. **monuērunt** (**-ēre**)		**monitī sunt**

	Future Perfect	
I shall have advised, etc.		*I shall have been advised*, etc.
	SINGULAR	
1. **monuerō**		**monitus erō**
2. **monueris**		**monitus eris**
3. **monuerit**		**monitus erit**
	PLURAL	
1. **monuerimus**		**monitī erimus**
2. **monueritis**		**monitī eritis**
3. **monuerint**		**monitī erunt**

	Pluperfect	
I had advised, etc.		*I had been advised*, etc.
	SINGULAR	
1. **monueram**		**monitus eram**
2. **monuerās**		**monitus erās**
3. **monuerat**		**monitus erat**
	PLURAL	
1. **monuerāmus**		**monitī erāmus**
2. **monuerātis**		**monitī erātis**
3. **monuerant**		**monitī erant**

Active Voice	*Perfect Infinitive*	Passive Voice
laudāvisse, *to have praised*	laudātus esse, *to have been praised*	
monuisse, *to have advised*	monitus esse, *to have been advised*	

a. The perfect participle is inflected like **bonus, -a, -um**, and always agrees with the noun or pronoun to which it belongs in gender, number, and case, like an adjective, as: **laudāta est,** *she has been praised*; **puellae laudātae sunt,** *the girls have been praised*; **servus volnerātus,** *the wounded slave.*

b. The *perfect system* includes the three tenses which are formed from the perfect stem: the *perfect*, *future perfect*, and *pluperfect*, active. The *present system*, for the same reason, includes the three tenses formed from the present stem: the *present*, *future*, and *imperfect*, active and passive.

c. The letters **-eri-** and **-era-** may be considered the tense-signs of the future perfect and pluperfect active. (See 91, *c.*) In the passive the perfect, future perfect, and pluperfect are formed by combining the perfect passive participle with **sum, ero**, etc.

d. All Latin verbs are inflected alike in the perfect, future perfect, and pluperfect.

100. Learn the principal parts of the following verbs, and inflect them in the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect.

culpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *blame.*
dō, dare, dedī, datus, *give.*
habeō, -ēre, habuī, habitus, *have, hold.*
dēbeō, -ēre, dēbuī, dēbitus, *owe, ought.*
doceō, -ēre, docuī, doctus, *teach.*
teneō, -ēre, tenuī, ———, *hold.*
terreō, -ēre, terruī, territus, *frighten, scare.*
obtineō, -ēre, -tinuī, obtentus, *obtain, hold.*
dēleō, -ēre, dēlēvī, dēlētus, *destroy.*

moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *move.*
videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsus, *see*; in passive, *seem, appear.*

a. All regular verbs of the first conjugation have long **a** (**ā**) before **-re** of the present infinitive. The irregular verb **dō**, *give*, has short **a**, and an irregular stem in the perfect. All the verbs of the first conjugation, which have been thus far used, form their principal parts regularly, like **laudō**, and so are not repeated here.

b. Verbs of the second conjugation have long **e** (ē) before the **-re** of the present infinitive.

c. The perfect stems and the participles of different verbs vary considerably, and must be learned for each verb from the principal parts as given in the vocabulary.

d. The stem of the perfect of all verbs is found by dropping the personal ending **-ī** from the perfect as given in the principal parts.

EXERCISES

101. 1. Culpāvī, dedī, docueram, mōverō. 2. Culpātus erō, laudātī erant, vīsī estis. 3. Doctī erāmus, dedistī, cūr territī sunt? 4. Dedit, vīderāmus, puella docta est. 5. Multa oppida incendiō dēlēta esse videntur. 6. Rōmānī castra mōvisse vidēbantur. 7. Rēgnum ōlim ā tyrannō obtentum erat. 8. Lēgātus, sagittā volnerātus,[1] aeger erat. 9. Multī agrī Galliae, ā Rōmānīs occupātī,[1] incendiō vāstātī sunt. 10. Incolae dēlētī[1] oppidī territī esse vidēbantur. 11. Dēbentne oppida bellō dēlērī?

102. 1. I have praised, you had warned, he will have been frightened. 2. We have been praised, you had been taught, they will have been seen. 3. A great number of beautiful books has been given to the sick boy. 4. Victory

[1] 99, *a*.

had been announced to the Roman people by a messenger. 5. A large town, seized[1] by the lieutenant, seems to have been destroyed by fire. 6. Ought the frightened[1] inhabitants to be blamed?

CHAPTER XVI

THIRD CONJUGATION: REGŌ

103. *Paradigm*

regō, *rule*

Principal parts: **regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus**

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
Present			
I rule, etc.		*I am ruled*, etc.	
1. **regō**	**regimus**	**regor**	**regimur**
2. **regis**	**regitis**	**regeris** (**-re**)	**regiminī**
3. **regit**	**regunt**	**regitur**	**reguntur**
Future			
I shall rule, etc.		*I shall be ruled*, etc.	
1. **regam**	**regēmus**	**regar**	**regēmur**
2. **regēs**	**regētis**	**regēris** (**-re**)	**regēminī**
3. **reget**	**regent**	**regētur**	**regentur**
Imperfect			
I was ruling, etc.		*I was ruled*, etc.	
1. regēbam	regēbāmus	regēbar	regēbāmur
2. regēbās	regēbātis	regēbāris (**-re**)	regēbāminī
3. regēbat	regēbant	regēbātur	regēbantur

a. The personal endings (70) of all conjugations are the same, but the vowel before the endings varies. Accordingly verbs

[1] 99, *a*.

are divided into four regular conjugations, distinguished by the stem-vowel which appears before **-re** of the present infinitive active (cf. 100, *a*, *b*), thus:

Conjugation	Present Infinitive Active	Characteristic Vowel	Stem
I	**laudāre**, *to praise*	**ā**	**laudā-**
II	**monēre**, *to advise*	**ē**	**monē-**
III	**regere**, *to rule*	**ĕ**	**rege-**
IV	**audīre**, *to hear*	**ī**	**audī-**

b. The stem-vowel, short **e**, which is characteristic of the third conjugation, changes in some forms of the present to **i** or **u**.

c. The tense-sign of the future indicative in the third and fourth conjugations is **-ē-** (**-a-** in 1st person) instead of **-bi-** (70, *c*).

d. The infinitive passive of the third conjugation may be formed from the infinitive active by putting **-ī** in the place of the ending **-ere**, as: **regere**, *to rule*; **regī**, *to be ruled*. Cf. 75, *c*.

104. VOCABULARY

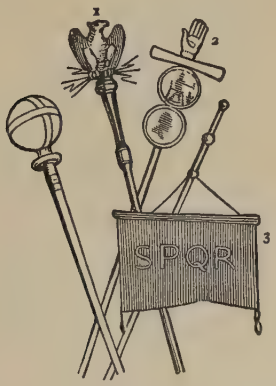
pīlum, -ī, n., *javelin*.
socius, -ī, m., *ally, associate*.
statim, adv., *at once, immediately*.
sed, conj., *but*.
tum, adv., *then, at that time*.
appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *call*.
dēfendō, -ere, **dēfendī**, **dēfēnsus**, *defend*.
mittō, -ere, **mīsī**, **missus**, *send*.
superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *surpass*, *defeat*.
vincō, -ere, **vīcī**, **victus**, *conquer*.

EXERCISES

105. 1. Regit, regēs, mittēbātis, mittere. 2. Regimur, vincēmus, vincēbantur, dēfendēminī. 3. Superābis, mittēs, mittēris, appellāre. 4. Vincēbās, vinceris, dēfendēmur, mittēbāminī. 5. Vincitur, vincent, vincere, vincī, appellāre.

6. Socii populī Rōmānī ōlim appellābantur amīcī. 7. Socii tum erant validī sed ā Rōmānīs superābantur. 8. Nunc auxilium rogant et auxilium statim mittētur. 9. Amīcī populī Rōmānī dēfendentur. 10. Multa oppida et magnī agrī tum vāstābantur. 11. Rōmānī vīcōs et oppida pīlīs et gladiīs dēfendere videntur.

106. 1. He will be, he will praise, he will teach, he will send. 2. They will be, they will be praised, they will be taught, they will not be sent. 3. We shall be, we shall be praised, we shall not send help. 4. You will be, you will conquer, you will be defended. 5. To conquer, to be conquered, who will conquer? 6. Will help be sent by the allies? 7. Who was called just?



SIGNA ROMANA

1. Aquila 2. Signum 3. Vexillum

CHAPTER XVII

THIRD CONJUGATION: -iō Verbs

107. *Paradigm*

capiō, *take, seize*

Principal parts: **capiō, capere, cēpī, captus**

INDICATIVE

	Active Voice		Passive Voice	
	Present			
	I take, etc.		*I am taken*, etc.	
1.	capiō	capimus	capior	capimur
2.	capis	capitis	caperis (-re)	capiminī
3.	capit	capiunt	capitur	capiuntur
	Future			
	I shall take, etc.		*I shall be taken*, etc.	
1.	capiam	capiēmus	capiar	capiēmur
2.	capiēs	capiētis	capiēris (-re)	capiēminī
3.	capiet	capient	capiētur	capientur
	Imperfect			
	I was taking, etc.		*I was taken*, etc.	
1.	capiēbam	capiēbāmus	capiēbar	capiēbāmur
2.	capiēbās	capiēbātis	capiēbāris (-re)	capiēbāminī
3.	capiēbat	capiēbant	capiēbātur	capiēbantur

a. Capiō is a regular verb of the third conjugation like regō (103); but in the present, first person singular and third person plural, and all through the imperfect and future, the vowel i is added to the verb-stem.

b. In the third conjugation, verbs which end in -iō are conjugated like capiō; others like regō.

108. VOCABULARY

grātia, -ae, f., *favour*
proelium, -ī, n., *battle.*
tēlum, -ī, n., *weapon.*
itaque, conj., *and so, therefore.*
oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *attack, besiege.*
recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *refuse, reject.*
iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactus, *throw, hurl.*
faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus, *do, make.*
cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, *finish, complete, wear out.*
interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, *kill.*
fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrus,[1] *flee.*

EXERCISES

109. 1. Capit, regēs, capiēs, regēbātis, fugiēbātis. 2. Recūsābimus, capiēbāmur, capiuntur. 3. Regēmur, capiēmur, capiēbātis. 4. Regeris, regēris, docēberis, cūr recūsābis? 5. Dēfendere, dēfendī, iacere, iacī, oppugnāre, oppugnārī. 6. Jūstus vir grātiam amīcī nōn recūsābit sed amīcō grātiam faciet. 7. Virī pīla iaciunt, tēla iaciuntur. 8. Fugitīvī mox ā lēgātō capientur et interficientur. 9. Multa oppida oppugnābantur, itaque incolae proelium nōn recūsābant. 10. Multī virī nunc in proeliō interficiuntur sed bellum mox cōnficiētur.

110. 1. You take, you are taken, we shall take, we shall not be taken. 2. You will rule, we are not being conquered, they will soon be worn out by war. 3. Who will not do a favour for a friend? 4. The favour of a friend will not be rejected by a friend. 5. They are making war, weapons are thrown, many men are being killed in battle,

[1] In the principal parts of intransitive verbs, which can have no passive voice (76, *a*), and therefore no perfect passive participle, the future active participle, made from the same stem but ending in **-ūrus**, is given.

the inhabitants are fleeing.[1] 6. The town, having been attacked by the Romans, will soon be taken and destroyed by fire.

CHAPTER XVIII

REGŌ AND CAPIŌ: Indicative (*completed*)

III. *Paradigm*

Perfect

Active Voice	Passive Voice	Active Voice	Passive Voice
I have ruled, etc.	*I have been ruled*, etc.	*I have taken*, etc.	*I have been taken*, etc.
1. rēx**ī**	rēct**us sum**	cēp**ī**	capt**us sum**
2. rēx**istī**	rēct**us es**	cēp**istī**	capt**us es**
3. rēx**it**	rēct**us est**	cēp**it**	capt**us est**
1. rēx**imus**	rēct**ī sumus**	cēp**imus**	capt**ī sumus**
2. rēx**istis**	rēct**ī estis**	cēp**istis**	capt**ī estis**
3. rēx**ērunt** (-ēre)	rēct**ī sunt**	cēp**ērunt** (-ēre)	capt**ī sunt**

Future Perfect

I shall have ruled, etc.	*I shall have been ruled*, etc.	*I shall have taken*, etc.	*I shall have been taken*, etc.
1. rēx**erō**	rēct**us erō**	cēp**erō**	capt**us erō**
2. rēx**eris**	rēct**us eris**	cēp**eris**	capt**us eris**
3. rēx**erit**	rēct**us erit**	cēp**erit**	capt**us erit**
1. rēx**erimus**	rēct**ī erimus**	cēp**erimus**	capt**ī erimus**
2. rēx**eritis**	rēct**ī eritis**	cēp**eritis**	capt**ī eritis**
3. rēx**erint**	rēct**ī erunt**	cēp**erint**	capt**ī erunt**

[1] See 75, *d*.

Pluperfect

Active Voice	Passive Voice	Active Voice	Passive Voice
I had ruled, etc.	*I had been ruled*, etc.	*I had taken*, etc.	*I had been taken*, etc.
1. rēxeram	rēctus eram	cēperam	captus eram
2. rēxerās	rēctus erās	cēperās	captus erās
3. rēxerat	rēctus erat	cēperat	captus erat
1. rēxerāmus	rēctī erāmus	cēperāmus	captī erāmus
2. rēxerātis	rēctī erātis	cēperātis	captī erātis
3. rēxerant	rēctī erant	cēperant	captī erant

Perfect Infinitive

rēxisse, *to have ruled* — rēctus esse, *to have been ruled*

cēpisse, *to have taken* — captus esse, *to have been taken*

112. VOCABULARY

Gallus, -ī, m., *a Gaul.*

Gallī, -ōrum, plu., m., *the Gauls.*

Germānus, -a, -um, *German.*

Germānī, -ōrum, plu., m., *the Germans.*

Haeduī, -ōrum, plu., m., *the Haedui.*

lātus, -a, -um, *broad, wide.*

etiam, adv., *even.*

adrogantia, -ae, f., *arrogance.*

contendō, -ere, -dī, -tus, *contend, strive, hasten, hurry on.*

incendō, -ere, -dī, -sus, *burn, set fire to.*

sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, *assume, take, spend.*

a. Some Latin proper nouns have English equivalents, as: **Germānī**, *Germans*; **Gallī**, *Gauls*. For many there are no modern equivalents, as: **Rēmī**, **Labiēnus**. The nominative forms of such words are used in English without change. In translating, accent such words according to the Latin rules, but give the letters the English sound.

b. Hereafter proper nouns which are to be used in English without change of form will not be given in the vocabularies.

EXERCISES

113. 1. Rēxistī, cēpērunt, pīla iēcerās. 2. Rēctus eris, captī eritis, tēla capta erant. 3. Rēxerās, captus eris, sagittae iactae sunt. 4. Rēximus, volnerātī erāmus, nūntiī missī sunt. 5. Sagittās iēcisse videntur, sagittae iactae esse videntur. 6. Helvētiī lātōs agrōs nōn habēbant. 7. Itaque agrōs Haeduōrum occupābant. 8. Sed Haeduī, ab Helvētiīs superātī, auxilium rogāvērunt. 9. Auxilium statim ā Rōmānīs missum est. 10. In bellō Helvētiī multa oppida et vīcōs incenderant.

114. 1. You have ruled, you had conquered, you will have contended. 2. We have ruled, they had been sent, he will have been conquered. 3. To praise, to be praised, to take, to be taken, to have conquered, to have been conquered. 4. Ariovistus had been called friend by the Roman people. 5. But he conquered the Gauls in many battles. 6. And so he had assumed great arrogance, and even dared to make war.

CHAPTER XIX

REVIEW OF VERB-FORMS

115. *a.* Review the inflection of the Indicative, both voices, and the present and perfect Infinitive of the model verbs **laudō** (473), **moneō** (476), **regō** (477), **capiō** (478), and **sum** (81, 91).

b. Review the principal parts of the verbs given in 100, 104, 108, 112. These verbs may then be conjugated like the model verbs. See 100, *a.*

c. Write out the list of personal endings of the perfect active

(91); of the other tenses in the active (70) and the passive (74). What is the tense-sign of the imperfect (70, *b*)? of the future in the first and second conjugations (70, *c*)? in the third conjugation (103, *c*)? How may the stem of the perfect always be found (100, *d*)? What is the tense-sign of the pluperfect (99, *c*)? of the future perfect? What is the characteristic vowel of each of the first three conjugations (103, *a*)?

EXERCISES

116. 1. Es, esse, regī, fuisse, laudāvisse, capī. 2. Eris, fueritis, erunt, fuistī, fuerāmus, dominō erant nigrī equī. 3. Laudārī, laudāminī, laudābitis, laudāberis, laudāvistī, laudāverat, puerī laudātī erant. 4. Monēbis, monēbimur, monēberis, monēmur, monuistis, monueritis, puellae monitae erunt. 5. Regitis, regeris, regēris, rēximus, rēxeritis, rēctī erāmus. 6. Capit, caperis, capiēris, cēperit, capientur. 7. Oppida capta sunt, oppidum captum esse vidētur. 8. Līberōs monēre dēbēmus, līberī monērī dēbent. 9. Laudāris, capiēminī, rēctī eritis, monēminī, rēxeris. 10. Estis, monuimus, laudābiminī, monentur, oppida capiēbantur.

117. 1. To be taken, to have ruled, you will be ruled, they are advised. 2. You have been, you have taken, they will be taken, I shall have been warned. 3. You will be, they will be praised, the girls have been warned. 4. You will rule, they were being praised, you ought to be praised. 5. The town seems to have been captured, the inhabitants are now being captured. 6. The poor slave does not have new books. 7. Marcus, the farmer's son, will be a sailor.

PILUM

CHAPTER XX

THIRD DECLENSION: Mute Stems

Ablative of Manner, etc.

118. *Paradigm*

	rēx, m., *king*	**mīles**, m., *soldier*	**prīnceps**, m., *chief*	
Stem and Root	**rēg-**	**mīlit-**	**prīncip-**	
		Singular		Terminations Mas. and Fem.
Nom.	rēx	mīles	prīnceps	**-s**
Acc.	rēgem	mīlitem	prīncipem	**-em**
Gen.	rēgis	mīlitis	prīncipis	**-is**
Dat.	rēgī	mīlitī	prīncipī	**-ī**
Abl.	rēge	mīlite	prīncipe	**-e**
		Plural		
Nom.	rēgēs	mīlitēs	prīncipēs	**-ēs**
Acc.	rēgēs	mīlitēs	prīncipēs	**-ēs**
Gen.	rēgum	mīlitum	prīncipum	**-um**
Dat.	rēgibus	mīlitibus	prīncipibus	**-ibus**
Abl.	rēgibus	mīlitibus	prīncipibus	**-ibus**

caput, n., *head*. Stem and root, **capit-**

	Singular	Terminations	Plural	Terminations
Nom.	caput	—	capita	**-a**
Acc.	caput	—	capita	**-a**
Gen.	capitis	**-is**	capitum	**-um**
Dat.	capitī	**-ī**	capitibus	**-ibus**
Abl.	capite	**-e**	capitibus	**-ibus**

a. The stem of nouns of the third declension ends in a consonant or **i**. In consonant stems, which have no characteristic

stem-vowel (*22, b*), the stem and root are the same and are found by dropping **-is** from the genitive singular, and the different cases are formed by adding the terminations to this stem.

b. In the nominative singular the last vowel of the stem is often changed as seen above in **mīles, prīnceps,** and **caput.**

c. The consonant **c** or **g** before **s** unites with the **s** and forms **x**, as: **dux, ducis** (stem **duc-**), and **rēx, rēgis** (stem **rēg-**); while **d** or **t** is dropped before **s**, as in **lapis, lapidis** (stem **lapid-**); **virtūs, virtūtis** (stem **virtūt-**).

d. Decline together **bonus mīles, magna virtūs, magnum caput.**

119. RULE. *The ablative with* **cum** *is used to denote manner*, as: **cum dīligentiā labōrant**, *they toil with diligence*, or *diligently.*

a. But the preposition may be omitted if the ablative is modified by an adjective, as: **magnā dīligentiā labōrant**, *they toil with great diligence.*

120. RULE. *The ablative with* **cum** *is used to denote accompaniment*, as: **lēgātum cum mīlitibus mittit**, *he sends the lieutenant with the soldiers.*

a. The preposition is rarely omitted.

NOTE. — The ablative with **cum** is also used with verbs of *association* and *contention*, as: **cum Germānīs contendunt**, *they contend with the Germans*; and **cum Catulō habitat**, *he lives with Catulus.*

121. VOCABULARY

dux, ducis, m., *leader.*
pāx, pācis, f., *peace.*
lapis, -idis, m., *stone.*
custōs, -ōdis, m. or f., *guard, guardian, keeper.*
pēs, pedis, m., *foot.*
pedes, -itis, m., *foot-soldier*; plu., *infantry.*
eques, -itis, m., *horseman*; plu., *cavalry.*
obses, -idis, m., *hostage.*
salūs, -ūtis, f., *safety.*
virtūs, -ūtis, f., *bravery, courage, virtue.*
fuga, -ae, f., *flight.*
dīligentia, -ae, f., *diligence, care.*
studium, -ī, n., *zeal, desire.*
petō, -ere, -īvī or **-iī, -ītus**, *seek, beg.*

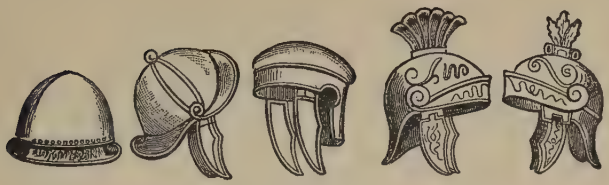
EXERCISES

122. 1. Fugā equitum territī, etiam socii salūtem fugā petunt. 2. Cēpistisne tēla, mīlitēs?[1] Gallī lapidēs et pīla iaciunt. 3. Miser mīles, in proeliō volnerātus, est aeger. 4. In castrīs fuit magnus numerus mīlitum volnerātōrum. 5. Pācem cum prīncipibus Galliae faciunt. 6. Dux Crassum, lēgātum, cum multīs equitibus mīsit. 7. Multī mīlitēs lapidibus et pīlīs volnerābantur. 8. Pedēs miserī peditis asperīs lapidibus volnerātī erant. 9. Ubiī, ab equitibus Suēvōrum superātī, pācem petēbant. 10. Lēgātōs mīserant et Germānīs obsidēs dabant.

123. 1. Of a good soldier, of great courage, of good kings. 2. We see the heads of the leaders, we praise the courage of the soldiers. 3. The soldiers fought with zeal and courage. 4. The town was saved by the zeal[2] and courage of the leader. 5. Sabinus, the lieutenant, had been sent with a large number of horsemen. 6. The guards were defending the camp with care. 7. By the vigilance of the guards the camp was saved.

[1] 47. [2] 48.

EQUES



GALEAE

CHAPTER XXI

THIRD DECLENSION: Liquid Stems

124. *Paradigm*

	cōnsul, m., *consul*	**legiō**, f., *legion*	**homō**, m. or f., *man, person*	**pater**, m., *father*
Stem and Root	**cōnsul-**	**legiōn-**	**homin-**	**patr-**
	SINGULAR			
Nom.	cōnsul	legiō	homō	pater
Acc.	cōnsulem	legiōnem	hominem	patrem
Gen.	cōnsulis	legiōnis	hominis	patris
Dat.	cōnsulī	legiōnī	hominī	patrī
Abl.	cōnsule	legiōne	homine	patre
	PLURAL			
Nom.	cōnsulēs	legiōnēs	hominēs	patrēs
Acc.	cōnsulēs	legiōnēs	hominēs	patrēs
Gen.	cōnsulum	legiōnum	hominum	patrum
Dat.	cōnsulibus	legiōnibus	hominibus	patribus
Abl.	cōnsulibus	legiōnibus	hominibus	patribus

a. Decline together **magnus labor**, **magna multitūdō**.

125. Neuters

	nōmen, n., *name*	genus, n., *race*	corpus, n., *body*	iter, n., *road*
Stem and Root	nōmin-	gener-	corpor-	itiner-
	SINGULAR			
Nom.	nōmen	genus	corpus	iter
Acc.	nōmen	genus	corpus	iter
Gen.	nōminis	generis	corporis	itineris
Dat.	nōminī	generī	corporī	itinerī
Abl.	nōmine	genere	corpore	itinere
	PLURAL			
Nom.	nōmina	genera	corpora	itinera
Acc.	nōmina	genera	corpora	itinera
Gen.	nōminum	generum	corporum	itinerum
Dat.	nōminibus	generibus	corporibus	itineribus
Abl.	nōminibus	generibus	corporibus	itineribus

a. Decline together **magnum iter** and **flūmen longum.**

126. VOCABULARY

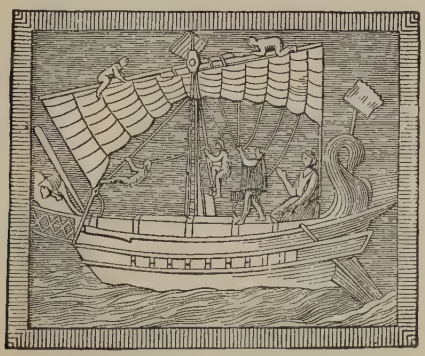
ad, prep. with acc., *to, toward, near.*
flōs, -ōris, m., *flower.*
flūmen, -inis, n., *river.*
frāter, -tris, m., *brother.* [*kind.*
genus, -eris, n., *race, class,*
patria, -ae, f., *country.*
iter, itineris, n., *road, route, march.*
labor, ōris, m., *labour, work.*
māter, -tris, f., *mother.*
multitūdō, -inis, f., *multitude, great number.*
semper, adv., *always, ever.*
coniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, *hurl, throw.*
intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus, *know, understand.*

EXERCISES

127. 1. Nōmina rēgum, capita equōrum, pedēs hominum. 2. Cōnsul multīs cum legiōnibus peditum iter faciēbat. 3. Fīliīs et fīliābus rēgis sunt pulchrī equī. 4. Līberī bonī ā patribus et mātribus semper amantur. 5. Multī agrī et vīcī ā rēgis mīlitibus incendiō vāstābantur. 6. Casticī[1] pater rēgnum in Sēquanīs[1] obtinēbat. 7. Nōnne magnum numerum equitum peditumque ad flūmen vidēs? 8. Mīlitēs multitūdinem lapidum et pīlōrum coniciēbant. 9. Multī hominēs lapidibus et pīlīs mīlitum volnerātī sunt.

128. 1. We see the large horses and good horsemen. 2. The large bodies and great courage of the Germans frightened the Roman soldiers. 3. The soldiers will make the long march with great danger. 4. Do you know the names and kinds of flowers? 5. With great zeal the farmer's son is working in the field with father and brother. 6. The Roman legions will defend the name and safety of their country by bravery.

[1] 112 *a*, *b*.



NAVIS ET NAUTAE

CHAPTER XXII

THIRD DECLENSION: i-Stems

Genitive of Quality

129. *Paradigm*

	hostis, m., *enemy*	**turris**, f., *tower*	**vīs**, f., *force*, plu., *strength*	**imber**, m., *rain*	
Stem:	**hosti-**	**turri-**	**vī-, vīri-**	**imbri-**	
Root:	**host-**	**turr-**	**vī-, vīr-**	**imbr-**	
		SINGULAR			TERMINATIONS
Nom.	hostis	turris	vīs	imber	**-is**
Acc.	hostem	turrim, -em	vim	imbrem	**-em, -im**
Gen.	hostis	turris	**(vīs)**	imbris	**-is**
Dat.	hostī	turrī	**(vī)**	imbrī	**-ī**
Abl.	hoste	turrī, -e	vī	imbrī, -e	**-ī, -e**
		PLURAL			
Nom.	hostēs	turrēs	vīrēs	imbrēs	**-ēs**
Acc.	hostīs, -ēs	turrīs, -ēs	vīrīs, -ēs	imbrīs, -ēs	**-īs, -ēs**
Gen.	hostium	turrium	vīrium	imbrium	**-ium**
Dat.	hostibus	turribus	vīribus	imbribus	**-ibus**
Abl.	hostibus	turribus	vīribus	imbribus	**-ibus**

130. Pure **i**-stems include:

1. Parisyllabic[1] nouns in **-is** and four in **-er.**[2]
2. Neuters in **-e**, **-al**, and **-ar.**

[1] A parisyllabic noun is one whose genitive case has the same number of syllables as the nominative.

[2] **imber, linter, uter, venter.**

131. Neuters

	mare, n., *sea*	**animal**, n., *animal*	**calcar**, n., *spur*	
Stem:	**mari-**	**animāli-**	**calcāri-**	
Root:	**mar-**	**animāl-**	**calcār-**	
		SINGULAR		CASE ENDINGS
Nom.	mare	animal	calcar	——
Acc.	mare	animal	calcar	——
Gen.	maris	animālis	calcāris	**-is**
Dat.	marī	animālī	calcārī	**-ī**
Abl.	marī	animālī	calcārī	**-ī**
		PLURAL		
Nom.	maria	animālia	calcāria	**-ia**
Acc.	maria	animālia	calcāria	**-ia**
Gen.	marium[1]	animālium	calcārium	**-ium**
Dat.	maribus	animālibus	calcāribus	**-ibus**
Abl.	maribus	animālibus	calcāribus	**-ibus**

132. *a.* Nouns with **i**-stems have **-ium** in the genitive plural.

b. All neuters have the nominative and accusative plural in **-ia**.

c. The accusative plural, masculine and feminine, ends in **-īs** or **-ēs**.

d. The accusative singular of a few words ends in **-im**, as: **turris**, *tower*, acc. **turrim**.

e. The ablative singular of neuters ends in **-ī**; also a few nouns of the other genders sometimes have the ablative singular in **-ī**, as: **avis**, **cīvis**, **fīnis**, **ignis**, **nāvis**, **turris**.

[1] The genitive plural of **mare** is sometimes written **marum**.

133. VOCABULARY

collis, **-is**, m., *hill.*
excursiō, **-ōnis**, f., *raid.*
iūmentum, **-ī**, n., *pack-animal.*
onus, **-eris**, n., *burden, weight.*
altus, **-a**, **-um**, *high, deep.*
crēber, **-bra**, **-brum**, *frequent, repeated.*
atque, or **ac**, conj., *and.*
ex, or **ē**, prep. with abl., *out of, from.*
locō or **conlocō**, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *place, station.*
cōnsūmō, **-ere**, **-sūmpsī**, **-sūmptus**, *consume.*
cōnstituō, **-ere**, **-uī**, **-ūtus**, *erect, station, arrange, determine.*

NOTE. — The forms **atque** and **ex** are used before vowels or **h**, and sometimes before consonants; **ac** and **ē**, the shortened forms of **atque** and **ex**, are used only before consonants. Compare 76, *c*.

EXERCISES

134. 1. In agrīs sunt multa genera flōrum. 2. Multa animālia altō in marī habitant. 3. Quis cōnstituit altam turrim in colle? 4. Rōmānī erant virī magnae virtūtis.[1] 5. Magnīs vīribus turrīs magnī oneris [1] in mūrō conlocābant. 6. In bellō Helvētiī multa iūmenta habēbant. 7. Multum frūmentum ā magnā multitūdine iūmentōrum atque hominum cōnsūmēbātur. 8. Equitēs crēbrās excursiōnēs ex oppidō faciēbant. 9. Haeduī Ariovistō ac Sēquanīs obsidēs dederant. 10. Gallī virtūte ac studiō equitum Rōmānōrum terrēbantur.

135. 1. The deep seas are inhabited by many kinds of animals. 2. Near the river was a high hill. 3. Foot-soldiers were stationed on the hill by the leader. 4. Cæsar praised the courage and zeal of the soldiers. 5. Much grain will be destroyed by the frequent raids of the cavalry.

[1] The words **magnae virtūtis** together in 4 express the

quality of the Romans, and **magnī oneris** in 5 describe the towers. Such a use of the genitive with an adjective is called the *descriptive genitive* or *genitive of quality*.

136. RULE. *A noun, with an adjective, may be used in the genitive to denote quality.*

CHAPTER XXIII

THIRD DECLENSION: Mixed i-Stems

Ablative of Cause

137. Nouns with mixed i-stems are declined in the singular like nouns with consonant stems; in the plural like nouns with i-stems, thus:

Paradigm

	caedēs, f., *slaughter*	**arx**, f., *citadel*	**cliēns**, m., *client*	**cīvitās**, f., *state*
Variable Stem:	**caed** (i)-	**arc** (i)-	**client** (i)-	**cīvitāt** (i)-
Root:	**caed-**	**arc-**	**client-**	**cīvitāt-**
	SINGULAR			
Nom.	caedēs	arx	cliēns	cīvitās
Acc.	caedem	arcem	clientem	cīvitātem
Gen.	caedis	arcis	clientis	cīvitātis
Dat.	caedī	arcī	clientī	cīvitātī
Abl.	caede	arce	cliente	cīvitāte
	PLURAL			
Nom.	caedēs	arcēs	clientēs	cīvitātēs
Acc.	caedīs, -ēs	arcīs, -ēs	clientīs, -ēs	cīvitātīs, -ēs
Gen.	caedium	arcium	clientium	cīvitātum (-ium)
Dat.	caedibus	arcibus	clientibus	cīvitātibus
Abl.	caedibus	arcibus	clientibus	cīvitātibus

138. Mixed **i**-stems include:

1. Parisyllabic nouns in **-ēs**.

2. Monosyllables in **-s** or **-x** preceded by a consonant, as: **pōns, arx**, etc.

3. Nouns in **-ns** and **-rs**, as: **cliēns, cohors**, etc.

4. Nouns in **-tās**.

NOTE. — Nouns in **-tās** generally have **-um** instead of **-ium** in the genitive plural.

139. **Gender in the Third Declension**

1. Most nouns in **-ĕs** which increase in the genitive, also nouns in **-er, -or**, and **-ōs**, are masculine.

2. Nouns in **-ēs** which do not increase in the genitive, also nouns in **-ō, -ās, -is, -ūs** (gen. **-ūtis** or **-ūdis**), **-x**, and those in **-s** preceded by a consonant, are feminine.

3. Nouns in **-a, -e, -l, -n, -ar, -ŭs** (gen. **-oris** or **-eris**), are neuter.

NOTE. — Many exceptions to these rules will be found. But these are best learned from practice. Of course all nouns denoting males are masculine and those denoting females are feminine, whatever the ending may be (19, *a*).

140. ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLE

Custōdēs vigilantiā laudātī sunt.
The guards were praised for their vigilance.

a. In this sentence **vigilantiā** denotes the cause or reason why the guards were praised, and may be translated *because of, by reason of, on account of, for*, etc.

141. RULE. *Cause is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.*

142. VOCABULARY

annus, **-ī**, m., *year.*
celeritās, **-ātis**, f., *swiftness.*
comparō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *get together, procure.*
fīnitimus, **-a**, **-um**, *neighbouring, near*; plu., *neighbours.*
hīberna, **-ōrum**, plu., n., *winter quarters.*
magnitūdō, **-inis**, f., *greatness, size.*
opus, **-eris**, n., *work.*
permoveō, **-ēre**, **-mōvī**, **-mōtus**, *move greatly, trouble.*
pondus, **-eris**, n., *weight.*
saxum, **-ī**, n., *rock.*
tempus, **-oris**, n., *time.*
urbs, **-is**, f., *city.*

EXERCISES

143. 1. Arx in altō colle conlocāta est. 2. Custōdēs arcem virtūte dēfendent. 3. Saxa magnī ponderis in mūrō conlocāta erant. 4. Hostēs magnitūdine operis et celeritāte[1] Rōmānōrum permōtī sunt. 5. Caesar magnum equitum numerum ex fīnitimīs cīvitātibus comparāvit. 6. Dux cum cōpiīs[2] equitum magnā celeritāte[3] iter faciēbat. 7. Custōdēs arcis ā rēgis mīlitibus interficiēbantur. 8. Nūntius ducī caedem custōdum nūntiāvit. 9. Mīlitēs urbem etiam incendere audēbant. 10. Annī tempore[1] atque imbribus legiōnēs in Senonibus[4] in hībernīs conlocābantur.

144. 1. The neighbouring states will send deputies. 2. Deputies of great vigilance will be sent by many states. 3. We praise the work and labour of the soldiers. 4. The leaders ought to be praised for their courage.[1] 5. We will always seek the peace and safety of the state. 6. The Helvetii made war with the neighbouring states with great zeal.

[1] 141. [2] 120. [3] 119, *a*.

[4] The ending **-ibus** shows that this word is of the third declension, and the nominative plural must therefore be **Senonēs**. See 112, *a*, *b*.

CHAPTER XXIV

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

Adjectives of One Termination

145. *a.* **prūdēns**, *wise, sagacious*; stem, **prūdenti-**; root, **prūdent-**

	Singular		Plural	
	Mas. and Fem.	Neu.	Mas. and Fem.	Neu.
Nom.	prūdēns	prūdēns	prūdentēs	prūdentia
Acc.	prūdentem	prūdēns	prūdentēs, -īs	prūdentia
Gen.	prūdentis	prūdentis	prūdentium	prūdentium
Dat.	prūdentī	prūdentī	prūdentibus	prūdentibus
Abl.	prūdentī	prūdentī	prūdentibus	prūdentibus

b. **audāx**, *bold*: stem, **audāci-**; root, **audāc-**

	Singular		Plural	
	Mas. and Fem.	Neu.	Mas. and Fem.	Neu.
Nom.	audāx	audāx	audācēs	audācia
Acc.	audācem	audāx	audācēs, -īs	audācia
Gen.	audācis	audācis	audācium	audācium
Dat.	audācī	audācī	audācibus	audācibus
Abl.	audācī	audācī	audācibus	audācibus

c. **vetus**, *old*: stem and root, **veter-**

	Singular		Plural	
	Mas. and Fem.	Neu.	Mas. and Fem.	Neu.
Nom.	vetus	vetus	veterēs	vetera
Acc.	veterem	vetus	veterēs	vetera
Gen.	veteris	veteris	veterum	veterum
Dat.	veterī	veterī	veteribus	veteribus
Abl.	vetere	vetere	veteribus	veteribus

Adjectives of Two Terminations

146. **omnis**, *all*: stem, **omni-**; root, **omn-**

	Singular		Plural	
	Mas. and Fem.	Neu.	Mas. and Fem.	Neu.
Nom.	omnis	omne	omnēs	omnia
Acc.	omnem	omne	omnēs, -īs	omnia
Gen.	omnis	omnis	omnium	omnium
Dat.	omnī	omnī	omnibus	omnibus
Abl.	omnī	omnī	omnibus	omnibus

Adjectives of Three Terminations

147. **ācer**, *eager, active, spirited*: stem, **ācri-**; root, **ācr-**

	Mas.	Fem.	Neu.
	Singular		
Nom.	ācer	ācris	ācre
Acc.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre
Gen.	ācris	ācris	ācris
Dat.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
Abl.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
	Plural		
Nom.	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Acc.	ācrīs, -ēs	ācrīs, -ēs	ācria
Gen.	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
Dat.	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Abl.	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

a. In all cases, except the nominative and accusative, all adjectives of the third declension have one form for all genders.

b. Most adjectives of the third declension ending in **-er** have three terminations in the nominative singular like **ācer**, those in **-is** two like **omnis**, all others only one.

c. All adjectives of the third declension with three terminations like **ācer**, or with two terminations like **omnis**, have **i**-stems, and always have **ī** in the ablative singular.

d. Adjectives of one termination, except **vetus** and a very few others, also have **ī**-stems, and end in **ī** (rarely **e**) in the ablative.

NOTE — Adjectives, though they must always agree in gender, number, and case with the nouns which they limit, often belong to a different declension.

148. Decline together **fortis dux, breve tempus, ācer equus, triste bellum, bonus mīles, pulchra urbs.**

149. VOCABULARY

angustus, -a, -um, *narrow.*
brevis, -e, *short.*
celer, -eris, -ere, *swift, quick,* **rapid.**
Cicerō, -ōnis, m., *Cicero.*
cōnsul, -is, m., *consul.*
dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead, draw.*
ēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead out.*
fortis, -e, *brave.*
gravis, -e, *heavy, severe.*
imperātor, -ōris, m., *commander.*
redūcō, -ere, dūxī, -ductus, *lead back.*
Rhēnus, -ī, m., *the Rhine.*
trādūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead across.*
trāns, prep. with acc., *across, on the other side of.*

EXERCISES

150. 1. Onera fortium mīlitum sunt gravia. 2. Dux ācer ad fīnitimam cīvitātem cum omnibus cōpiīs contendit. 3. Nōnne incolae oppidī erant audācēs et validī? 4. Quis pulchram urbem prūdentī cōnsiliō servāvit? Urbs ā Cicerōne, cōnsule, servāta est. 5. Veterēs cōpiae hostium ā fortī duce dūcēbantur. 6. Audācēs equitēs salūtem celerī fugā petiērunt. 7. Ex castrīs ācrīs cōpiās ēdūxit et legiōnēs in colle cōnstituit. 8. Sed mox fortēs mīlitēs ad castra re-

dūcentur. 9. Ariovistus multitūdinem audācium hominum trāns flūmen Rhēnum trādūxit. 10. Novus imperātor cum veteribus hostium cōpiīs contendere audēbat.

151. 1. The road was short and narrow. 2. All the inhabitants of the city were brave. 3. A bold horseman loves a spirited horse. 4. The brave leader was praised by all the soldiers. 5. Many legions of veteran troops had been stationed on the other side of the river. 6. The neighbours were frightened by the frequent and rapid raids of the cavalry.

CHAPTER XXV

REVIEW OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

Reading Lesson

152. Review the paradigms given in 118, 124, 125, 129, 131, 137. Write out the list of terminations of nouns of the third declension with consonant stems as given in 118. Give the rules for i-stems (130, 138), and write the list of terminations, masculine and feminine (129), neuter (131). How do these terminations differ from those of nouns with consonant stems? Give the rules of gender for nouns of the third declension (139).

153. Decline the following nouns, taken from vocabularies 121, 126, 133, 142, giving the stem, gender, and meaning:

dux	eques	labor	excursiō
pāx	virtūs	flōs	urbs
lapis	salūs	flūmen	pondus
custōs	multitūdō	collis	celeritās
pēs	māter	obses	tempus
pedes	frāter	onus	opus

154. DEMOSTHENES THE ORATOR

Dēmosthenēs[1] fuit ōrātōrum prīnceps. Nātūrā bonam vōcem nōn habuit. Verba nōn rēctē prōnūntiābat. Itaque magnō labōre ac studiō impedīmentum vōcis superāre cōnstituit. Parvōs lapidēs in ōre locāvit et in maris lītore multās ōrātiōnēs prōnūntiāvit. Magnā dīligentiā omnia impedīmenta vīcit. Tum apud multitūdinem hominum ōrātiōnēs habēre[2] audēbat. Clāmōre populī excitātī nōn permōtus est. Ēloquentiā populum ad bellum contrā Philippum, rēgem Macedoniae,[1] excitāvit et patriam servāvit.

155. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

apud, prep. with acc., *in the presence of.*
clāmor, -ōris, m., *shout, clamour.*
contrā, prep. with acc., *against.*
ēloquentiā, -ae, f., *eloquence.*
excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *excite, arouse.*
impedīmentum, -ī, n., *impediment.*
lītus, -oris, n., *shore.*
nātūra, -ae, f., *nature.*
ōrātiō, -ōnis, f., *oration, speech.*
ōrātor, -ōris, m., *orator.*
ōs, ōris, n., *mouth.*
patria, -ae, f., *country, native land.*
Philippus, -ī, *Philip.*
prōnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *pronounce, utter, deliver.*
rēctē, adv., *correctly.*
vōx, vōcis, f., *voice, speech.*

[1] 112, *b*. [2] **habēre** with **ōrātiōnem** = *deliver an oration*, or *make a speech.*

TUBA

CHAPTER XXVI

READING LESSON WITH INTRODUCTION TO CÆSAR

Ablative of Specification

NOTE. — The meaning of the reading lessons and of many of the sentences in the various exercises that follow will be plainer to the pupils if they study the following:

156. INTRODUCTION TO THE READING LESSONS

During the period of conquest and expansion the Romans used to annex all conquered territory as provinces. It was customary for the consuls and prætors to have their power extended for the year after their term of office. Under the title of proconsul or proprætor they were sent to govern these provinces. In B. C. 58, Cæsar, who had been consul the year before, took command of the province of Gaul. This consisted of the valley of the Padus (Po) and of the southern portion of what we call France.

Ancient Gaul comprised for the most part the territory now occupied by France, Holland, and Belgium. The Helvetii, one of the bravest tribes of Gaul, occupied what is now Switzerland. On the other side of the Rhine were the Germans. About the time when Cæsar took command of Gaul, a large number of Germans crossed the Rhine and were about to dispossess the Gauls of their land. The Helvetii also, hemmed in by too narrow limits, were just preparing to migrate to the west in search of more spacious dwelling-places.

The territory of the Hædui, one of the most powerful Gallic tribes, who were friends of the Romans, was especially threatened. So they appealed to Cæsar for help. Thus Cæsar was brought into war with the Helvetii, later with Ariovistus, king of the Germans, then with other tribes of

Gaul. Hostilities with various tribes continued for eight years, during which Cæsar proved himself a great general.

After finishing the campaign in Gaul, Cæsar became a rival of Pompey for the supremacy in Rome. The civil war followed, the republic was overthrown, and Cæsar became the first emperor of Rome. As emperor Cæsar was no less successful in organizing and ruling the empire than he had been in conquering the Gauls. But his great achievements were suddenly brought to an end by his assassination in 44 B. C.

Cæsar himself wrote an account of his several campaigns in Gaul. These accounts make up the Commentaries of Cæsar, which are now read in schools. From these Commentaries many of the exercises and passages for translation in this book are taken.

157. ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLE

Mārcus frātrem virtūte superat.
Marcus surpasses his brother in courage.

Virtūte is in the ablative case, and tells *in what respect* Marcus excels.

158. RULE. *The ablative of specification is used to tell in what respect a thing is true.*

159. READING LESSON

Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partīs trīs. Belgae et Aquītānī et Celtae Galliam incolunt. Celtae ā Rōmānīs Gallī appellantur. Helvētiī quoque sunt pars Celtārum. Germānī trāns Rhēnum incolunt. Cum Germānīs Helvētiī crēbrīs proeliīs contendunt. Itaque Helvētiī reliquōs Gallōs virtūte superant. Sed magnō dolōre adficiēbantur, quod angustōs fīnīs habēbant. Praetereā altīs montibus et lātīs flūminibus continēbantur.

160. VOCABULARY

dolor, -ōris, m., *grief, sorrow.*
fīnis, -is, m., *end*; plu., *borders, territory.*
mōns, montis, m., *mountain, hill.*
pars, -tis, f., *part*; *side* (of a river), *direction* (of a march).
praetereā, adv., *besides, moreover.*
quod, conj., *because.*
quoque, adv., *also.*
reliquus, -a, -um, *rest, remaining, the rest of.*
trēs, tria, like plu. of **omnis**, *three.*

adficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, *affect, afflict.*
contineō, -ēre, -uī, contentus, *hold, restrain, hem in, bound.*
dīvidō, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsus, *divide.*
incolō, -ere, -uī, ——, *dwell, live, inhabit.*

CHAPTER XXVII

REVIEW OF ADJECTIVES AND THE RULES OF SYNTAX

161. Review the declension of adjectives, 53, 61, 145–147; and the rules of syntax, 29–31, 38, 40, 47, 48, 54, 83, 85, 87, 93, 119, 120, 136, 141, 158.

READING LESSON

162. Apud Helvētiōs nōbilis fuit et dīves vir, nōmine Orgetorīx. Clientium magnum numerum habēbat. Rēgnī cupiditāte inductus, Orgetorīx coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit. Casticus rēgnum in cīvitāte multōs annōs obtinuerat. Dumnorīx erat audāx homō apud Haeduōs. Trium gentium prīncipēs omnem Galliam regere cupīvērunt. Sed coniūrātiō est Helvētiīs ēnūntiāta et cīvitās Dumnorīgem damnāre parābat. Sed Dumnorīx auxiliō multōrum clientium

effūgit. Tamen breve erat spatium vītae. Modus mortis est incertus.

NOTE. — The few words in this passage not used before will be found in the general vocabulary.

CHAPTER XXVIII

FOURTH CONJUGATION: Indicative (*complete*)

Comparative View of the Four Conjugations

163. Learn the conjugation of **audiō** through the indicative mood, active and passive (479); also learn the present and perfect infinitive, active and passive.

Comparative Review

164. Compare the forms of **audiō** with the corresponding forms of **laudō**, **moneō**, **regō**, and **capiō**, as given in 473, 476, 477, 478. Conjugate each of these verbs through the indicative mood, both voices. What are the characteristic vowels of the four conjugations (103, *a*)? Illustrate by giving the present infinitive active of a verb of each conjugation.

How is the present infinitive passive formed from the active? Cf. 75, *c*, and 103, *d*. Give the present infinitive passive of a verb of each conjugation. Give the personal endings of the perfect indicative active; also of the other tenses.

What is the tense-sign of the imperfect? the pluperfect? the future perfect? What Latin tenses will express the meaning of the English *I was praising? I have praised? I praised?* Why do we need to give the principal parts of verbs?

Give the present stem of a verb of each of the four conjugations, and tell what other tenses are formed from the same stem. What tenses are formed from the perfect stem? How is the perfect stem found? Write the perfect stem of **laudō**, **moneō**, **regō**, **capiō**, **audiō**. In what tenses are all verbs conjugated alike?

165. VOCABULARY

bellicōsus, -a, -um, *warlike, fond of war.*
gēns, gentis, f., *tribe, race, nation.*
glōria, -ae, f., *honour, reputation, glory.*
maleficium, -ī, n., *harm, mischief.*
mātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *hasten, make haste.*
mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *fortify.*
pūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *punish.*
veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventūrus, *come.*

EXERCISES

166. 1. Audīs, capis, audiēbās, nōn audītī erant. 2. Audiar, audīris, caperis, audiēris. 3. Audīverāmus, audiētis, audītī eritis, audientur. 4. Audīre, pūnīrī, pūnītus erās, quis pūnītus est? 5. Audīvisse, pūnītus esse, veniēbat, vēnit. 6. Audītī eritis, audiēminī, audiēbāminī, audīvistis. 7. Venīre mātūrat, laudārī dēbent, urbs magnā vī mūnīta est. 8. Mīlitēs asperī maleficiō ā prūdentī imperātōre pūnientur. 9. Equitēs erant audācēs et celeritāte hostīs superābant. 10. Hostēs, clāmōribus equitum permōtī, in castra venīre mātūrāvērunt. 11. Equitēs bellicōsī erant.

167. 1. We hear, you will punish, they have come, the camp will be fortified. 2. He will have been heard, shouts were heard, the camp has been fortified. 3. Shouts seem to have been heard, the camp ought to be fortified and defended. 4. The leader heard the shouts and at once made haste to fortify the camp. 5. The Helvetii surpassed the neighbouring tribes in bravery.

CHAPTER XXIX

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

The Ablative with the Comparative

168. 1. There are three degrees of comparison in Latin as in English, as:

Positive	*Comparative*	*Superlative*
cārus, *dear*	cārior, *dearer*	cārissimus, *dearest*

2. The comparative is regularly formed by adding **-ior** (neu. **-ius**), and the superlative by adding **-issimus** (**-a, -um**) to the base of the positive.

NOTE. — The root of the positive of any adjective is found by dropping the termination of the genitive singular, as: **altus**, genitive **altī**, root **alt-**.

3. Compare the following:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
altus, *high*	alt**ior**, alt**ius**	alt**issimus**, **-a**, **-um**
fortis, *brave*	fort**ior**, fort**ius**	fort**issimus**, **-a**, **-um**
audāx, *bold*	audāc**ior**, audāc**ius**	audāc**issimus**, **-a**, **-um**
potēns, *powerful*	potent**ior**, potent**ius**	potent**issimus**, **-a**, **-um**

169. The superlative is declined like **bonus, -a, -um** (53). The comparative is declined as follows:

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MAS. AND FEM.	NEU.	MAS. AND FEM.	NEU.
Nom.	altior	altius	altiōr**ēs**	altiōr**a**
Acc.	altiōr**em**	altius	altiōr**ēs, -īs**	altiōr**a**
Gen.	altiōr**is**	altiōr**is**	altiōr**um**	altiōr**um**
Dat.	altiōr**ī**	altiōr**ī**	altiōr**ibus**	altiōr**ibus**
Abl.	altiōr**e**	altiōr**e**	altiōr**ibus**	altiōr**ibus**

NOTE. — The ablative singular rarely ends in **-ī**, as: **altiōrī.**

170. Decline together **audācior cōnsul**, and **audācius animal**.

171. ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

1. **Elephantus altior est quam equus.**
2. **Elephantus equō altior est.**

} *The elephant is taller than the horse.*

In 1 **quam** means *than*, and the two words representing the two things compared are in the same case. In 2 **quam** is omitted and **equō** is in the ablative.

172. RULE. *The ablative is used with the comparative without* **quam**.

NOTE. — The ablative denotes the standard from which comparison is made (from the horse, as a standard, the elephant is taller), and is generally, though not always, placed before the comparative. The ablative without **quam** can be used only in place of the nominative or accusative case.

173. VOCABULARY

amīcitia, **-ae**, f., *friendship*.
Carolus, **-ī**, m., *Charles*.
cārus, **-a**, **-um**, *dear, precious*.
clārus, **-a**, **-um**, *clear, famous*.
culpa, **-æ**, f., *blame*.
Edvardus, **-ī**, m., *Edward*.
Henrīcus, **-ī**, m., *Henry*.
laus, **laudis**, f., *praise*.
leō, **leōnis**, m., *lion*.
nihil, indcl. noun, n., *nothing*.
prōcēdō, **-ere**, **prōcessī**, **prōcessūrus**, *go forward, advance, proceed*.
vīta, **-ae**, f., *life*.

EXERCISES

174. 1. Lātius flūmen, altissima maria, ā clāriōre virō. 2. Carolus frātre Henrīcō altior est. 3. Elephantus leōne est validior, sed leō est ācrius animal. 4. Quid vītā est cārius? 5. Fortī virō vītā patria est cārior. 6. Rōmānīs pīla longiōra fuērunt quam Gallīs. 7. Edvardō pater pulchriōrem librum nōn dedit quam frātrī Carolō. 8. Angustissima maria lātissimīs flūminibus sunt lātiōra. 9. Cum

celerrimīs equitibus Gallī in proelium prōcessērunt. 10 Patriam dēfendere est pulcherrimum.

175. 1. A swifter horse, a longer javelin, the deepest rivers. 2. Of a braver man, by a braver man, with the bravest men. 3. The eagle is swifter than the horse. 4. Many birds are swifter than the swiftest horses. 5. To all men praise is dearer than blame. 6. But to the wisest man friendship is most dear. 7. Nothing is dearer than friendship.

CHAPTER XXX

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (*continued*)

Ablative of Measure of Difference

176. Adjectives in **-er** form the superlative by adding **-rimus**, thus:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
miser, *wretched*	miserior, **-ius**	miser**rimus**, **-a**, **-um**
aeger, *sick*	aegrior, **-ius**	aeger**rimus**, **-a**, **-um**
ācer, *eager*	ācrior, **-ius**	ācer**rimus**, **-a**, **-um**

177. Six adjectives in **-lis** form the superlative in **-limus**, thus:

facilis, *easy*	facilior, **-ius**	facil**limus**, **-a**, **-um**
difficilis, *difficult*	difficilior, **-ius**	difficil**limus**, **-a**, **-um**
similis, *like*	similior, **-ius**	simil**limus**, **-a**, **-um**
dissimilis, *unlike*	dissimilior, **-ius**	dissimil**limus**, **-a**, **-um**
gracilis, *slender*	gracilior, **-ius**	gracil**limus**, **-a**, **-um**
humilis, *low*	humilior, **-ius**	humil**limus**, **-a**, **-um**

NOTE. — Other adjectives in **-lis** are compared regularly, as: fidēlis, *faithful*, fidēlior, fidēlissimus.

178. ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

1. **Mōns est altior,** *the mountain is rather* (or *quite*) *high.*

2. **Mōns est altissimus,** *the mountain is very high.*

a. Sometimes the comparative and superlative are used in a general sense without reference to any particular person or thing. Then the comparative means *rather, quite, too,* etc., and the superlative means *very, exceedingly.*

179. ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLE

Turris multīs pedibus altior est quam mūrus.

The tower is many feet (by many feet) *higher than the wall.*

180. RULE. *The measure of difference is expressed by the ablative.*

181. VOCABULARY

arma, -ōrum, plu., n., *arms.*
cōnsilium, -ī, n., *plan, advice; council.*
difficultās, -ātis, f., *difficulty.*
ferāx, -ācis, *fertile.*
Georgius, -ī, n., *George.*
inter, prep. with acc., *between, among.*
lūx, lūcis, f., *light.*
nam, conj., *for.*
potēns, -tis, *powerful.*
vallēs, -is, f., *valley.*
volnus, -eris, n., *wound.*

EXERCISES

182. 1. Urbs pulchra, urbis pulchriōris, in urbibus pulcherrimīs. 2. Dux mīlite est potentior, rēx est potentissimus. 3. Cōnsilia hostium lūce clāriōra sunt. 4. Henrīcō Georgius capite est altior. 5. Arma Rōmānōrum fuērunt graviōra. 6. Omnium Gallōrum fortissimī sunt Helvētiī. 7. Sed angustiōrēs fīnīs habēbant. 8. Nam flūmine Rhēnō

lātissimō atque altissimō continēbantur. 9. Itaque lātiōrēs et ferāciōrēs agrōs petēbant. 10. Iter inter montīs et flūmen erat angustius et difficillimum. 11. Angustō itinere magnā cum difficultāte carrōs gravissimōs dūcēbant.

183. 1. More severe wounds, in a fiercer battle, of a more fertile valley. 2. In a very narrow valley, between the loftiest mountains. 3. The river is quite deep. 4. The sea is deeper than the deepest rivers. 5. The horse is a very beautiful and a very swift animal. 6. The poor soldier is very sick, for the wounds are most severe. 7. The man is a foot taller than the boy.

TEMPLUM JOVIS CAPITOLINI
(Medallion)

CHAPTER XXXI

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES: Irregular Comparison. The Partitive Genitive

184. Some adjectives are irregular in comparison, as:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bonus, *good*	melior, *better*	optimus, *best*
malus, *bad*	peior, *worse*	pessimus, *worst*
magnus, *great*	maior, *greater*	maximus, *greatest*
parvus, *small*	minor, *less*	minimus, *least*
multus, *much*	plūs, *more*	plūrimus, *most*

185. Declension of **plūs**, *more*; plural, *more, many, several.*

	Singular		Plural	
	Mas. and Fem.	Neu.	Mas. and Fem.	Neu.
Nom.	——	plūs	**plūrēs**	**plūra**
Acc.	——	plūs	**plūrēs, -īs**	**plūra**
Gen.	——	**plūris**	**plūrium**	**plūrium**
Dat.	——	——	**plūribus**	**plūribus**
Abl.	——	**plūre**	**plūribus**	**plūribus**

186. Some forms of the following adjectives are rarely found. Learn only those which are starred, and use the others merely for reference when needed.

1. Positive wanting:

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
——	citerior, *hither*	citimus, *hithermost*
——	dēterior, *worse*	dēterrimus, *worst*
——	interior, *inner*	intimus, *inmost*
*——	prior, *former*	prīmus, *first*
*——	propior, *nearer*	proximus, *nearest, next, last*
*——	ulterior, *farther*	ultimus, *farthest, last*

2. Positive rare except when used as nouns:

exterus, *outside*	exterior, *outer*	extrēmus (extimus), *outermost, farthest*
īnferus, *below*	īnferior, *lower*	īnfimus or īmus, *lowest*
posterus, *following*	posterior, *later*	postrēmus (postumus), *last*
superus, *above*	superior, *higher*	suprēmus or summus, *highest, greatest*

Illustrative Examples

187. 1. **pars mīlitum,** *a part of the soldiers.*

2. **plūs dolōris,** *more* (of) *grief.*

3. **nihil frūmentī,** *no* (nothing of) *grain.*

4. **fortissimus mīlitum,** *the bravest* (one) *of the soldiers.*

188. Rule. *The genitive is often used after a word expressing a part of something.*

Note. — This genitive is called the *partitive genitive.*

189. VOCABULARY

cōnfīrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *establish, assure.*
crūdēlis, -e, *cruel.*
importō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *bring in, import.*
locus, -ī, m., *place, position*; plu., **loca,** -ōrum, n.
multus, -a, -um, *much*; **multō,** *much, by much* (180).
poena, -ae, f., *punishment.*
verbum, -ī, n., *word.*
vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *shun, avoid.*
vitium, -ī, n., *vice, fault.*

EXERCISES

190. 1. Peior poena, peius volnus, maior lapis, maius vitium. 2. Minor urbs, minus oppidum, minimae urbēs. 3. Bellō nihil est crūdēlius. 4. Dīviciācus cum plūribus verbīs pācem ā Caesare petit. 5. Dīviciācus plūs quam frāter dolōris[1] cēpit,[2] nam in cīvitāte multō potentiōr erat. 6. Suēvōrum gēns est maxima et bellicōsissima omnium Gallōrum. 7. Nihil vīnī important et peiōra vitia vītant. 8. Lēgātus ex citeriōre[3] Galliā novissimās legiōnēs in interiōrem[3] Galliam dūxit. 9. Mīlitēs prīmae legiōnis

[1] 188. The genitive is often, as here, separated from the word it limits.
[2] **cēpit**; *took, received, felt.* [3] 186, 1.

ē superiōre locō tēla coniciēbant. 10. Maximīs itineribus in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit.

191. 1. For better men, by more prudent plans, by a braver leader, in a smaller town. 2. Of large rivers, into most beautiful cities, by the best and bravest leader. 3. Peace is much better than war. 4. They establish peace and friendship with the nearest states. 5. The Helvetii were braver than most tribes. 6. For they were nearest to the most warlike nations.

CHAPTER XXXII

FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

192. 1. Many adverbs are formed from adjectives and are compared in a similar way.

2. Adverbs may be formed from adjectives of the second declension by substituting **-ē** for the final **-ī** of the genitive singular; from adjectives of the third declension adverbs may be formed by substituting **-iter** for **-is** of the genitive singular.

Adjective	Genitive	Adverb
cārus, *dear*	cārī	cārē, *dearly*
pulcher, *beautiful*	pulchrī	pulchrē, *beautifully*
līber, *free*	līberī	līberē, *freely*
fortis, *brave*	fortis	fortiter, *bravely*
ācer, *fierce*	ācris	ācriter, *fiercely*

Note. — Adjectives in **-ns** require only **-er** to be added to the base to form the adverb, as:

prūdēns, *wise*, **prūdentis**, **prūdenter**, *wisely*.

From **audāx** is formed **audācter**, *boldly*. And **facile**, the neuter form of **facilis**, is used as an adverb without change in form.

3. The comparative of the adverb has the same form as the neuter comparative of the adjective.

4. The superlative of the adverb is formed by substituting **-ē** for the final **-us** of the superlative of the adjective.

193. Adjectives	Adverbs		
Positive	Positive	Comparative	Superlative
cārus, *dear*	cārē	cārius	cārissimē
pulcher, *beautiful*	pulchrē	pulchrius	pulcherrimē
fortis, *brave*	fortiter	fortius	fortissimē
prūdēns, *wise*	prūdenter	prūdentius	prūdentissimē
audāx, *bold*	audācter	audācius	audācissimē
facilis, *easy*	facile	facilius	facillimē

194. Adverbs from irregular adjectives (184):

bene, *well*	melius, *better*	optimē, *best, excellently*
male, *badly*	peius, *worse*	pessimē, *worst*
——	magis, *more, rather*	maximē, *most, mostly*
parum, *too little*	minus, *less*	minimē, *least, by no means*
multum, *much*	plūs, *more*	plūrimum, *the most, very much*
prope, *nearly, almost*	propius, *nearer*	proximē (186, 1), *most nearly, last*

195. Adverbs not formed from adjectives:

saepe, *often*	saepius	saepissimē
diū, *a long time*	diūtius	diūtissimē

196. Quam with the superlative makes the highest possible degree, as:

1. Quam maximus numerus, *the greatest possible number.*

2. Quam fortissimē, *as bravely as possible.*

197. VOCABULARY

adflīgō, -ere, -flīxī, -flīctus, *damage.*
celeriter, adv., *quickly.*
crūdēliter, adv., *cruelly.*
cupidē, adv., *eagerly.*
fīrmus, -a, -um, *firm, strong.*
graviter, adv., *severely, heavily.*
imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *rule, order, command.*
integer, -gra, -grum, *unimpaired, fresh.*
libenter, adv., *gladly.*
longē, adv., *far away, far.*
paulum, *little*; **paulō**, abl., *by a little, little* (180).
reficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, *repair.*
superbē, adv., *proudly.*
vehementer, adv., *vehemently, greatly.*

EXERCISES

198. 1. Dīcit līberius atque audācius. 2. Superbē et crūdēliter imperat. 3. Mīlitēs integrīs vīribus fortius pugnāvērunt. 4. Oppidum, ā duce prūdentiōre mūnītum, vehementissimē oppugnātum est. 5. Custōdēs celeriter arma cēpērunt et oppidum diū atque ācriter dēfendērunt. 6. Mīlitibus nōn minōrem laudem quam ducī dare dēbēmus. 7. Germānī, clāmōribus equitum permōtī, paulō longius ā castrīs prōcessērunt. 8. Rōmānī partem minimē fīrmam hostium ācrius et vehementius oppugnāvērunt. 9. Nāvēs gravissimē adflictae erant, sed cum summō studiō ā mīlitbus reficiēbantur. 10. Caesar frūmentum quam celerrimē comparāvit et proximō itinere ad hostīs contendit.

199. 1. Ariovistus had most eagerly sought Cæsar's friendship. 2. Now he not less gladly rejected peace. 3. All the hills and higher places were bravely held by the infantry. 4. Ambassadors were very quickly sent to the largest states. 5. More easily and more quickly they made

the march. 6. The town, having been quickly fortified, will be defended most bravely.

CHAPTER XXXIII

TEN ADJECTIVES WITH GENITIVE IN -IUS

Declension of ūnus, duo, trēs, and mīlle

200. The following ten adjectives have **-īus** in the genitive singular and **-ī** in the dative of all the genders (except that the genitive of **alter** generally has **-ĭus**). The plural is regular. See 461.

alius, alia, aliud, *other, another.*
nūllus, -a, -um, *no, no one, none.*
sōlus, -a, -um, *alone, sole, only.*
tōtus, -a, -um, *whole, all, entire.*
ūllus, -a, -um, *any.*
ūnus, -a, -um, *one*; plur. *alone, only.*
alter, altera, alterum, *the other* (of two).
neuter, neutra, neutrum, *neither* (of two).
uter, utra, utrum, *which* (of two)?
uterque, utraque, utrumque, *each* (of the two), *both.*

201. *a.* **Aliī . . . aliī** in contrasted clauses means *some . . . others*, as: **aliī prōcēdēbant, aliī remanēbant,** *some advanced, others remained.*

In like manner **alter . . . alter** means *the one . . . the other*, as: **alter prōcēdēbat, alter remanēbat,** *the one advanced, the other remained.*

b. One form of **alius** followed by another *in the same clause* is equivalent to the English double statement *one . . . one, another . . . another*, as: **legiōnēs aliae aliā in parte pugnābant,** *some legions were fighting in one place, others in another.*

202. Declension of **ūnus**, *one*; **duo**, *two*; **trēs**, *three*; **mīlle**, *a thousand*.

	Mas.	Fem.	Neu.	Mas. and Fem.	Neu.
Nom.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	trēs	tria
Acc.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	trēs, -īs	tria
Gen.	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus	trium	trium
Dat.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	tribus	tribus
Abl.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	tribus	tribus
	Mas.	Fem.	Neu.	Singular	Plural
Nom.	duo	duae	duo	mīlle	mīlia
Acc.	duōs, duo	duās	duo	mīlle	mīlia
Gen.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	mīlle	mīlium
Dat.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	mīlle	mīlibus
Abl.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	mīlle	mīlibus

a. As an adjective meaning *alone*, *only*, **ūnus** has a regular plural like **bonus** (53).

b. **Trēs** is declined just like the plural of **omnis** (146).

c. **Mīlle** in the singular is generally used as an indeclinable adjective, as: **mīlle mīlitēs**, *a thousand soldiers*. The plural is a noun followed by the partitive genitive, as: **duo mīlia mīlitum**, *two thousand soldiers*.

d. Decline together **neuter obses**, **altera pars**, **aliud tempus**.

203. VOCABULARY

attribuō, **-ere**, **-uī**, **-ūtus**, *assign, give over to.*

cohors, **-tis**, f., *cohort.*

concēdō, **-ere**, **-cessī**, **-cessus**, *yield to, give up to, grant.*

maneō or **remaneō**, **-ēre**, **-mānsī**, **-sūrus**, *remain.*

per, prep. with acc., *through.*

perīculum, **-ī**, n., *danger.*

prōvincia, **-ae**, f., *province.*

sine, prep. with abl., *without.*

EXERCISES

204. 1. Tria mīlia pedum, cum mīlle mīlitibus, cum duōbus mīlibus equitum. 2. Germānī Suēvīs ūnīs concēdunt. 3. Dīviciācus sōlus obsidēs dare recūsāvit. 4. Vīcus in duās partīs flūmine dīvidēbātur. 5. Alteram partem vīcī Gallīs concessit, alteram cohortibus lēgātus attribuit. 6. Alterī ducī mīlle equitēs, alterī duo milia peditum attribuit. 7. Aliī laudātī, aliī pūnītī sunt.[1] 8. Aliī aliam in partem fugiēbant. 9. Erant duo fortissimī virī in ūnā legiōne. 10. Uterque in ācerrimō proeliō volnerātus est. 11. Neuter interfectus est, nam alter ab alterō servābātur. 12. Utrī maiōrem laudem dare dēbēmus?

205. 1. With two other cohorts, of one man alone, two thousand feet. 2. In no town, without any difficulty, of neither village. 3. The Suevi remain in one place not longer than a year. 4. There were two roads; one narrow and difficult between the mountains and the river, the other, much[2] easier, through the province. 5. Ariovistus had seized the best part of all Gaul.

CHAPTER XXXIV

NUMERALS. READING LESSON

206. Learn the cardinals and the first twenty ordinals (467). The hundreds and all the ordinals are declined like **bonus**.

EXERCISES

207. 1. Unīus annī. 2. Duārum cohortium. 3. Cum decem equitibus. 4. Mīlitēs legiōnis nōnae et decimae. 5.

[1] **Sunt** goes with **laudātī** as well as with **pūnītī**.

[2] 179 and 180.

Prīmus centuriō cohortis prīmae. 6. Quīntus decimus annus post caedem legiōnum.

208. READING LESSON

Post Orgetorīgis mortem nihilō minus Helvētiī angustōs fīnīs relīquērunt. Lātiōrēs et ferāciōrēs agrōs in aliīs cīvitātibus petere cōnstituērunt. Ubi iter facere parātī fuērunt, oppida omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vīcōs ad quadringentōs incendunt. Partem frūmentī portant, partem dēlent. Nihil relinquere cupiēbant. Nam omnēs puerī[1] mulierēsque[2] cum mīlitibus iter faciēbant. Omnium Helvētiōrum numerus erat mīlium ducentōrum sexāgintā trium, Tulingōrum[3] mīlium[4] trīgintā sex, Latobrīgōrum[5] quattuordecim, Rauracōrum vīgintī trium, Boiōrum trīgintā duōrum. Ad nōnāgintā duo mīlia mīlitum arma habēbant. Summa omnium fuērunt ad mīlia trecenta sexāgintā octō.

209. VOCABULARY

ad, with numerals, means *towards*, *about*, *nearly*.

cupiō, **-ere**, **-īvī**, **-ītus**, *desire*, *wish*.

mulier, **-eris**, f., *woman*.

nihilō minus, *by nothing* (179, 180) *less*, *nevertheless*.

parātus, **-a**, **-um**, *prepared*.

post, prep. with acc., *after*.

relinquō, **-ere**, **-līquī**, **-lictus**, *leave*.

summa, **-ae**, f., *sum*, *total*.

[1] **Puerī** often, as here, means children in general.

[2] The enclitic **-que**, *and* (16, 17, *c*,), joins two words or clauses of the same construction and intimately connected in thought. When **-que** connects two *words* only, it is always joined to the second. When it connects two *phrases* or *clauses*, it is attached to the *first word* (except a preposition) of the second clause or phrase.

[3] 112, *a*, *b*.

[4] The word **numerus** is understood here and in the following expressions.

[5] The word **mīlium** is understood.

CHAPTER XXXV

FOURTH DECLENSION: Stem in -u-

210. *Paradigm*

	manus, f., *hand*	**lacus**, m., *lake*	**cornū**, n., *horn, wing* (of an army)		
Stem:	**manu-**	**lacu-**	**cornū-**		
Root:	**man-**	**lac-**	**corn-**		
	Singular			Terminations Mas. and Fem.	Neu.
Nom.	manus	lacus	cornū	-us	-ū
Acc.	manum	lacum	cornū	-um	-ū
Gen.	manūs	lacūs	cornūs	-ūs	-ūs
Dat.	manuī	lacuī	cornū	-uī	-ū
Abl.	manū	lacū	cornū	-ū	-ū
	Plural				
Nom.	manūs	lacūs	cornua	-ūs	-ua
Acc.	manūs	lacūs	cornua	-ūs	-ua
Gen.	manuum	lacuum	cornuum	-uum	-uum
Dat.	manibus	lacubus	cornibus	-ibus	-ibus
Abl.	manibus	lacubus	cornibus	-ibus	-ibus

a. Most nouns of this declension are declined like **manus**. But **lacus**, **portus**, and a few others generally have **-ubus** in the dative and ablative plural.

b. **Domus** has some forms of the second declension, thus:

	Singular	Plural
Nom.	domus	domūs
Acc.	domum	domōs, domūs
Gen.	domūs, domī	domuum (domōrum)
Dat.	domuī, domō	domibus
Abl.	domō.	domibus

c. **domī** is a locative form, meaning *at home* (352).

211. RULE OF GENDER. Most nouns in **-us** of the fourth declension are masculine; those in **-ū** are neuter. **Domus**, *house*, **Īdūs** (plur.), *the Ides*, **manus**, *hand*, and a few others are feminine.

212. Decline together **audāx exercitus**, **parva manus**, **Īdūs proximae** (plur. only), **dextrum cornū**.

213. VOCABULARY

aditus, -ūs, m., *approach, entrance.*
adventus, -ūs, m., *coming, arrival.*
coepī, coepisse, coeptus, *began* (not found in the present system. 99, *b*).
dexter, -tra, -trum, *right.*
equitātus, -ūs, m., *cavalry.*
exercitus, ūs, m., *army.*
Īdūs, -uum, plu., f., *the Ides* (the 13th or 15th day of the month).
impetus, -ūs, m., *attack*; *force, fury.*
lacus, -ūs, m., *lake.*
manus, -ūs, f., *hand*; (in a military sense) *a band, force.*
mercātor, -ōris, m., *trader, merchant.*
peditātus, -ūs, m., *infantry.*
portus, -ūs, m., *harbour, port.*
sinister, -tra, -trum, *left.*

EXERCISES

214. 1. Trēs portūs, fortiōrēs exercitūs, cum maiōre impetū. 2. Multōrum lacuum, inter magnōs lacūs, inter montīs sunt multī lacūs. 3. Agrōs et domōs sociōrum dēfendunt. 4. Puerī mulierēsque domī remanent. 5. Multae nāvēs in magnō portū erant. 6. Nūllus aditus erat ad portūs mercātōribus. 7. **Cornu utrumque** exercitūs maximō impetū oppugnātum **est.** 8. Sinistrā ex parte flūminis parvae manūs peditātūs vidēbantur. 9. Dux celeriter ācrem impetum cum omnī equitātū fēcit. 10. Caesaris adventū mīlitēs multō audācius pugnāre coepērunt.

215. 1. Of the other port, with two armies, of the entire army. 2. From the left side the entrances of the harbour were very difficult. 3. The tenth legion will be stationed on the right wing of the army. 4. The enemy were frightened by the quick coming of the cavalry. 5. They began to attack the outer harbour with greater fury.

CHAPTER XXXVI

FIFTH DECLENSION: Stem in -ē-

Accusative of Extent and Ablative of Time

216. *Paradigm*

	diēs, m., *day*	**rēs**, f. *thing*	**planitiēs**, f., *plain*	
Stem:	**diē-**	**rē-**	**planitiē-**	
Root:	**di-**	**r-**	**planiti-**	
	SINGULAR			TERMINATIONS
Nom.	diēs	rēs	planitiēs	-ēs
Acc.	diem	rem	planitiem	-em
Gen.	diēī	reī	planitiēī	-eī or -ēī
Dat.	diēī	reī	planitiēī	-eī or -ēī
Abl.	diē	rē	planitiē	-ē
	PLURAL			
Nom.	diēs	rēs		-ēs
Acc.	diēs	rēs		-ēs
Gen.	diērum	rērum		-ērum
Dat.	diēbus	rēbus		-ēbus
Abl.	diēbus	rēbus		-ēbus

a. In the genitive and dative, e before ī is long when a vowel precedes, contrary to rule (13, *a*), as: diēī.

b. Only diēs and rēs are complete in the plural. A few other nouns have a nominative and accusative plural, as: aciēs, spēs.

c. Decline together magna rēs, longior diēs, triplex aciēs (given in 222).

217. RULE OF GENDER. *Nouns of the fifth declension are all feminine except* diēs, *day*, and meridiēs, *mid-day*; and even diēs, in the singular, is feminine when it means merely *time.*

218. ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

1. Decimō annō urbs capta est, *in the tenth year the city was taken.*

2. Patrem decem diēbus vidēbis, *you will see your father within ten days.*

In 1 annō, in the ablative, expresses the *time when.*

In 2 diēbus, in the ablative, expresses the time *within which.*

219. RULE. *Time when or within which is expressed by the ablative.*

220. ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

1. Rēx decem annōs rēxit, *the king has ruled ten years.*

2. Turris vīgintī pedēs alta est, *the tower is twenty feet high.*

In 1 annōs, in the accusative, expresses *duration of time.*

In 2 pedēs, in the accusative, expresses *extent of space.*

221. RULE. *Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative.*

222. VOCABULARY

aciēs, -ēī, f., *line* (of battle).
Aprīlis, -e, adj., *April, of April.*
īnstruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus, *draw up, arrange, marshal.*
iubeō, -ēre, **iussī**, **iussus**, *bid, order.*
mēnsis, -is, m., *month.*
passus, -ūs, m., *pace*; **mīlle passūs**, *mile*; **duo mīlia passuum** (202, *c*), *two miles.*
pōnō, -ere, **posuī**, **positus**, *put, place, pitch* (camp).
triplex, -icis, adj., *triple.*

EXERCISES

223. 1. Posterō diē utraque castra mūnīvit. 2. Vīcus planitiēī[1] magnae proximus erat. 3. Ūnō diē decem mīlia passuum iter fēcit. 4. In summō colle triplicem aciem īnstrūxit. 5. Superiōrem mīlitum aciem castra mūnīre iussit. 6. Prīmā lūce cōpiae in triplicī aciē prōcēdere coepērunt. 7. Quīnque diēs aciem tōtius exercitūs īnstrūctam habuit.[2] 8. Ūnum annum domī remanēbimus. 9. Multōs diēs oppidum magnō impetū ā tōtō exercitū oppugnābitur. 10. Hostēs Īdibus Aprīlibus in alterā parte flūminis castra posuērunt. 11. Mēnsis Aprīlis trīgintā diēs habet; Īdūs fuērunt diēs tertius decimus.

224. 1. The two ships will remain near (ad) the entrances of the harbour many days. 2. Within six months the ships will leave the outer harbour. 3. On the third day of the first month we shall leave home. 4. The soldiers of the first line will defend the camp. 5. Between the mountain and the river you will see a great plain. 6. The plain is a mile wide and three miles long.

[1] The dative is often used, as here, depending on an adjective. A more definite rule will be given later. Such a dative is usually *placed before* the adjective.

[2] **habuit**, *had* = *kept.*

CHAPTER XXXVII

REVIEW OF COMPARISON

Reading Lesson

225. Review the comparison of adjectives and adverbs (168, 176, 177, 184, 192–194).

226. Compare the adjectives **cārus, longus, lātus, līber, pulcher, crēber, ācer, similis, crūdēlis, gravis, audāx, prūdēns, bonus, malus, magnus,** and the corresponding adverbs.

STORY OF DEUCALION AND PYRRHA

The Flood

227. Fābula ā poētā Rōmānō nārrātur. Omnibus in locīs terrae hominēs ōlim pessimī crūdēlissimīque fuērunt. Itaque Iuppiter tōtum genus humānum gravissimā poenā adficere cōnstituit. Ex omnī caelō crēberrimōs imbrīs mīsit. Neptūnus quoque frātrem libentissimē iuvat. Mox terra altō marī simillima erat. Mōns Parnāsus sōlus aquā nōn tēctus erat. Deucaliōn et Pyrrha in Parnāsō manent. Suprā agrōs arātōs parvā in rate nāvigant et piscem summā in ulmō dēprēndunt. Iuppiter iam ūnum virum ex[1] multīs mīlibus et ūnam mulierem vīdit atque īram dēposuit. Nūlla mora est. Quam celerrimē Neptūnus nūbīs fugāvit et flūmina mariaque revocāvit. Iam terra vidētur et maria multō angustiōrēs fīnīs habent.

1 After a cardinal number, like **ūnus, ex** with the ablative is used instead of the partitive genitive (187).

228. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

arbor, -oris, f., *a tree.*
caelum, -ī, n., *sky, heavens.*
dēpōnō [dē + pōnō], **-ere, -posuī, -positus**, *lay aside.*
dēprēndō, -ere, -dī, -sus, *catch.*
Deucaliōn, -ōnis, m., *Deucalion.*
fugō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *put to flight, scatter.*
humānus, -a, -um, *human.*
īra, -ae, f., *wrath, anger.*
Iuppiter, Iovis, m., *Jupiter*, the ruler of gods and men.
iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtus, *aid, help.*
mora, -ae, f., *delay.*
nāvigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *sail, go* or *ride* (by water).
Neptūnus, -ī, m., *Neptune*, brother of Jupiter, and ruler of the sea.
Parnāsus, -ī, m., *Parnassus*, a mountain in Greece.
piscis, -is, m., *fish.*
Pyrrha, -ae, f., *Pyrrha*, wife of Deucalion.
ratis, -is, f., *a raft.*
revocō [re + vocō], **-āre, -āvī, -ātus**, *call back, recall, revoke.*
suprā, prep. with acc., *above, over.*
tegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus, *cover.*
ulmus, -ī, f., *an elm tree.*

CHAPTER XXXVIII

REVIEW OF ADJECTIVES WITH GENITIVE IN -IUS, NUMERALS, ETC.

Reading Lesson

229. Review sections 200, 202, 206, 210, 216.

STORY OF DEUCALION AND PYRRHA (*continued*)

Restoration of the Human Race

230. Deucaliōn, miserior et sōlitūdine vehementissimē mōtus, in templum vēnit atque auxilium deōrum cupidissimē rogāvit. Deucaliōne nūllus melior vir fuit. Themis, dea iūstissima prūdentissimaque, tum ōrācula tenēbat atque precibus Deucaliōnis graviter mōta respōnsum dedit: *genus humānum restitūtum erit, sī ossa magnae parentis post*[1] *ter-*

[1] **Post**, *after = behind.*

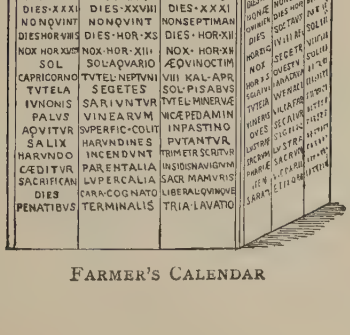
gum iaciētis. Diū tacitī et perterritī manēbant, quod Pyrrha ossa parentis movēre timēbat. Tandem Deucaliōn dīcit: "magna parēns terra est. Lapidēs in corpore terrae ossa dīcuntur;[1] iacere lapidēs post terga iubēmur." Iussōs lapidēs celeriter post terga mittunt. Mox lapidēs virī manibus missī fōrmam hominibus[2] simillimam sūmere vidēbantur. Lapidēs ā fēminā missī fēminae sunt. Sīc deī brevī tempore genus humānum restituērunt.

231. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

fēmina, -ae, f., *female, woman.*
fōrma, -ae, f., *form.*
ōrāculum, -ī, n., *oracle, prophecy.*
os, ossis, n., *bone.*
prex, precis, f., (used mostly in plural) *prayer, entreaty.*
respōnsum, -ī, n., *reply, response.*
restituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, *restore.*
sī, conj., *if.*
sīc, adv., *so, thus, in this manner.*
sōlitūdō, -inis, f., *solitude, loneliness.*
tacitus, -a, -um, *silent.*
tandem, adv., *at length, at last.*
tergum, -ī, n., *back.*
Themis, -idis, f., *Themis*, goddess of justice and prophecy.

[1] **dīcuntur**, *are said* = *are called.*

[2] See 223, foot-note 1.



FARMER'S CALENDAR

SUOVETAURILIA

CHAPTER XXXIX

RELATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS

232. The relative pronoun **quī**, *who, which, that.*

Paradigm

			SINGULAR	
	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.	
Nom.	quī	quae	quod	*who, which, that*
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	*whom, which, that*
Gen.	cūius	cūius	cūius	*whose, of whom, of which*
Dat.	cuī	cuī	cuī	*to* or *for whom, which*
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	*by, with,* etc., *whom, which*
			PLURAL	
Nom.	quī	quae	quae	*who, which, that*
Acc.	quōs	quās	quae	*whom, which, that*
Gen.	quōrum	quārum	quōrum	*whose, of whom, of which*
Dat.	quibus	quibus	quibus	*to* or *for whom, which*
Abl.	quibus	quibus	quibus	*by, with,* etc., *whom, which*

233. The interrogative pronoun **quis**, *who? which? what?*

Paradigm

	Singular			
	Mas.	Fem.	Neu.	
Nom.	quis (quī)	(quae)	quid (quod)	*who? which? what?*
Acc.	quem	(quam)	quid (quod)	*whom? which? what?*
Gen.	cūius	(cūius)	cūius	*whose?*
Dat.	cuī	(cuī)	cuī	*to* or *for whom?* etc.
Abl.	quō	(quā)	quō	*by*, *with*, etc., *whom? which? what?*
			Plural	
Nom.	quī	quae	quae	*who? which? what?*
Acc.	quōs	quās	quae	*whom? which? what?*
Gen.	quōrum	quārum	quōrum	*whose?*
Dat.	quibus	quibus	quibus	*to* or *for whom?* etc.
Abl.	quibus	quibus	quibus	*by*, *with*, etc., *whom? which? what?*

a. The endings of these pronouns are very nearly like those of the adjectives given in 200.

b. The interrogative forms given in parentheses are used only as adjectives, the other forms either substantively or adjectively, thus:

Substantive	Adjective
1. **Quis vocat?** *who is calling?*	1. **Quī homō vocat?** *what man calls?*
2. **Quid vidēs?** *what do you see?*	2. **Quod templum vidēs?** *what temple do you see?*

234. Decline together **quī mīles, quae mulier, quod animal.**

235. Illustrative Examples

1. **Mīles, quem vidēs, volnerātus est,** *the soldier, whom you see, has been wounded.*
2. **Urbēs, quās vidēs, pulchrae sunt,** *the cities, which you see, are beautiful.*
3. **Oppidum, quod vidēs, magnum est,** *the town, which you see, is large.*
4. **Mīlitēs, ā quibus urbs dēfēnsa est, laudāmus;** *the soldiers, by whom the city has been defended, we praise.*
5. **Equus, cui frūmentum dās, est validum animal,** *the horse, to which you give grain, is a strong animal.*

a. The relative pronoun refers to some word in another clause, called the antecedent, and agrees with that antecedent in gender and number. But its case may be different, for it is determined by its construction in the clause in which it stands. Thus in 1, 2, 3 the antecedents, **mīles, urbēs,** and **oppidum,** are in the nominative case, and the relatives, **quem, quās,** and **quod,** which agree in number and gender with the antecedents, are objects of **vidēs,** and are therefore in the accusative. In 4 the antecedent **mīlitēs** is accusative, the object of **laudāmus,** and the relative **quibus** is the ablative of agent with **ā.** In 5 **equus** is subject of **est,** and **cui** is dative, the indirect object of **dās.**

236. Rule. *The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number.*

Note. — The cases of the relative are governed by the same rules by which the cases of nouns are governed.

237. Vocabulary

coniūrātiō, -ōnis, f., *conspiracy.*
conloquium, -ī, n., *conference.*
continenter, adv., *continually.*
gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus, *manage, do, wage* (war).
nāscor, -ī, nātus sum, *am born* (no active voice).
ubi, rel. or interrog. adv., *where.*

EXERCISES

238. 1. Quis arcem dēfendit? 2. Ā quō arx dēfēnsa est? 3. Custōdēs, quī urbem in perīculō nōn dēfendēbant, pūnīrī dēbent. 4. Quae arma habētis? 5. Gladiōs et pīla habēmus, quibus oppidum dēfendēmus. 6. Ubi habitās? In urbe, ubi pater nātus est, habitō. 7. Planitiēs erat magna, ad quam ducēs ad conloquium venērunt. 8. Cūius equitēs lapidēs conicere coepērunt? 9. Lapidēs ab Ariovistī equitibus, quī ab conloquiō ducentīs passibus[1] cōnstitūtī erant, coniciēbantur. 10. Orgetorīx ab Helvētiīs coniūrātiōne,[2] quam fēcerat, culpātus est. 11. Belgae proximī sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum[3] continenter bellum gerunt. 12. Rōmānī celeritāte[4] superābant Germānōs, quī magnitūdine corporum erant maiōrēs.

239. 1. What did you do? 2. By whom will the city be defended? 3. In what city do you live? 4. What town was destroyed? 5. Whose black horse are you leading? 6. I am leading the horse of a farmer, who lives in the next town. 7. The weapons, which the poor soldiers carried, were heavy. 8. The keeper, by whose watchfulness the citadel was saved, will be praised for his bravery.[2] 9. The girls, whose mother was born in America,[5] are now in Europe.[6]

[1] 180. [2] 141.

[3] **cum**, when used with a relative pronoun, is enclitic, as: **quibuscum** *with whom*. See 16.

[4] 158. [5] 112, *b*. [6] *Europe* = **Eurōpa**.

CIRCUS ROMANUS

CHAPTER XL

PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

Possessive Adjectives

240. Personal and Reflexive Pronouns: **ego, tū, suī.**

	SINGULAR	
Nom.	ego, *I*	tū, *thou* or *you*
Acc.	mē, *me*	tē, *you*
Gen.	meī, *of me*	tuī, *of you*
Dat.	mihi, *to* or *for me*	tibi, *to* or *for you*
Abl.	mē, (*by*, etc.) *me*	tē, (*by*, etc.) *you*
	PLURAL	
Nom.	nōs, *we*	vōs, *you*
Acc.	nōs, *us*	vōs, *you*
Gen.	nostrum, nostrī, *of us*	vestrum, vestrī, *of you*
Dat.	nōbīs, *to* or *for us*	vōbīs, *to* or *for you*
Abl.	nōbīs, (*by*, etc.) *us*	vōbīs, (*by*, etc.) *you*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	——	——
Acc.	sē, sēsē, *himself, herself, itself*	sē, sēsē, *themselves*
Gen.	suī, *of himself, herself, itself*	suī, *of themselves*
Dat.	sibi, *to* or *for himself, herself*, etc.	sibi, *to* or *for themselves*
Abl.	sē, sēsē, (*by*, etc.) *himself, herself, itself*	sē, sēsē, (*by*, etc.) *themselves*

241. From the genitive of the personal and reflexive pronouns *possessive adjectives* are formed, thus:

Pronoun	Genitive	Possessive Adjective
ego, *I*	meī	meus, mea, meum, *my, mine*
tū, *thou* or *you*	tuī	tuus, tua, tuum, *thy* or *your*
nōs, *we*	nostrum	noster, nostra, nostrum, *our*
vōs, *you*	vestrum	vester, vestra, vestrum, *your*
—— *self*	suī	suus, sua, suum, *his* (own), *her* (own), *its* (own), *their* (own).

a. The possessive adjectives are declined like **bonus, -a, -um**, except that the vocative singular masculine of **meus** is **mī**, as: **mī fīlī** (44, *c*), *my son.*

b. **cum**, when used with the personal or reflexive pronouns, is enclitic, as: **mēcum**, *with me.* See 16 and 239, note 3.

c. The reflexive pronoun **sē** and its adjective **suus** refer to the subject of the sentence or clause in which they stand, as: **puer sē culpat**, the boy blames himself, and **puer suum frātrem laudat**, *the boy praises his* (own) *brother.*

d. The personal pronouns are needed as subject only to express emphasis or contrast. Ordinarily the personal endings of the verb are sufficient to indicate the person.

242. VOCABULARY

comprobō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *approve, commend.*
cōnservō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *save, preserve.*
dīligō, **-ere**, **-lēxī**, **-lēctus**, *esteem.*
dum, conj., *as long as, while, until.*
praesidium, **-ī**, n., *protection, guard.*
recipiō, **-ere**, **-cēpī**, **-ceptus**, *take back, receive*; **sē recipere** (to take one's self back), *retreat, withdraw, return.*
satis, adv., *enough, sufficient, sufficiently.*
soror, **-ōris**, f., *sister.*
sustineō, **-ēre**, **-uī**, **-tentus**, *withstand, sustain one's self, hold out.*
tūtus, **-a**, **-um**, *safe.*

EXERCISES

243. 1. Ego sum mīles, tū es nauta. 2. Tū es fortis, mī puer, et tuam virtūtem comprobō. 3. Tū, quī ā patre tuō comprobātus es, ā mē quoque laudāberis. 4. Quis tēcum vēnit? Mea māter et sorōrēs mēcum vēnērunt. 5. Vōs, quī urbem cōnsiliīs vestrīs cōnservāvistis, comprobāmus. 6. Nam vōbīscum tūtī erimus, sine vōbīs nūlla salūs erit. 7. Sed nōbīs erit satis praesidiī, dum vōs nōbīscum eritis. 8. Vestram virtūtem, fortēs custōdēs, summā cum laude comprobō. 9. Vestra virtūs ā nōbīs et ab omnibus comprobātur. 10. Nostrī[1] oppidum vehementissimē oppugnāvērunt. 11. Hostēs nōn diūtius nostrōs impetūs sustinuērunt. 12. Alterī[2] in proximum oppidum, alterī[2] ad carrōs sē recipiēbant. 13. Incolae omnia sēcum sua[1] portābant.

244. 1. If you will come, I will come. 2. Who will come with you? 3. Without you your friends will not come. 4. Who gave you the book which you have with you? 5. The book which you see was given to me by my brother. 6. A man who does not esteem himself is not esteemed by others. 7. The soldier, who bravely defended his own country, was commended by all. 8. Our friends who love us ought to be esteemed by us.

[1] Adjectives and participles are often used substantively, without any noun, when the sense is clear without it, as: **omnēs**, *all = all men, everybody*; **armātī**, *armed = armed men*; **nostrī**, *ours = our men*; **sua**, *their own = their possessions*, etc.

[2] **Alterī . . . alterī**, *some . . . the others* (201, *a*).

CHAPTER XLI

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS: is, īdem

245. **is, ea, id,** *he, she, it; this*

	Mas.	Fem.	Neu.		
			Singular		
Nom.	is	ea	id	*he, she, it*	Sometimes the unemphatic *this, that* (just mentioned) (248, 3), or *the, a, one*, etc., followed by a relative (248, 4 and 5)
Acc.	eum	eam	id	*him, her, it*	
Gen.	ēius	ēius	ēius	*his, her, its*	
Dat.	eī	eī	eī	*to* or *for him, her, it*	
Abl.	eō	eā	eō	*by, with*, etc., *him, her, it*	
			Plural		
Nom.	eī	eae	ea	*they*	Sometimes *these* (just mentioned) or *those, the*, etc., followed by a relative.
Acc.	eōs	eās	ea	*them*	
Gen.	eōrum	eārum	eōrum	*their*	
Dat.	eīs	eīs	eīs	*to* or *for them*	
Abl.	eīs	eīs	eīs	*by, with*, etc., *them*	

a. The nominative plural masculine is sometimes **iī**; the dative and ablative plural **iīs**.

246. **īdem,** *the same*

Singular			Plural		
Mas.	Fem.	Neu.	Mas.	Fem.	Neu.
īdem	eadem	idem	eīdem	eaedem	eadem
eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
ēiusdem	ēiusdem	ēiusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem
eōdem	eādem	eōdem	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem

a. The nominative plural masculine is sometimes **īdem**; the dative and ablative plural **īsdem** or **iīsdem**.

b. **Īdem** is declined like **is** with **-dem** added. In the accusative singular and genitive plural **m** becomes **n** before **d**.

247. Decline together **is vir**, **ea legiō**, **id bellum**.

248. ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

1. **Cōnsulem interfēcit et eius exercitum cēpit.**
   He killed the consul and captured his army.

2. **Duae nāvēs in portū sunt. Vīdistīne eās?**
   There are two ships in the harbour. Have you seen them?

3. **Oppidum erat magnum. In eō oppidō erat arx.**
   There was a large town. In this (or *that*) *town was a citadel.*

4. **Is quī patriam suam dēfendit comprobātur.**
   He who defends his country is commended.

5. **Cum eā legiōne, quam sēcum habēbat, vēnit.**
   He came with the legion which he had with him.

a. The Latin has no personal pronoun of the third person. See 240. But **is** very commonly takes its place, as **eius** in 1 and **eās** in 2.

b. When **is** (**ea**, **id**) is used as a personal pronoun, it means *he*, *she*, *it*, etc., as in 1 and 2; but when used as a demonstrative adjective, as in 3, it means *this* or *that*.

c. In 1, 2, 3, the forms of **is** all refer to something just mentioned; in 4 and 5 **is** and **ea** are used merely to introduce the following relatives. Notice the translation in 4 and 5, also the meanings given in 245.

d. But when *he* or *his* refers to the subject, the proper form of **sē** or **suus** must be used, as **suam** in 4 and **sē** in 5. Compare **eius** in 1, and see 241, *c*.

249. VOCABULARY

aegrē (compare **aeger**), *feebly, with difficulty.*
ante, adv., or prep. with acc., *before.*
cīvis, -**is**, m. or f., *citizen.*
condūcō, -**ere**, -**dūxī**, -**ductus**, *conduct, lead, bring together.*
custōdiō, -**īre**, -**īvī**, -**ītus**, *guard, protect.*
item, adv., *likewise.*
prīncipātus, -**ūs**, m., *leadership.*
tumulus, -**ī**, m., *mound, hill.*

EXERCISES

250. 1. Casticus rēgnum in suā cīvitāte occupāvit, quod pater ante eum habuerat. 2. Itemque Dumnorīx, quī eō tempore prīncipātum in cīvitāte obtinēbat, idem fēcit. 3. Orgetorīx omnīs clientīs suōs, quōrum magnum numerum habēbat, ad eundem locum condūxit; per eōs sē cōnservāvit. 4. Helvētiī in Haeduōrum fīnīs suās cōpiās trādūxerant, et eōrum agrōs vāstābant. 5. Caesar ūnō diē fēcit idem iter, quod Helvētiī diēbus vīgintī aegerrimē cōnfēcerant. 6. Hostēs, Caesaris adventū commōtī, ab eō locō ubi tum erant sē recipiēbant. 7. Itaque eōdem tempore Caesar sua castra mōvit. 8. Planitiēs erat magna et in eā tumulus. 9. Legiōnem passibus ducentīs ab eō tumulō cōnstituit.

251. 1. In the same month, of the same day, by the same man. 2. His, their, whose, by whom? 3. To him, to whom, he who, that which. 4. The consul was slain by the same man by whom his father had been killed. 5. He who does not guard his friends will not be esteemed by them. 6. Those by whom we are guarded we ought to esteem. 7. We esteem those whose friendship is dear to us.

CHAPTER XLII

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS: hĭc, ille, iste, ipse

252. **hĭc**, *this*; or (less often) *he, she, it*, etc.

	Singular			Plural		
	Mas.	Fem.	Neu.	Mas.	Fem.	Neu.
Nom.	hĭc	haec	hŏc[1]	hī	hae	haec
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hŏc	hōs	hās	haec
Gen.	hūius	hūius	hūius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	huīc	huīc	huīc	hīs	hīs	hīs
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

253. **ille**, *that*; or *he, she, it*, etc.

	Singular			Plural		
	Mas.	Fem.	Neu.	Mas.	Fem.	Neu.
Nom.	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
Acc.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
Gen.	illīus	illīus	illīus	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
Abl.	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

254. *a.* **Ille** may be used either substantively or adjectively. As a demonstrative adjective **ille** generally means *that* in contrast to *this* (**hīc**), as: **ille vir**, *that man*; **illa urbs**, *that city*; **hīc vir**, *this man*; **haec urbs**, *this city*. When **hīc** and **ille** are contrasted with each other, they may sometimes be translated *the one . . . the other*, or *the former . . . the latter*, etc., as: **in eādem cīvitāte fuērunt duo virī; ille ōrātor, hīc mīles fortis fuit**, *in the same state were two men; the one* (or *the former*) *was an orator, the other* (or *the latter*) *was a brave soldier.*

[1] The vowels in **hĭc** and **hŏc**, though sometimes short, are more commonly long, and will be so written in the exercises of this book.

b. When contrasted with the personal pronouns or with nouns, **ille** is usually translated simply *he*, *she*, *it*, etc., like **is**, except that **is** refers back to the person or thing just mentioned without contrast (see 248, 1, 2, 3), while **ille** always implies a contrast or change of subject, and is therefore generally emphatic, as: **frātrem meum nōn saepe videō, nam ille in Eurōpā est, sed ego domī maneō**, *my brother I do not often see, for he is in Europe, but I am staying at home.*

255. **iste, ista, istud**, *that*

a. **Iste** is declined just like **ille**. It is used of that which has some relation to the person addressed, as: **estne iste liber tuus**, *is that book* (which you have) *yours?*

256. **ipse, ipsa, ipsum**, *self*

a. **Ipse** is an intensive pronoun used to add emphasis to some noun, or pronoun, with which it agrees like an adjective, as: **ipse vir**, *the man himself*, **tū ipse**, *you yourself.*

b. **Ipse** may sometimes be translated *very*, *merely*, etc, as: **ipse rūmor bellī urbem terruit**, *the rumour itself* (the *very* rumour) (the *mere* rumour) *of war alarmed the city.*

NOTE. — The intensive pronoun **ipse**, *self*, must be carefully distinguished from the reflexive **sē**, *self*, which is used in some part of the predicate to refer back to the subject, as: **ipse vir dīxit**, *the man himself spoke*; but **vir sē dēfendit**, *the man defended himself.* Compare 241, *c*, with *a* above.

257. Decline together **haec rēs, ille mīles, istud bellum, ipse magister.**

258. VOCABULARY

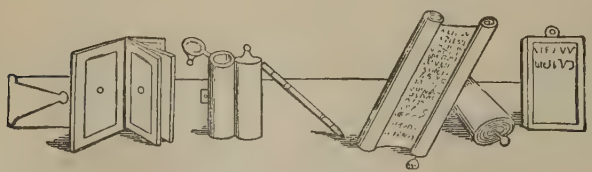
grātus, -a, -um, *pleasing, gratifying.*
invidia, -ae, f., *envy, greed.*
nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam, *not only . . . but also.*
palūs, -ūdis, f., *marsh, swamp.*
reddō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *give back, give up, return.*
rīpa, -ae, f., *bank* (of a river).

EXERCISES

259. 1. In hāc urbe, illīus urbis, huic legiōnī, istīus librī. 2. Ab ipsō duce, hae mulierēs ipsae et līberī eārum. 3. Ista, mī fīlī, est invidia, sī aliīs nōn dās id quod tū ipse nōn cupis. 4. Hae legiōnēs in ipsīs flūminis rīpīs pugnābant. 5. Ipse Ariovistus magnam adrogantiam sibi sūmpserat. 6. Dīviciācus et Dumnorīx erant frātrēs; ille ab omnibus dīligēbātur, hīc culpābātur. 7. Hī sunt eīdem Germānī, quibuscum Helvētiī saepe nōn sōlum in suīs [1] sed etiam in illōrum [2] fīnibus bellum gessērunt. 8. Palūs erat nōn magna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. 9. Hanc nōn sōlum nostrī sed etiam illī [2] vītābant. 10. Hōs obsidēs, quōs ego habeō, reddam, sī illae cīvitātēs et sociī eōrum [3] lēgātōs, quōs illī [2] habent, mihi reddent.

260. 1. In that town, by this leader, the boy himself and his friend. 2. Whose is that book, which you have with you? 3. Those men are in arms, these women remain at home.[4] 4. To us this victory is more pleasing than to them. 5. This boy is more active than his brother. 6. For that which the brother himself did in two days [5] he will do in one day.

[1] 248, *d*. [2] 254, *b*. [3] 248, 1 and *a*. [4] 210, *c*. [5] 219.



ROMAN WRITING MATERIALS

CHAPTER XLIII

REVIEW OF PRONOUNS

Reading Lesson

261. Decline **quis** and **quī** (232, 233); **ego**, **tū**, **sē** (240). Name the five possessive adjectives, and tell from their derivation (241) what they each mean. How do **tuus** and **vester** differ in meaning? Illustrate by a short sentence in Latin when to use **eius** and when **suus** for *his*. Decline **is** and **īdem**. Translate **is quī, īdem homō, idem quod iste vir fēcit hīc puer faciet.** Decline **hīc, ille, iste, ipse.** How does **ipse** differ in use and meaning from **sē**? What is the meaning of **is** as an adjective? as a pronoun? Is **ille** or **is** the more emphatic? Which of the two occurs more frequently in the nominative as a pronoun? Ans. **ille**; for *no personal* pronoun is usually required in the nominative except for contrast or change of subject (254, *b*). What is the meaning of **hīc** and **ille** when contrasted with each other? When should **iste** be used for *that*? Ask in Latin: *Is that book yours?* Answer in Latin.

THE GOLDEN TOUCH OF MIDAS

262. Bacchus[1] ōlim Midae, rēgī Phrygiae, quī eī grātum fēcerat,[2] arbitrium mūneris dedit. Ille autem[3] dīxit: "mihi grātissimum mūnus erit, sī id quod meō corpore tetigerō in aurum vertētur." Cui deus, maestus quod meliōra nōn petierat, dīxit: "tū quī istud mūnus petīstī[4] nōn prūdenter petīstī." Sed mūnus deī nōn revocātum est. Sine morā Midās saxum in dextram manum sūmit. Statim saxum est

[1] Bacchus, the god of wine.

[2] **grātum faciō** = *I do a favour*.

[3] **autem** = *but*, used for contrast or change of subject, and always placed after one or two words of a sentence.

[4] Contracted form for **petiistī**.

māssa aurī. Arborēs ac flōrēs extrēmīs[1] digitīs tangit. Arborēs flōrēsque radiāre videntur. Tum rēx superbissimē in rēgiam sē recēpit. Omnia quae tangit sunt aurea. Etiam cibus quem rēx ōre tetigerat in māssam aurī vertēbātur. Vīnum quoque, quod ē pōculō fundere coeperat, est aureum flūmen.[2] Omnium hominum rēx iam miserrimus fuit. Tandem famē sitīque victus, mūnus quod ipse petierat effugere cupiēbat. Iterum deī auxilium petiit. Huic[3] ille[4] respōnsum dedit: "sī ad flūmen Pactōlum veniēs et corpus tuum in eius aquā mergēs, vīs aurea[5] dē[6] tuō corpore in flūmen cēdet. Rēx ea quae iussus est fēcit, atque ex eō tempore Pactōlus aureīs harēnīs fluere dīcitur.

263. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

arbitrium, -ī, n., *choice, decision.*
aureus, -a, -um, *golden, of gold.*
aurum, -ī, n., *gold.*
cēdō, -ere, **cessī**, **cessūrus**, *go from, pass from.*
cibus, -ī, m., *food.*
digitus, -ī, m., *finger.*
effugiō, -ere, **effūgī**, **effugitūrus**, *escape.*
famēs, -is, f., *hunger.*
fundō, -ere, **fūdī**, **fūsus**, *pour.*
harēna, -ae, f., *sand.*
iterum, adv., *again.*
maestus, -a, -um, *sad.*
māssa, -ae, f., *mass.*
mergō, -ere, **mersī**, **mersus**, *dip, plunge, immerse.*
Midās, -ae, m., *Midas.*
mūnus, -eris, n., *gift, reward, service.*
ōs, **ōris**, n., *mouth.*
Pactōlus, -ī, m., *Pactolus*, a river of Lydia.
pōculum, -ī, n., *a cup.*
radiō, -āre, ——, ——, *gleam, glitter.*
rēgia, -ae, f., *royal palace.*
sitis, -is, f., *thirst.*
tangō, -ere, **tetigī**, **tactus**, *touch.*
vertō, -ere, **vertī**, **versus**, *turn, change.*

[1] *extreme* = *extremities of, ends of, tips of,* etc.
[2] *stream.*
[3] *to him* = Midas.
[4] *he* (emphatic) = Bacchus.
[5] *force of gold* = *the power to turn things to gold.*
[6] *from.*

CHAPTER XLIV

DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES. COMPOUND VERBS

264. Illustrative Examples

1. Belgae proximī sunt Germānīs, *the Belgae are nearest* (next) *to the Germans.*
2. Mihi voluntās tua est grāta, *your good-will is pleasing to me.*

Rule. *Adjectives meaning near, also fit, friendly, pleasing, like, and their opposites, take the dative.*

265. VOCABULARY

certus, -a, -um, *certain.*
conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, *come together, meet.*
fluō, fluere, flūxī, fluxūrus, *flow.*
Genava, -ae, f., *Geneva.*
parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *prepare.*
pertineō, -ēre, -uī, ——, *extend.*
perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventūrus, *come through*; (with **ad**) *reach, arrive at.*
prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *prohibit, stop.*
rescindō, -ere, -scidī, -scissus, *tear down, destroy.*
Rhodanus, -ī, m., *Rhone.*
voluntās, -ātis, f., *good-will, willingness, consent.*

READING LESSON

266. Inter fīnīs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum Rhodanus fluit. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvētiōrum fīnibus [1] Genava. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Hōc ponte Helvētiī cōpiās suās trāns flūmen trādūcere cupīvērunt. Certā diē ad rīpam eius flūminis omnēs convenīre parāvērunt. Caesarī ubi haec rēs nūntiāta est, eōs per vim prohibēre cōnstituit. Itaque quam celerrimē omnīs mīlitēs prōvinciae tōtīus in ūnum locum con-

[1] The word **fīnibus** is dative after **proximum**, and **Genava** is subject.

dūcit. Maximīs itineribus ex urbe mātūrat et ad Genavam pervenit. Pontem quī ad Genavam erat iubet rescindī.

Compound Verbs

267. Verbs are often compounded with prepositions, thus:

ā-mittō, *send away.*
ad-mittō, *send to, admit.*
ē-mittō, *send out, emit.*
im-mittō, *send in, let in.*
inter-mittō, *intermit, interrupt.*
prae-mittō, *send ahead.*
re-mittō, *send back.*
trāns-mittō, *send across.*

a. The final consonant of a preposition is often changed when it comes before a different consonant, thus:

in + **mittō** becomes **immittō**; **ad** + **tribuō** becomes **attribuō**.

The change of a consonant so as to make it like the one that follows it is called *assimilation.*

b. The vowel **a** or **e** in the stem of a word often becomes **i** in composition, thus:

ad + **capiō** becomes **accipiō**; **ex** + **faciō** becomes **efficiō**; **con** + **teneō** becomes **contineō**.

CHAPTER XLV

DERIVATIVE NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

READING LESSON

268. Ubi dē eius adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs cīvitātis. Sine ūllō maleficiō eius voluntāte iter per prōvinciam facere cupīvērunt. Nam aliud iter habēbant nūllum. Dē hāc rē paucōs diēs Caesar dēlīberāvit, et lēgātōs certā diē ad sē convenīre iussit.

Intereā eius mīlitēs, quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū ad montem mīlia passuum decem novem mūrum altissimum perdūcunt. Hunc fīrmissimō praesidiō mūnīrī iussit. Ubi ea diēs quam cōnstituerat cum lēgātīs vēnit, iter iīs per prōvinciam dare recūsāvit. Itaque Helvētiī per vim iter facere temptāvērunt. Sed, mīlitum tēlīs repulsī atque eā spē dēiectī, hōc itinere nōn prōcēdēbant.

269. VOCABULARY

certior factus est, *was made more certain = was informed.*
dē, prep. with abl., *about, concerning, with reference to; from, down from.*
dēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, *cast down*; **dēiectus**, *disappointed.*
dēlīberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *deliberate.*
intereā, adv., *meanwhile.*
paucī, -ae, -a, plu., *few.*
perdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead through, run* (a wall).
repellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsus, *drive back, repel.*
spēs, -eī, f., *hope.*
temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *try, attempt.*

270. Derivative Nouns and Adjectives

1. The suffix **-tor** (or **-sor**, if the participle ends in **-sus**) added to roots or verb-stems forms nouns denoting agent or doer.

a. As the suffix **-tor** is added to the same stem and in the same way as the suffix **-tus** which forms the perfect participle, nouns of agency may be easily formed by merely changing the final **-us** of the perfect participle to **-or**, thus:

Verb	Participle	Noun
vincō, *conquer*;	victus;	victor, *conqueror.*
dēfendō, *defend*;	dēfēnsus;	dēfēnsor, *defender.*

Form nouns from **amō**, **imperō**, **ōrō**, **doceō**, **moneō**, etc.

2. The suffixes **-tus** and **-tiō** (or **-sus** and **-siō**) added to verb-stems form nouns denoting action, as:

Verb	Participle	Noun
canō, *sing*;	**cantus**;	**cantus**, *singing.*
dēfendō, *defend*;	**dēfēnsus**;	**dēfēnsiō**, *defence.*
mūniō, *fortify*;	**mūnītus**;	**mūnītiō**, *fortification.*
ōrō, *speak, plead*;	**ōrātus**;	**ōrātiō**, *speech, oration.*

3. From verb-stems many adjectives are formed by the suffixes **-āx** and **-bilis** or **-ilis**, as:

Verbs	Adjectives
pugnō, *fight*;	**pugnāx**, *pugnacious, inclined to fight.*
audeō, *dare*;	**audāx**, *audacious, bold, daring.*
crēdō, *believe*;	**crēdibilis**, *credible, believable.*
faciō, *do*;	**facilis**, *easy to do, easy.*

4. From nouns many adjectives are formed by the suffixes **-eus** and **-ālis**, **-ēlis**, **-īlis**, as:

Nouns	Adjectives
ignis, *fire*;	**igneus**, *fiery, igneous.*
aurum, *gold*;	**aureus**, *golden.*
rēx, *king*;	**rēgālis**, *kingly, regal.*
mors, *death*;	**mortālis**, *mortal.*
fidēs, *faith*;	**fidēlis**, *faithful.*
hostis, *enemy*;	**hostīlis**, *hostile.*

5. From adjectives many abstract nouns are formed by the suffixes **-ia** or **-tia**; also many with **-tās** and **-tūdō**, as:

Adjectives	Nouns
audāx, *bold*;	**audācia**, *boldness, audacity.*
prūdēns, *prudent*;	**prūdentia**, *prudence, foresight.*
amīcus, *friendly*;	**amīcitia**, *friendship.*
līber, *free*;	**lībertās**, *liberty.*
magnus, *great*;	**magnitūdō**, *greatness, magnitude.*

Form nouns in **-tūdō** from **longus**, **lātus**, **altus**, **multus**, **fortis**, etc.

CHAPTER XLVI

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD: Active Voice (*all conjugations*)

Subjunctive of Purpose

271. *Paradigm*

Present

SINGULAR

I may praise, advise, rule, take, hear, be.

laudem	moneam	regam	capiam	audiam	**sim**
laudēs	moneās	regās	capiās	audiās	**sīs**
laudet	moneat	regat	capiat	audiat	**sit**

PLURAL

laudēmus	moneāmus	regāmus	capiāmus	audiāmus	**sīmus**
laudētis	moneātis	regātis	capiātis	audiātis	**sītis**
laudent	moneant	regant	capiant	audiant	**sint**

Imperfect

SINGULAR

I might praise, advise, rule, take, hear, be.

laudārem	monērem	regerem	caperem	audīrem	**essem**
laudārēs	monērēs	regerēs	caperēs	audīrēs	**essēs**
laudāret	monēret	regeret	caperet	audīret	**esset**

PLURAL

laudārēmus	monērēmus	regerēmus	caperēmus	audīrēmus	**essēmus**
laudārētis	monērētis	regerētis	caperētis	audīrētis	**essētis**
laudārent	monērent	regerent	caperent	audīrent	**essent**

Perfect

SINGULAR

I have praised, advised, ruled, taken, heard, been.

laudāverim	monuerim	rēxerim	cēperim	audīverim	**fuerim**
laudāveris	monueris	rēxeris	cēperis	audīveris	**fueris**
laudāverit	monuerit	rēxerit	cēperit	audīverit	**fuerit**

PLURAL

laudāverimus	monuerimus	rēxerimus	cēperimus	audīverimus	fuerimus
laudāveritis	monueritis	rēxeritis	cēperitis	audīveritis	fueritis
laudāverint	monuerint	rēxerint	cēperint	audīverint	fuerint

Pluperfect

SINGULAR

I had praised, advised, ruled, taken, heard, been.

laudāvissem	monuissem	rēxissem	cēpissim	audīvissem	fuissem
laudāvissēs	monuissēs	rēxissēs	cēpissēs	audīvissēs	fuissēs
laudāvisset	monuisset	rēxisset	cēpisset	audīvisset	fuisset

PLURAL

laudāvissēmus	monuissēmus	rēxissēmus	cēpissēmus	audīvissēmus	fuissēmus
laudāvissētis	monuissētis	rēxissētis	cēpissētis	audīvissētis	fuissētis
laudāvissent	monuissent	rēxissent	cēpissent	audīvissent	fuissent

a. The subjunctive present in all conjugations except the first has the mood vowel **-ā-** before the personal endings (70). In the first conjugation, where the indicative has **-ā-**, the subjunctive has **-ē-**. **Sum** and a few other irregular verbs have **-ī-**.

b. The imperfect subjunctive of all Latin verbs of whatever conjugation may be formed by simply adding the personal endings to the present infinitive, thus: **esse + m = essem**; **laudāre + m = laudārem**, etc.

c. The perfect and pluperfect subjunctives are formed from the perfect stem by the suffixes **-eri-** and **-isse-**, which with the personal endings give **-erim** and **-issem**. In form the perfect subjunctive, except in the first person singular, is just like the future perfect indicative.

d. The pluperfect subjunctive may also be formed directly by adding the personal endings to the perfect infinitive, thus: **fuisse + m = fuissem**; **laudāvisse + m = laudāvissem**, etc.

e. The meanings given above to the different tenses are common, but not the only, meanings of these tenses. The other

meanings are due to their relation to other parts of the sentence in which they occur, and can be learned only by practice.

272. **Subjunctive of Purpose**

ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

1. **Venit ut videat,** *he comes that he may see* (*to see, in order to see*), etc.

2. **Mātūrāvit nē hostēs urbem dēlērent,** *he made haste that the enemy might not destroy the city.*

273. RULE. *The subjunctive with* **ut,** *or negative* **nē,** *is used to express purpose.*

274. **VOCABULARY**

cum, conj., *when, since, though.*
tamen, conj., *yet, nevertheless.*
ut, conj., *that, in order that.*
nē, conj., *that not, lest.*
ita, adv., *so, in such a way.*
scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, *write.*
cōn-scrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus, *write down, enlist, enroll.*

EXERCISES

275. 1. Arma capiunt ut hostīs repellant. 2. Mātūrāvērunt ut pontem dēlērent. 3. Vēnistīne ut urbem videās? 4. Nōnne mātūrābitis ut castra custōdiātis? 5. Vēnimus ut tē laudēmus. 6. Cum[1] hostīs reppulisset, cōpiās suās in castra redūxit. 7. Cum[2] nostrī oppidum nōn cēperint, tamen virtūte eōs laudāmus. 8. Cum[3] hās rēs ita cōnstitueritis, prōcēdēmus. 9. Caesar, cum[1] in citeriōrem Galliam vēnisset, dē Belgārum coniūrātiōne audīvit. 10. Atque in eō locō remānsit dum legiōnēs, quās cōnscrīpserat, convenīrent. 11. Domī manēbō dum ad mē dē hīs rēbus scrībās.

[1] *When.* [2] *Although.* [3] *Since.*

276. 1. This man has come that he may see our city. 2. They came that they might praise you. 3. He will wait in this city till you (may) come. 4. Though[1] our men were brave, they did not conquer. 5. When[1] Cæsar had heard about this conspiracy, he enrolled two new legions. 6. Since[1] you have written to me, I will come to the city to see you (cf. 272, 1).

CHAPTER XLVII

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD: Its General Character

Subjunctive with cum, and Subjunctive of Result

277. *a.* The indicative mood states a thing as a fact, as: **mīles erat fortis**, *the soldier was brave*; **mīles fortiter pugnāverat**, *the soldier had fought bravely*; **mīles fortiter pugnābit**, *the soldier will fight bravely*, etc. The subjunctive states what *may be, would be, had been,* or *would have been*, etc., under certain circumstances, as: **ut mīles sit fortis**, *that the soldier may be brave*; **sī mīles fuisset fortis, fortius pugnāvisset**, *if the soldier had been brave, he would have fought more bravely*; **mīles, cum fortiter pugnāvisset, victus est**, *the soldier, though he had fought bravely, was conquered.*

b. The subjunctive is more generally used in dependent clauses, where the English sometimes uses the indicative and sometimes *may, might, should, would,* etc., or even the infinitive. In translation, therefore, substitute for the subjunctive the form that will best express the sense. More definite rules will be given as required.

[1] **Cum**, to be followed by the subjunctive.

278. ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

1. Hostēs, cum equitēs nōn habērent, nōn effūgērunt, *the enemy did not escape, since they had no cavalry.*

2. Caesar hostīs, cum oppida eōrum expugnāsset, nōn cēpit, *Cæsar did not capture the enemy, though he had taken their towns.*

3. Mīlitēs, cum Caesar vēnisset, fortius pugnāre coepērunt, *the soldiers, when Cæsar came, began to fight more boldly.*

4. Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, erant duae factiōnēs, *when Cæsar came into Gaul, there were two factions.*

a. **Cum** meaning *since* is *causal*; meaning *though* (or *although*) is *concessive*; meaning *when* is *temporal.*

279. RULE. 1. **Cum** *causal or concessive always takes the subjunctive.*

2. **Cum** *temporal takes the subjunctive when it denotes the circumstances or occasion for some other act.*

a. When **cum** denotes simply the time, and not the circumstances or occasion for some other act, it takes the indicative as in 4 above. Here Cæsar's coming had nothing to do with the factions in Gaul, while in 3 Cæsar's coming was the occasion under which the soldiers were encouraged to fight more bravely. The past tenses of the indicative with **cum** are not very frequent.

b. The meaning and uses of **cum** may be summarized thus:

cum, meaning *since*, is *causal* with the subjunctive.

cum, meaning *though*, is *concessive* with the subjunctive.

cum, meaning *when*, is { either *purely temporal* with the indicative / or *circumstantial* with the subjunctive.

Subjunctive of Result

280. Illustrative Examples

1. **Mīles tam fortiter pugnāvit ut mortem vītāret,** *the soldier fought so bravely that he escaped death.*

2. **Mīles ita perterritus est ut sē nōn dēfenderet,** *the soldier was so frightened that he did not defend himself.*

a. The **ut**-clauses in these two sentences both denote result, and take the subjunctive like clauses of purpose. But in purpose clauses **nē** (see 272, 2) is used for the negative *that not*, while in result clauses **nōn**, *not*, is a separate word as in English.

281. Rule. *The subjunctive with* **ut**, *negative* **ut nōn**, *is used to denote result.*

Note. — Observe that in purpose clauses the subjunctive is usually translated by the English *may* or *might*, or by the infinitive, while in result clauses the subjunctive is generally translated by the English indicative.

282. Vocabulary

fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, *flee, escape.*
occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *seize, occupy.*
perterritus, -a, -um, *frightened.*
renovō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (**renovō** from **novus,** *new*), *renew.*
sīc, adv., *so, in such a manner.*
tam, adv., *so, to such a degree.*

Exercises

283. 1. Dux mātūrāvit ut oppidum mūnīret. 2. Oppidum sīc mūnītum est ut tūtum esset. 3. Imperātor tam celeriter impetum fēcit ut hostēs ad salūtem fugerent. 4. Dux quam maximīs itineribus contendit nē hostēs oppidum occupārent. 5. Dux tam celeriter vēnit ut hostēs oppidum nōn occupārent. 6. Cum flūmen altum esset, tamen Caesar pontem fēcit ut exercitum suum trādūceret. 7. Cum bel-

lum cōnfēcisset, pontem rescidit. 8. Cum dux vēnisset, animus mīlitum ita renovātus est ut statim in hostīs impetum facerent. 9. Helvētiī, cum angustōs fīnīs habērent, domōs suās relīquērunt ut aliēnōs fīnīs occupārent.

284. 1. When you came, I was writing a letter. 2. When Cæsar had built a bridge, the enemy were so frightened that they fled. 3. Although the enemy are brave, we will not fear. 4. The leader was so brave that the soldiers praised him. 5. This king rules well that the people may praise him. 6. That king ruled so cruelly that the people did not love him.

CHAPTER XLVIII

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD: Passive Voice (*all conjugations*)

Indirect Questions and Sequence of Tenses

285. *Paradigm*

Present

SINGULAR

I may be praised, advised, ruled, etc.

lauder	monear	regar	capiar	audiar
laudēris	moneāris	regāris	capiāris	audiāris
laudētur	moneātur	regātur	capiātur	audiātur

PLURAL

laudēmur	moneāmur	regāmur	capiāmur	audiāmur
laudēminī	moneāminī	regāminī	capiāminī	audiāminī
laudentur	moneantur	regantur	capiantur	audiantur

Imperfect

SINGULAR

I might be praised, advised, ruled, etc.

laudārer	monērer	regerer	caperer	audīrer
laudārēris	monērēris	regerēris	caperēris	audīrēris
laudārētur	monērētur	regerētur	caperētur	audīrētur

PLURAL

laudārēmur	monērēmur	regerēmur	caperēmur	audīrēmur
laudārēminī	monērēminī	regerēminī	caperēminī	audīrēminī
laudārentur	monērentur	regerentur	caperentur	audīrentur

Perfect

SINGULAR

I have been praised, advised, ruled, etc.

laudātus sim	monitus sim	rēctus sim	captus sim	audītus sim
laudātus sīs	monitus sīs	rēctus sīs	captus sīs	audītus sīs
laudātus sit	monitus sit	rēctus sit	captus sit	audītus sit

PLURAL

laudātī sīmus	monitī sīmus	rēctī sīmus	captī sīmus	audītī sīmus
laudātī sītis	monitī sītis	rēctī sītis	captī sītis	audītī sītis
laudātī sint	monitī sint	rēctī sint	captī sint	audītī sint

Pluperfect

SINGULAR

I had been praised, advised, ruled, etc.

laudātus essem	monitus essem	rēctus essem	captus essem	audītus essem
laudātus essēs	monitus essēs	rēctus essēs	captus essēs	audītus essēs
laudātus esset	monitus esset	rēctus esset	captus esset	audītus esset

PLURAL

laudātī essēmus	monitī essēmus	rēctī essēmus	captī essēmus	audītī essēmus
laudātī essētis	monitī essētis	rēctī essētis	captī essētis	audītī essētis
laudātī essent	monitī essent	rēctī essent	captī essent	audītī essent

a. The present and imperfect subjunctive passive are formed from the active by merely substituting the passive endings for the active.

b. The perfect and pluperfect are formed by combining the perfect passive participle with **sim** and **essem**. Cf. 99, *c*.

286. **Indirect Questions**

DIRECT	INDIRECT
1. **Quid facis?** *what are you doing?*	2. **Videt quid faciās,** *he sees what you are doing.*
3. **Cūr vēnistī?** *why did you come?*	4. **Audīvī cūr vēnissēs,** *I heard why you had come.*

a. It is readily seen that **quid faciās** (2) and **cūr vēnissēs** (4) are dependent clauses in the form of a question, being introduced by the interrogatives **quid** and **cūr**. The questions in 2 and 4 are implied without being asked directly as in 1 and 3, and hence are called *indirect questions*.

b. DEFINITION. *An indirect question is a subordinate clause introduced by an interrogative word.*

287. RULE. *The verb in an indirect question is in the subjunctive mood.*

288. **Sequence of Tenses**

We say: 1. I *come* that I *may* see (or *to see*), **veniō ut videam.**
2. I *came* that I *might* see (or *to see*), **vēnī ut vidērem.**
3. I *see* what he *has* done, **videō quid fēcerit.**
4. I *saw* what he *had* done, **vīdī quid fēcisset.**

a. The change of *may* (1) to *might* (2) and *has* (3) to *had* (4), when the leading verb is changed from the present to the past, shows what is meant by *Sequence of Tenses*.

289. ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

I. Primary or Principal Tenses

1. **Videt**, *he sees*	**quid faciam**, *what I am doing* (or *do*) (action not past).
2. **Vidēbit**, *he will see*	
3. **Vīderit**, *he will have seen*	**quid fēcerit**, *what I have done* (*did*, *was doing*) (action past).
4. **Vīdit**, *he has seen*	

II. Secondary or Historical Tenses

1. **Vidēbat**, *he saw, was seeing*	**quid facerem**, *what I was doing* (or *did*) (action not past).
2. **Vīdit**, *he saw*	**quid fēcissem**, *what I had done* (action past).
3. **Vīderat**, *he had seen*	

a. Notice that the first group of tenses, called primary, includes the *present*, *future*, *future perfect*, and *perfect* indicative followed by the *present* or *perfect* subjunctive. The second group of tenses, called historic, includes the *imperfect*, *perfect*, and

pluperfect indicative followed by the *imperfect* or *pluperfect* subjunctive. The *perfect* indicative is primary or historic, according to its meaning.

290. RULE. A *primary* tense is followed by the subjunctive *present* for action *not past*, or by the *perfect* for action *past*; a *historic* tense is followed by the subjunctive *imperfect* for action *not past*, or by the *pluperfect* for action *past*.

291. VOCABULARY

calamitās, **-ātis**, f., *disaster, defeat.*
nox, **noctis**, f., *night.*
quantus, **-a**, **-um**, *how great?*
tantus, **-a**, **-um**, *so great.*
quot, indecl. adj., *how many?*
tot, indecl. adj., *so many.*
sciō, **scīre**, **scīvī**, **or sciī**, **scītus**, ***know.***
cōgnōscō, **-ere**, **cōgnōvī**, **cōgnitus**, *learn*; **cōgnōvī**, *I have learned*, or *I know.*

EXERCISES

292. 1. Cōgnōvī cūr vēneris. 2. Sciō quid proximā nocte fēceris. 3. Nōn certior factus sum[1] cūr mīles pūnīrētur. 4. Rogāvimus quot mīlitēs interfectī essent. 5. Cōgnōvistī quantā cum virtūte cīvium urbs cōnservāta sit. 6. Quis sim sciēs ex eō quem ad tē mīsī. 7. Nostrī, cum ab hostibus numerō[2] superārentur, tamen diū atque ācriter pugnābant. 8. Cum clāmōrēs audītī essent, mīlitēs prōcēdere coepērunt. 9. Fortissimē pugnābunt nē culpentur. 10. Tam fortiter pugnābant ut nōn calamitāte culpārentur. 11. Haec urbs mūnīta erat nē ab hostibus caperētur. 12. Haec urbs tanta est et tot virōs habet ut ab hostibus tūta sit.

293. 1. I see what they are doing. 2. He asks how many soldiers have been killed. 3. I did not learn why this man was being punished. 4. I knew why you had been praised. 5. This town is being fortified that it may not be captured. 6. That you may be praised, that they may be warned, that we might not be punished.

[1] 269. [2] 157, 158.

CHAPTER XLIX

IMPERATIVE MOOD: Active Voice

Reading Lesson

294. *Paradigm*

Present

	SINGULAR	
1.	——	——
2.	es, *be* (thou)	laudā, *praise* (thou)
3.	——	——
	PLURAL	
1.	——	——
2.	este, *be* (ye)	laudāte, *praise* (ye)
3.	——	——

	SINGULAR			
2.	monē	rege	cape	audī
	PLURAL			
2.	monēte	regite	capite	audīte

Future

	SINGULAR	
1.	——	——
2.	estō, *thou shalt be*	laudātō, *thou shalt praise*
3.	estō, *he shall be*	laudātō, *he shall praise*
	PLURAL	
1.	——	——
2.	estōte, *ye shall be*	laudātōte, *ye shall praise*
3.	suntō, *they shall be*	laudantō, *they shall praise*

	SINGULAR			
2.	monētō	regitō	capitō	audītō
3.	monētō	regitō	capitō	audītō
	PLURAL			
2.	monētōte	regitōte	capitōte	audītōte
3.	monentō	reguntō	capiuntō	audiuntō

a. The singular of the present imperative may be formed by dropping the **-re** (**-se** from **esse**) from the infinitive, thus:

Infinitive: esse, laudāre, monēre, regere, capere, audīre.
Imperative: es, laudā, monē, rege, cape, audī.

b. The singular future imperative may be formed by affixing **-ō** to the third person of the present indicative, as:

Indicative: est, laudat, monet, regit, capit, audit.
Imperative: estō, laudātō, monētō, regitō, capitō, auditō.

EXERCISES

295. 1. Es fortis, este fortēs, regitō, scrībite. 2. Suntō, capitō, monētōte, audiuntō. 3. Capite arma, mīlitēs, et ad castra mātūrāte. 4. Scrībe ad mē, mī fīlī, quid faciās. 5. Dīc [1] mihi, mī puer, quid fēceris. 6. Venī, Mārce, et dūc tēcum amīcōs tuōs. 7. Remanē dum veniam.

296. 1. Be wise, rule wisely, love your friends. 2. He shall rule, they shall conquer, ye shall advise. 3. Hear and thou shalt know. 4. Do well and thou shalt be praised.

READING LESSON

297. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via. Sed haec via angustior fuit. Praetereā Sēquanī iter Helvētiīs per suōs fīnīs dare recūsāvērunt. Eō tempore Dumnorīx Haeduus nōn sōlum Sēquanīs sed etiam Helvētiīs erat amīcus, quod ex eā cīvitāte Orgetorīgis fīliam in mātrimōnium dūxerat. Itaque per Dumnorīgem, dēprecātōrem, Helvētiī ā Sēquanīs impetrāvērunt ut essent amīcī obsidēsque inter sē darent. Sēquanī obsidēs dant nē Helvētiōs prohibeant. Helvētiī quoque obsidēs dant ut sine ūllō maleficiō iter faciant.

NOTE. — The new words in this lesson are in the general vocabulary.

[1] **Dīco**, **dūcō**, **faciō**, and **ferō** drop the final **e** in the singular of the present imperative active, leaving **dīc**, **dūc**, **fac**, and **fer**.

CHAPTER L

IMPERATIVE MOOD: Passive Voice

Reading Lesson

298. *Paradigm*

		Present	
		SINGULAR	
1.	———		— —
2.	laudāre, *be thou praised*		monēre, *be thou advised*
3.	———		———
		PLURAL	
1.	———		———
2.	laudāminī, *be ye praised*		monēminī, *be ye advised*
3.	———		———
		SINGULAR	
2.	regere	capere	audīre
		PLURAL	
2.	regiminī	capiminī	audīminī
		Future	
		SINGULAR	
1.	———		———
2.	laudātor, *thou shalt be praised*		monētor, *thou shalt be advised*
3.	laudātor, *he shall be praised*		monētor, *he shall be advised*
		PLURAL	
1.	———		———
2.	———		———
3.	laudantor, *they shall be praised*		monentor, *they shall be advised*
		SINGULAR	
2.	regitor	capitor	audītor
3.	regitor	capitor	audītor
		PLURAL	
3.	reguntor	capiuntor	audiuntor

NOTE.—The singular of the present imperative passive, in form, is like the present infinitive active. The future imperative passive is formed from the active by adding **r**.

EXERCISES

299. 1. Laudātor, monēminī, monēre. 2. Regitor, capiuntor, audītor. 3. Audīminī, laudātor, laudāre.

300. 1. Thou shalt be ruled, they shall be ruled, he shall be praised. 2. Be thou praised, be ye praised, they shall be warned.

READING LESSON

301. Ubi Caesar dē Helvētiōrum itinere certior factus est, eam mūnītiōnem, quam fēcerat, Labiēnum lēgātum dēfendere iussit. Ipse in Ītaliam magnīs itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōnscrībit et trīs quae circum Aquilēiam hīemābant ex hībernīs ēdūcit. Cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus per montīs in ulteriōrem Galliam contendit. Multae gentēs loca superiōra occupāvērunt ut exercitum Rōmānum prohibērent. Caesar, cum hās gentīs multīs proeliīs pepulisset, ab Ocelō, quod oppidum est citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum, in fīnīs Vocontiōrum diē septimō pervēnit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum prīmī.

MILITES ROMANI LEGIONARII

CHAPTER LI

INFINITIVE: Active and Passive

Complementary and Object Infinitive

302. *Infinitive*

	Active Voice	Passive Voice
Pres.	laudā**re**, *to praise*	laudā**rī**, *to be praised*
Perf.	laudāv**isse**, *to have praised*	laudāt**us esse**, *to have been praised*
Fut.	laudātūr**us esse**, *to be about to praise*	laudāt**um īrī**, *to be about to be praised*

	Active	Passive	Active	Passive
Pres.	mon**ēre**	mon**ērī**	reg**ere**	reg**ī**
Perf.	monu**isse**	monit**us esse**	rēx**isse**	rēct**us esse**
Fut.	monitūr**us esse**	monit**um īrī**	rēctūr**us esse**	rēct**um īrī**
Pres.	cap**ere**	cap**ī**	audī**re**	audī**rī**
Perf.	cēp**isse**	capt**us esse**	audīv**isse**	audīt**us esse**
Fut.	captūr**us esse**	capt**um īrī**	audītūr**us esse**	audīt**um īrī**

a. **laudātūrus** is the future active participle, declined like **bonus, -a, -um**, and may always be formed from the perfect passive participle by changing the ending **-us** to **-ūrus**, thus: perfect **laudātus**, future **laudātūrus**.

b. **laudātum** is the supine (to be explained later), which, in form, is just like the neuter of the perfect participle.

303. **Prolative or Complementary Infinitive**

The infinitive is commonly used as in English to complete the meaning of another verb, as: **pugnāre coepērunt**, *they began to fight.*

304. Rule. *The infinitive is used to complete the meaning of another verb.*

NOTE.—The prolative infinitive is usually placed before the verb on which it depends.

305. The Object Infinitive

Verbs meaning *to say, to think, to know, to perceive,* in Latin as in English, often have a clause instead of a noun as object, as:

1. **Haec esse vēra scīmus,**

we know { *a. these (things) to be true,* or
b. that these things are true.

2. **Urbem captam esse videō,**

I see { *a. the city to have been taken;* or
b. that the city has been taken.

3. **Putō amīcum meum mox ventūrum esse,**

I think that my friend will soon come.

a. After these verbs of *knowing, thinking,* etc., the object clause in Latin has the verb in the Infinitive with its subject in the Accusative.

b. In English the object clause is introduced by *that,* and the verb is generally in the indicative mood.

306. RULE. *The infinitive with subject accusative is used after verbs of saying, thinking, knowing, and perceiving.*

NOTE.— Translate the object infinitive as in *b* above, rarely as in *a*. It is sometimes well, however, to repeat the words as given in *a* till the meaning is clear and then translate as in *b*. And remember that in Latin there is no word for *that* as thus used.

307. Indirect Discourse

DIRECT STATEMENT	DIRECT QUOTATION	INDIRECT QUOTATION
1. **Veniam.**	2. **Dīxit: "Veniam."**	3. **Dīxit sē ventūrum esse.**
I will come.	*He said: "I will come."*	*He said that he would come.*

a. **Veniam** in 1 is a simple direct statement. In 2 this statement is quoted directly without change. In 3 it is quoted, but changed to the construction of an object clause as explained in 305. Words or clauses quoted without change are called *direct quotations* or *direct discourse.*

b. But words or clauses which when quoted are changed to the construction required by the verb on which the quotation depends are called *indirect quotations* or *indirect discourse.*

308. VOCABULARY

dīligenter, *carefully, attentively.*
exīstimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *think, consider.*
iam, adv., *now, already.*
iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *judge, decide, consider.*
numquam, adv., *never.*
respondeō, -ēre, -dī, -sus, *answer.*
sapiēns, -entis, *wise.*
Sōcratēs, -is, m., *Socrates.*

EXERCISES

309. 1. Puella laudātur, laudāta est, laudābitur. 2. Exīstimāsne puellam laudārī, laudātam esse, laudātum īrī? 3. Hostēs prōcēdunt, prōcessērunt, prōcēdent. 4. Quis dīxit hostīs prōcēdere, prōcessisse, prōcessūrōs esse? 5. Putāsne urbem esse tūtam? 6. Custōdēs respondērunt sē[1] dīligentissimē urbem custōdītūrōs esse. 7. Nōnne vidēs prīmam iam aciem prōcēdere atque tertiam aciem mox prōcessūram esse? 8. Tam fortiter pugnāvimus ut nōn culpārī dēbeāmus. 9. Scīsne quis veniat? 10. Exīstimō frātrem meum venīre. 11. Nōnne iūdicās Sōcratem fuisse sapientissimum hominum? 12. Illō[2] sapientiōrem hominem numquam fuisse iūdicō.

310. 1. You are wise, I think that you are wise and brave. 2. I know that your friends will praise you. 3. I hope that you will be praised by all. 4. I will answer soon, he said that he[1] would answer soon. 5. He is writing, he says that he is writing, he says that he has already written a story. 6. He says that a letter has already been written by him.

[1] 248, *d.* [2] 172, with note.

CHAPTER LII

USES OF THE PARTICIPLES

Dative with the Gerundive

311. *Participles*

	Active Voice	Passive Voice
Pres.	laudā**ns**, *praising*	——
Perf.	——	laudā**tus**, *having been praised*, (or simply) *praised*
Fut.	laudā**tūrus**, *about to praise*	——

	Active	Passive	Active	Passive
Pres.	mon**ēns**	——	reg**ēns**	——
Perf.	——	mon**itus**	——	rē**ctus**
Fut.	mon**itūrus**	——	rē**ctūrus**	——
Pres.	capi**ēns**	——	audi**ēns**	——
Perf.	——	capt**us**	——	audī**tus**
Fut.	capt**ūrus**	——	audī**tūrus**	——

Gerundive

laud**andus**, *to be praised*

mon**endus** reg**endus** capi**endus** audi**endus**

a. The present participle may be formed by changing the final **-ō** of the present indicative to **-ēns**[1] (**-āns** in the first conjugation), and is declined like **prūdēns** (459), except that the ablative singular ends in **-e** (460).

b. The perfect participle is given in the principal parts.

c. The future active participle is formed from the same stem as the perfect participle, but ends in **-ūrus** instead of **-us**.

d. The gerundive may be formed from the present indicative by changing final **-ō** to **-endus**[1] (**-andus** in the first conjugation).

[1] In the second conjugation, which has an **-e-** before the **-ō**, only **-ns** is added to form the present participle and **-ndus** to form the gerundive.

312. **Uses of Participles**

a. All participles have the construction of adjectives, and agree in gender, number, and case with some noun or pronoun expressed or understood.

b. The present and perfect participles are sometimes used like attributive adjectives, as: **labōrantēs mīlitēs**, *the struggling soldiers*; **mīlitēs armātī**, *armed soldiers*; or substantively, as: **armātī**, *armed men.*

c. But the perfect participle is most frequently used, just as in English, in agreement with a noun or pronoun to denote some attendant circumstance, as: **hostēs, ā nostrīs repulsī, sē recēpērunt**, *the enemy, having been repulsed by our men, retreated.*

d. The future active participle and the gerundive are often used in the predicate with the verb **sum**, and thus form what are called the Periphrastic Conjugations (475).

313. Illustrative Examples

1. **Ventūrus erat**, *he was* (*a*) *about to come*,
(*b*) *just ready to come*,
(*c*) *on the point of coming*,
(*d*) *intending to come*, etc.

2. **Laudandus es**, *you* (*a*) *are to be praised*,
(*b*) *are worthy to be praised*,
(*c*) *deserve to be praised*,
(*d*) *must be praised*, etc.

3. **Mihi epistula scrībenda est**,
(*a*) *for me there is a letter to be written*,
(*b*) *I have a letter to write*,
(*c*) *I must write a letter*,
(*d*) *a letter must be written by me*, etc.

314. Rule. *The dative with the gerundive denotes the person who has the thing to do.*

a. In translation it is best first to repeat the real meaning of the participle as given in (*a*), then when the meaning of the whole clause is clear, translate by the form which will best express the idea. The translations (*c*) and (*d*) are especially common.

b. Remember that the gerundive is always passive, and so with this construction all such expressions as *I must* and *I have to*, before being put into Latin, must be changed to the form given in 313, 3, (*a*).

315. VOCABULARY

ad-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead to, win over, influence.*
ad-propinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *approach.*
dēdō, -ere, dēdidī, dēditus, *give up*; **sē dēdere,** *to give one's self up, to surrender.*
epistula, -ae, f., *letter.*
imperium, -ī, n., *rule, supreme authority.*
iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtus, *help, assist.*
victor, -ōris, *victorious.*

EXERCISES

316. 1. Nōnne vidēs hostīs fugientīs? 2. Mātūrā ut imperātōrem victōrem adpropinquantem videās. 3. Caesar mātūrāvit ut mīlitēs, quōs labōrantīs vidēbat, iuvāret. 4. Hostēs, celeriter gravibus volneribus cōnfectī, mox sē dēdidērunt. 5. Orgetorīx ipse suae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrus erat. 6. Orgetorīx amīcīs sē rēgnum obtentūrum esse dīxit. 7. Orgetorīx spē imperiī adductus erat ut coniūrātiōnem faceret. 8. Nōnne erat culpandus? 9. Tū laudandus es; illī culpandī sunt. 10. Nōbīs castra movenda sunt. 11. Vōbīs idem faciendum est. 12. Caesarī eōdem tempore sīgnum tubā dandum erat atque aciēs īnstruenda. 13. Dīxit sibi aciem īnstruendam esse. 14. Scīsne quid faciendum sit?

317. 1. The commander sends aid to the struggling soldiers. 2. The wounded soldier is to be praised. 3. The army, induced by the hope of victory, was about to attack the town most spiritedly. 4. We are not to be blamed. 5. Soldiers, you must defend this city (314, *b*) that it may not be captured by the enemy. 6. Do you not think that this city is to be defended?

CHAPTER LIII

GERUND AND SUPINE: Formation and Uses

318.

	Gerund	*Supine*
Acc.	laud**andum**, *praising*	laudā**tum**, *to praise*
Gen.	laud**andī**, *of praising*	
Dat.	laud**andō**, *for praising*	
Abl.	laud**andō**, *by praising*	laudā**tū**, *to praise*

	Gerund			
Acc.	mon**endum**	reg**endum**	cap**iendum**	aud**iendum**
Gen.	mon**endī**	reg**endī**	cap**iendī**	aud**iendī**
Dat.	mon**endō**	reg**endō**	cap**iendō**	aud**iendō**
Abl.	mon**endō**	reg**endō**	cap**iendō**	aud**iendō**
	Supine			
Acc.	mon**itum**	rē**ctum**	cap**tum**	audī**tum**
Abl.	monitū	rēctū	captū	audītū

The Gerund

a. The gerund is formed like the future passive participle (311, *d*), but it is a verbal noun used only in the neuter singular and has no nominative case. In the other cases it is governed by the same rules as other nouns, thus: **studium pugnandī**, *the desire of fighting*; **puerī sē currendō exercent**, *boys exercise themselves by running.*

b. The gerund as a verbal noun may take an object like a verb, as: **cōnsilium urbem capiendī**, *the plan of taking the city*. But instead of the gerund with an object the gerundive is more commonly used. The gerundive agrees with the noun like an adjective. The difference between the two constructions may be seen by the following:

319. ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

Acc.	**Orgetorīx dēligitur**	**ad rēs cōnficiendās.**	*For completing matters Orgetorix is chosen.*
Gen.	**Studium**	**urbem videndī.** / **urbis videndae.**	*The desire of seeing the city.*
Dat.	**Tempus nōn datur**	**rēbus cōnstituendīs.**	*Time is not given for arranging matters.*
Abl.	**Tempus sūmō**	**scrībendō epistulās.** / **scrībendīs epistulīs.**	*I spend time in writing letters.*
	Lēgātī missī sunt	**dē auxiliō petendō.**	*Envoys were sent with reference to seeking help.*

a. Observe that the accusative with **ad** denotes *purpose.*

NOTE. — The gerund with an object is used only in the genitive, and in the ablative *without a preposition.* Even in these cases the gerundive is more common.

The Supine

320. The supine has the same stem as the perfect participle, but it is a verbal noun, used only in two cases; and these are little used, each case being limited strictly to one particular use, as in the following:

ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

1. **Lēgāti vēnērunt pācem petītum**, *the envoys came to seek peace.*

2. **Difficile dictū est**, *it is difficult to say.*

321. 1. RULE. *The supine in* **-um** *is used only after verbs of motion to express purpose.*

2. RULE. *The supine in* **-ū** *is used with a few adjectives as an ablative of specification* (158).

322. VOCABULARY

dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus, *select, choose.*
imprūdentia, -ae, f., *want of foresight, indiscretion.*
neque (shortened to **nec** before most consonants), conj., *and not*; **neque . . . neque,** *neither . . . nor.*
opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus, *press hard, crush.*
ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *speak, plead, entreat.*
postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *request, ask.*
potestās, -ātis, f., *power, chance, opportunity.*
spatium, -ī, n., *space, time.*
subitō, adv., *suddenly.*
sub-ministrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *furnish.*
trāns-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *transport, carry over.*
trīduum, -ī, n., *three days.*

EXERCISES

323. 1. Spēs urbem capiendī dēlēta est. 2. Hōc optimum factū est. 3. Dīviciācus sōlus ad senātum vēnit auxilium postulātum. 4. Subitō Gallī bellī renovandī legiōnisque opprimendae cōnsilium cēpērunt. 5. Nāvīs octōgintā satis esse ad duās trānsportandās legiōnēs exīstimābat. 6. Tam breve spatium fuit ut eīs rēbus cōnstituendīs tempus nōn darētur. 7. Aliī tēlīs coniciendīs, aliī lapidibus tēlīsque subministrandīs, iuvābant. 8. Lēgātī in pāce petendā multitūdinem imprūdentiā culpāvērunt. 9. Ā Caesare petēbant ut sibi potestātem faceret lēgātōs mittendī. 10. Hostibus ad cōnsilia capienda nihil **spatiī**[1] dandum[2] exīstimābat. 11. Itaque neque **cōnsiliī** habendī neque arma

[1] 188.

[2] Here **dandum** is for **dandum esse**. After the future active and future passive participles in object clauses (305, 306) **esse** is often omitted.

capiendī spatium datum est. 12. Neque ōrandō impetrant.

324. 1. The difficulty of waging war, by fighting, in punishing this man. 2. Night puts an end to (makes the end of) the fighting. 3. For[1] completing these things three days are given. 4. Deputies have come with reference to (dē, 269) seeking peace. 5. The desire of defending the state is better than the hope of conquering an enemy. 6. They send deputies to Cæsar to seek help. 7. This is easy to do.

CHAPTER LIV

REVIEW OF LAUDŌ: Active with Synopsis

325. Review the active voice of laudō (473), and learn the synopsis (474).

READING LESSON

326. Flūmen est Arar, quod per fīnīs Haeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum īnfluit, incrēdibilī lēnitāte ita ut oculīs[2] in utram[3] partem fluat[4] difficile vīsū sit. Trāns id flūmen Helvētiī ratibus[2] ac lintribus iūnctīs omnīs cōpiās suās trānsportāre parābant. Ubi per explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est trīs iam partīs cōpiārum Helvētiōs id flūmen trādūxisse,[5] quārtam ferē partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam esse,[5] dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs contēndit, et mox ad eam partem pervēnit quae nōndum trānsportāta erat.

[1] 319, *a*. [2] 48. [3] 200. [4] 287. [5] 306.

CHAPTER LV

REVIEW OF LAUDŌ: Passive with Synopsis

327. Review the passive voice of **laudō** (473), and learn the passive synopsis (474).

READING LESSON

328. Eōs impedītōs, quod dē Caesaris adventū nōndum cōgnōverant, oppressit et magnam partem eōrum concīdit; reliquī[1] statim fugere coepērunt atque in proximās silvās sēsē recēpērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus; nam omnis cīvitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvīsa est. Hīc pāgus ūnus patrum nostrōrum memoriā[2] L. Cassium cōnsulem interfēcerat et eius exercitum sub iugum mīserat. Ita accidit ut eadem cīvitās, quae multīs annīs[3] ante exercitum Rōmānum magnā calamitāte adfēcerat, ab ipsō Caesare maiōre caede superārētur. Populō Rōmānō hāc victōriā[4] nihil fuit grātius.

CHAPTER LVI

REVIEW OF MONEŌ (*complete*)

329. Review **moneō** active and passive (476), and learn the synopsis (cf. 474).

READING LESSON

330. Cum hōc proelium factum esset, ut ad reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum pervenīret, pontem in Ararī facit atque ita exercitum trādūcit. Helvētiī repentīnō eius adventū

[1] See foot-note 1, page 98. [2] 219. [3] 180. [4] 172 with note.

commōtī erant, cum[1] id quod ipsī diēbus vīgintī aegerrimē cōnfēcerant, ille ūnō diē fēcisset. Itaque lēgātōs ad eum mittunt, cuius lēgātiōnis Dīvicō prīnceps fuit. Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: "Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faciet, Helvētiī manēbunt ubi cōnstitueris. Sīn nōbīscum bellum gerēs, tibi virtūs Helvētiōrum dēspicienda nōn est, nec tua magnopere virtūs laudanda est. Nam Helvētiōs oppugnāvistī, cum aliī alterā in parte flūminis essent. Nōs magis[2] virtūte quam dolō contendimus."

CHAPTER LVII

REVIEW OF REGŌ AND CAPIŌ (*complete*)

331. Review **regō** (477) and **capiō** (488) entire, and learn the synopsis (cf. 474).

READING LESSON

332. Hīs Caesar ita respondit: "Mihi minus dubitātiōnis[3] datur quod eās rēs quās commemorāstis[4] memoriā teneō.[5] Illā vetere calamitāte graviter commōtus sum, quod nūllō maleficiō[6] populī Rōmānī accidit. Nōn cavēbat,[7] sed eō[8] dēceptus erat, quod nūlla erat causa bellī, neque sine causā bellum timendum[9] putāvit. Tamen veterēs iniūriae neglegendae sunt. Sed hōc certē, quod sum dictūrus, neque neglegendum neque praetermittendum est. Sine meā voluntāte iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāstis,[4] atque Haeduōs vexāstis[4] cōrumque agrōs vāstāstis.[4] Nunc īnso-

[1] *Since.* [2] **magis**, *rather* (194). [3] 187, 188.

[4] **commemorāstis** is for **commemorāvistis**. In the perfect **v** often drops out, and contraction occurs.

[5] *I hold in memory = I remember.* [6] 141.

[7] *They* (**populus Rōmānus**) *were not on their guard.*

[8] **eō . . . quod**, *by this . . . because = from the fact, that.*

[9] See foot-note 2, p. 133.

lenter victōriā exsultātis. Sed vāna erit vestra spēs. Nam saepe deī hominibus secundiōrēs interdum rēs concēdunt, quō [1] gravius ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant."

JUMENTUM

CHAPTER LVIII

REVIEW OF AUDIŌ (*complete*)

Ablative Absolute and Relative Clause of Purpose

333. ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

1. **Hīs rēbus cōnstitūtīs, prōcēdēmus,** *these matters having been arranged, we will proceed.*

2. **Nūllō hoste prohibente, Caesar exercitum redūxit,** *no enemy hindering, Cæsar led back the army.*

a. In these phrases, **hīs rēbus cōnstitūtīs,** *these matters having been arranged,* and **nūllō hoste prohibente,** *no enemy hindering,* the Latin nouns **hoste** and **rēbus** are not subjects or objects of any verb, but are used independently just like the corresponding English nouns *enemy* and *matters.* In English this use of a noun with the participle is called *nominative absolute.* In Latin it is called *ablative absolute.* In Latin as in English a participle or adjective is used with the noun.

334. RULE. *A noun or pronoun with a participle or adjective agreeing with it is often used independently in the ablative to define the time or circumstances of some other action.*

[1] **quō**, *by which = in order that*, is generally used in place of **ut** in a purpose clause when a comparative follows.

335. ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

1. **Dux hominēs mīsit, quī victōriam nūntiāvērunt,** *the leader sent men, who announced the victory.*

2. **Dux hominēs mīsit quī victōriam nūntiārent,** *the leader sent men who should announce (that they might announce* or *to announce) the victory.*

The relative clause in 1 states a fact and so takes the indicative (277, *a*); in 2 it denotes purpose, just as **ut** (272, 273) does, and takes the subjunctive for the same reason.

336. RULE. *A relative clause denoting purpose takes the subjunctive.*

337. Review **audiō** active and passive (479), and learn the synopsis (cf. 474).

READING LESSON

338. "Cum ea ita sint, tamen sī obsidēs ā vōbīs mihi dabuntur utī[1] ea quae dīcitis vōs factūrōs[2] intellegam, vōbīscum pācem faciam." Dīvicō respondit: Ita Helvētiōs ā maiōribus[3] suīs īnstitūtōs esse utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōnsuērint;[4] eius reī populum Rōmānum esse testem. Hōc respōnsō datō,[5] discessit. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar, equitātumque, quem ex omnī prōvinciā habēbat, praemittit quī videant[6] quās in partīs hostēs iter faciant.

EXERCISES

339. 1. No hostages having been given, Cæsar determined[7] to prolong[8] the war. 2. For without hostages he thought peace was not to be made. 3. But this day, no

[1] Before a vowel the form **utī** is sometimes used instead of **ut**.

[2] See foot-note 2, p. 133.

[3] **Maior** sometimes means *greater in age, older*; the plural, **maiōrēs,** means *elders, ancestors.*

[4] **Cōnsuērint** is for **cōnsuēverint.** Cf. foot-note 4, p. 136.

[5] 334. [6] 336. [7] **cōnstituō.** [8] **prōdūcō.**

enemy approaching,[1] he remained in camp. 4. When he saw[2] that the enemy had broken[3] camp, he sent men to ascertain[4] where they were.[5]

CHAPTER LIX

SUM, POSSUM, PRŌSUM

Dative with Compounds and Dative of Service

340. Learn the inflection of **sum**, **possum**, and **prōsum** (480).

Dative with Compounds

341. RULE. *Many verbs compounded with the prepositions* **ad, ante, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super,** *and a very few with* **circum** *and* **con,** *take an indirect object in the dative,* as:

1. **Labiēnus legiōnī praefuit,** *Labienus was in charge of the legion.*
2. **Pācem bellō antepōnō,** *I place peace before war.*
3. **Equitēs exercituī praemīsit,** *he sent the cavalry ahead of the army.*

a. If the verb is transitive as in 2 and 3, it may take an accusative of the direct object in addition to the dative of the indirect. The direct object is also frequently used alone, thus: **Equitēs praemīsit,** *he sent the cavalry ahead.*

Dative of Service

342. RULE. *The dative is used with* **sum** *and a few other verbs to show that for which a thing serves,* as:

1. **Nōbīs sunt auxiliō,** *they are* (for) *a help to us.*
2. **Peditātum castrīs praesidiō mīsit,** *he sent the infantry* (for) *as a protection to the camp.*

[1] **adpropinquō, -āre,** etc. [2] *had seen.*
[3] *moved* (**moveō**). [4] **cōgnōscō.** [5] 287.

a. With the dative of service another dative of the *person to whom* (or *thing to which*) is very common, as **nōbīs** and **castrīs** in 1 and 2.

343. VOCABULARY

ad-sum, *be near, be present, help.*
ante-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *place before, prefer.*
castellum, -ī, n., *fortress.*
com-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *commit, intrust*; **proelium committere**, *to begin battle.*
dē-sum, *be lacking, fail.*
ex-pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *take by storm, capture.*
īn-fīrmus, -a, -um, *weak.*
ob-sum, *be in the way of, hinder, injure.*
prae-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *place in charge of.*
prae-sum, *be present, be at the head of, have charge of, command.*
prō-sum, *be helpful to, benefit.*
subsidium, -ī, n., *relief, assistance.*
ūsus, -ūs, m., *use, advantage.*

EXERCISES

344. 1. Tempus **proeliī** committendī adest. 2. Dux suīs aderat atque eīs erat auxiliō. 3. Hae rēs ad nāvīs reficiendās erant ūsuī. 4. Hās rēs magnō sibi ūsuī fore exīstimābat. 5. Nūllō hoste[1] prohibente, legiōnēs in hīberna perdūcere poterat. 6. Labiēnum hībernīs praeposuit. 7. Cum tibi hae rēs prōsint, mihi obsunt. 8. Hīc vir gravī volnere[2] tam īnfīrmus erat, ut iam sē sustinēre nōn posset. 9. Diūtius nostrī sē dēfendere nōn poterant, quod iam nōn sōlum vīrēs sed etiam tēla eīs deërant. 10. Cum Crassus, quī equitātuī praeerat, nostram prīmam aciem premī vīdisset, tertiam aciem labōrantibus nostrīs subsidiō mīsit. 11. Hostēs quam celerrimē[3] contendērunt ut, sī possent, castellum, cui praeerat Titūrius, expugnārent.

345. 1. Hold out till[4] I can (may be able to) come to you. 2. This will be a great help to you. 3. Will you be able to hold out longer? 4. Three cohorts had been left as

[1] 334. [2] 141. [3] 196. [4] **dum.**

a protection to the camp. 5. Friendship is to be placed before praise. 6. Lælius said that he placed friendship before all things.

CHAPTER LX

VOLŌ, NŌLŌ, MĀLŌ

346. Learn the conjugation of **volō**, **nōlō**, **mālō** (481).

347. **Nōlī** (plur. **nōlītē**) with the infinitive takes the place of the imperative with a negative, as: **nōlī timēre**, *do not* (be unwilling to) *fear*.

348. VOCABULARY

dis-cēdō, **-ere**, **-cessī**, **-cessūrus**, *withdraw*.
inquit, *said he*, a defective verb used only after one or two words of a direct quotation.
lacessō, **-ere**, **lacessīvī**, **-sītus**, *harass*, *attack*, *provoke*.
quaerō, **-ere**, **quaesīvī** or **quaesiī**, **-sītus**, *inquire*, *ask*.
quamdiū, adv., *as long as*.
sīn, conj., *but if*.
trā-dō, **-ere**, **-didī**, **-ditus**, *hand over*, *give up*, *surrender*.

EXERCISES

349. 1. Velle, nōlēs, māluerat. 2. Volumus, nōluistis, māluerint. 3. Ex lēgātīs quaesīvit cūr ad sē vēnissent et quid vellent. 4. Cum ōrandō impetrāre nōn possent, tamen hostibus sē dēdere nōlēbant. 5. Tēlīs sē dēfendere, quamdiū poterant, māluērunt. 6. Nōlīte arma trādere, nisi interficī vultis. 7. Tū[1] manē, sī vīs, ego discēdere mālō. 8. Quis dīligī quam timērī nōn māvult? 9. Ab Ariovistō, cum in conloquium venīre nōllet, Caesar postulāvit nē cōpiās suās trāns Rhēnum trādūceret. 10. "Nōlī," inquit, "Haeduōs sociōsque eōrum iniūriā lacessere. 11. Redde obsidēs

[1] 241, *d*.

quōs habēs. 12. Sī id ita facere vīs, mihi[1] amīcitia tēcum erit."

350. 1. We ought to be willing, they seem to have been willing. 2. Do not fear, but come to me at once. 3. All men prefer to be praised rather than blamed. 4. I cannot understand why the envoys did not wish to come. 5. When the legions were unwilling to advance farther, he asked why they feared. 6. If you wish, I will send a messenger to you that you may know what I have done.

CHAPTER LXI

EŌ AND ADEŌ

Rules for names of cities, and domus and rūs

351. Learn the conjugation of eō and adeō (482).

352. *a.* The names of cities and a few other words have a special case, which indicates location and is therefore called the *locative* case.

b. The locative singular, in the first and second declensions, has the same form as the genitive, and in the third declension ends in ī or e; in the plural the endings in the locative of all declensions are the same as in the dative or ablative.

353. ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

	ABLATIVE WITH THE PREPOSITION **in**		LOCATIVE
1.	**in urbe**, *in the city.*	2.	**Rōmae**, *at* or *in Rome.*
	in Ītaliā, *in Italy.*		**Ephesī**, *at* or *in Ephesus.*
	in silvīs, *in the woods.*		**Carthāginī**, *at* or *in Carthage.*
			domī, *at home.*
			rūrī, *in the country.*
			Athēnīs, *at Athens.*

[1] 93.

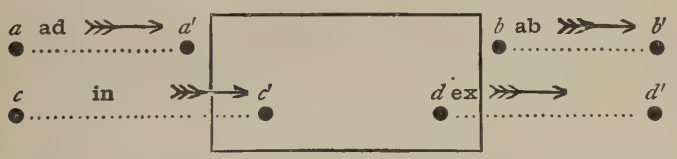
	Accusative with the Preposition **ad** or **in**		Accusative without a Preposition
3.	**ad** or **in urbem**, *to* or *into the city.* **ad** or **in Ītaliam**, *to* or *into Italy.*	4.	**Rōmam**, *to* or *into Rome.* **domum**, *home.*
	Ablative with the Preposition ab, dē, or ex		**Ablative without a Preposition**
5.	**ab, dē, ex urbe**, *from the city.* **ab, dē, ex Ītaliā**, *from Italy.*	6.	**Rōmā**, *from Rome.* **domō**, *from home.*

354. Rules for names of cities and **domus** and **rūs**:

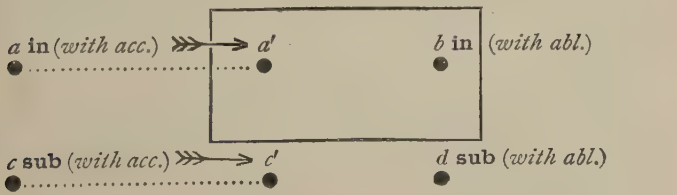
1. *Place* **where** *is expressed by the locative.*
2. *Place* **to which** *is expressed by the accusative without a preposition.*
3. *Place* **from which** *is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.*

a. In all designations of place *not names of cities*, etc., the place *where* is expressed by the ablative with **in**, place *to which* by the accusative with **ad** or **in**, place *from which* by the ablative with **ab** (**ā**), **dē**, or **ex** (**ē**).

Note 1. — The difference between **ad** (*to, towards, near*) with its opposite **ab** (*from, away from*) and **in** (*to, into*) with its opposite **ex** (*from, out of*) is clearly shown by the following diagram:



Note 2. — The prepositions **in** (*in, into*) and **sub** (*under*) are used with the accusative to express the place *towards which* something *moves*, the ablative to express the place *where* something *is* or *is done*, thus:



355. VOCABULARY

Athēnae, -ārum, pl., f., *Athens.*
aut, conj., *or*; **aut . . . aut**, *either . . . or.*
Carthāgō, -inis, f., *Carthage.*
comperiō or **reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertus**, *find out.*
īnsula, -ae, f., *island.*
nātālis, -e, *of birth*; **diēs nātālēs**, *birth days.*
negōtium, -ī, n., *business*; *instructions.*
red-eō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus, *go back, return.*
re-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *send back.*
rūs, rūris, n., *country*, ***farm.***
statuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, *decide, determine.*
trāns-eō, -īre, -iī, -itus, *cross.*
tūtus, -a, -um, *safe*; **tūtō**, adv., *safely.*
vadum, -ī, n., *ford*; **vadō**, *by a ford* or *by fording.*

EXERCISES

356. 1. Ī, ītō; aut prōcēdite aut redīte. 2. Illud flūmen vadō trānsītur, hōc nāvibus trānsībitur. 3. Nostrī hostīs flūmen trānseuntīs oppugnāvērunt. 4. Puer rūrī in Ītaliā nātus erat; Corinthī, Athēnīs, Rōmae, habitāverat. 5. Cum Rōmā redīsset, rūs iit habitātum.[1] 6. Rūrī quam in urbe habitāre mālēbat. 7. Redeuntibus annīs,[2] diēs nātālēs redeunt. 8. Equitēs subsidiō suīs ierunt. 9. Bellō[2] cōnfectō, imperātor cum exercitū domum rediit. 10. Dat negōtium huic ut quās possit adeat cīvitātīs. 11. Caesar statuit sibi Rhēnum esse trānseundum. 12. Itaque pontem fēcit quō tūtius trānsīret.[3] 13. Est aqua sub ponte. 14. Sub pontem fluit flūmen.

357. 1. He is going, he will go; he says that he is going, that he will go. 2. This boy had gone to the country and was about to return home that he might be a help to his father. 3. Do you wish to return with me? 4. They have gone to the country, to the city, to Rome, to Italy. 5. They are about to return from the country, from the city, from Rome, from Italy. 6. They have lived in the country, in the city, in Rome, in Italy.

[1] 321. [2] 334. [3] Foot-note 1, p. 137.

CHAPTER LXII

FERŌ AND FĪŌ

Dative with Special Verbs

358. Learn the conjugation of ferō (483) and fīō (484).

359. ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

1. **Eīs omnia crēdit,** *he trusts all things to them.*

2. **Eīs crēdit,** *he trusts* (gives credit to), or *believes them.*

3. **Nōbīs serviunt,** *they serve* (are servants to) *us.*

a. Some verbs, as shown by examples 1 and 2, take the dative of the person and accusative of the thing, or the dative of the person alone; and some, as **serviunt** in 3, according to their real meaning are intransitive in Latin and take the dative only, although the English verbs by which they are translated are transitive and have the direct object.

360. RULE. *Most verbs meaning to favour, help, please, trust, and their contraries, also to believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon, and spare, take the dative.*

361. VOCABULARY

ad-ferō, -ferre, adtulī, adlātus, *bring to, bring.*
crēdō, -ere, crēdidī, crēditus, *trust, believe, credit.*
ef-ferō (ex + ferō) (267, *a*), **effere, extulī, ēlātus,** *carry out, bring out.*
ex-eō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus, *go out.*
in-ferō, -ferre, intulī, inlātus, *bring upon, make upon, inflict.*
pareō, -ēre, -uī, paritūrus, *obey.*
persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsus, *persuade, convince.*
re-ferō, -ferre, rettulī, relātus, *bring back, report.*
resistō, -ere, restitī, ——, *resist.*
serviō, -īre, -īvī, -ītūrus, *serve, be servant to, give heed to.*
voluptās, -ātis, f., *pleasure.*

EXERCISES

362. 1. Fac hōc, facitō illud, id fierī potest. 2. Disce dīligenter ut sapiēns fiās. 3. Fer nōbīs auxilium, nōlī patriae[1] bellum īnferre. 4. Discite fortiter ferre id quod ferendum est. 5. Superanda omnia ferendō sunt. 6. Imperātor exercituī imperat; mīlitēs imperātōrī pārēbunt. 7. Omnēs gentēs illō tempore servīre populō Rōmānō quam imperāre aliīs mālēbant. 8. Orgetorīx cīvitātī persuāsit ut dē fīnibus suīs exīrent ut fīnitimīs bellum īnferrent. 9. Omne frūmentum sēcum domō extulērunt, quod posterō annō domum redīre nōlēbant. 10. Dux hominēs praemīsit quī, quid fieret,[2] cōgnōscerent[3] et ad sē referrent.

363. 1. This man has been made consul; the boy will become a man. 2. Who will bring us help? are you bringing help? 3. Obey the laws, thou shalt obey, we trust you. 4. Who is able to persuade us? 5. Did you resist the enemy's fierce attack? 6. By whom was this war most cruelly brought upon the country?

CHAPTER LXIII

DEPONENT VERBS

The Ablative with ūtor, fruor, etc.

364. Learn the conjugation of the Deponent Verbs (485, 486 with *a–c*).

Deponent verbs have the forms of the passive voice with the meanings of the active, thus:

Stellās mīrāmur, *we wonder at the stars.*
Nautane mare verētur, *does the sailor dread the sea?*

[1] 341. [2] 287. [3] 336.

365. Illustrative Examples

1. **Gladiīs ūtimur**, *we use* (we help ourselves by) *our swords.*
2. **Hīs rēbus fruimur**, *we enjoy* (we enjoy ourselves by means of) *these things.*

Note. — These verbs with a few others, from their real meaning, take the ablative of means, but the English verbs by which they are more simply translated have a direct object.

366. Rule. *The verbs* **ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior,** *and* **vēscor** *take the ablative.*

367. Vocabulary

adorior, -īrī, adortus sum, *attack.*
causa, -ae, f., *cause*; **causā,** ablative placed after a genitive, *for the sake of.*
fruor, -ī, frūctus sum, *enjoy.*
fungor, -ī, fūnctus sum, *perform* (a duty).
impedīmentum, -ī, n., *hindrance*; plu., *baggage-trains.*
mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum, *wonder, wonder at*; *admire.*
potior, -īrī, potītus sum, *get possession of.*
proficīscor, -ī, profectus sum, *start, set out.*
timeō, -ēre, -uī, ——, *fear, be afraid of.*
ūtor, -ī, ūsus sum, *use, adopt.*
vereor, -ērī, veritus sum, *fear, dread, reverence.*
vēscor, -ī, ——, *eat.*

Exercises

368. 1. Sequī, secūtus esse vidētur, sē secūtūrum esse dīcit. 2. Tū proficīscere, ego sequar. 3. Sequēbāminī, cūr secūtī sītis nōn intellegō. 4. Fīnem sequendī fēcit, labōribus fūnctus est. 5. Eīs, quae terra et mare ferunt, vēscimur. 6. Lūcem, quā fruimur, mīrāmur. 7. Multī Caesarem amīcitiae causā secūtī sunt. 8. Veritī perīculum, domum redīre volēbant. 9. Eius reī quae causa esset mīrātus, ex ipsīs quaesiit. 10. Mīlitēs nōn sē hostīs verērī sed magnitūdinem silvārum timēre dīcēbant. 11. Cohortātus suōs, subitō ūnam partem adortus est cum eī quī flūmen trānsīs-

sent suīs auxilium ferre nōn possent. 12. Helvētiī domō proficīscēbantur ut tōtīus Galliae imperiō potīrentur.

369. 1. We will follow, they say that they will follow. 2. I will start; you follow me. 3. This army is to be followed by us. 4. We have got possession of the enemy's camp and baggage. 5. We enjoy the light. 6. They used their own weapons more freely. 7. He urges the soldiers not to (that they may not) fear the enemy.

CHAPTER LXIV

IMPERSONAL VERBS

Passive of Intransitive Verbs

370. Learn what is said about impersonal verbs in 488.

371. *a.* When the active voice is changed to the passive, that which is the direct object of the verb in the active becomes the subject in the passive, as:

Active	Passive
Hominem videō,	**Homō ā mē vidētur,**
I see the man.	*The man is seen by me.*

b. If the verb in the active has no object, or only an indirect object, it can have no subject in the passive; but in Latin such verbs are sometimes used impersonally in the passive, as:

Active	Passive
1. **Currit,** *he runs.*	1. **Curritur** (it is run), *there is running.*
2. **Tibi crēdō,** *I trust you.*	2. **Tibi ā mē crēditur,** *you are trusted by me.*

Note. — If in the active the verb governs the dative (360), the dative is retained in the passive and may often be translated as the subject in English, as in 2 above.

372. Rule. *Intransitive verbs are used only impersonally in the passive.*

373. VOCABULARY

cōnstat, -āre, ——, *it is evident.*

fit, fierī, factum est (as impersonal), *it comes about, it happens.*

hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *pass the winter, winter*; **hiemātur,** *the winter is passed.*

hiems, -is, f., *winter.*

licet, -ēre, licuit or **licitum est,** *it is permitted, one may,* etc.

morior, morī, mortuus sum, *die.*

necesse, indecl., adj., *necessary, inevitable.*

noceō, -ēre, nocuī, nocitūrus, *harm, injure.*

oportet, -ēre, -uit, *it is necessary, one ought.*

perturbātiō, -ōnis, f., *disturbance, alarm.*

prō-videō, -ēre, -vīdī, -vīsus, *provide.*

EXERCISES

374. 1. Pugnābitur, ācriter pugnātum est, accidēbat ut pugnārētur. 2. Ad castra eunt, ad castra ītur, ad castra nōbīs eundum est,[1] quis dīcit nōbīs ad castra eundum esse? 3. Tibi nōn nocēbō, tibi ā mē nocēbitur, eīs nōn nocēbitur. 4. Tibi persuādēre nōn possum, tibi persuādērī nōn poterat. 5. Hīs resistī nōn poterat. 6. Tibi īre licet, tibi īre licēbit, rogat ut sibi domum īre liceat. 7. Omnibus morī necesse est. 8. Tē rūre redīre oportet.[2] 9. Mīlitibus nōn cōnstābat quid fierī oportēret. 10. Nam in hīs locīs, ubi hiemārī oportēbat, frūmentum in[3] hiemem prōvīsum nōn erat. 11. Itaque magna (id quod necesse erat accidere) tōtīus exercitūs perturbātiō facta est.

375. 1. I will not harm you, you will not be harmed by me. 2. You are trusted by all, do you trust these men? 3. The Helvetii had too narrow borders and were hemmed in by very high mountains. 4. Because of these things it

[1] 488, *b*.

[2] *It is necessary that you should return*, or, *you ought to return.*

[3] **In** before a word referring to the future often means *for.*

came about that they wished to go from home. 5. They asked Cæsar that it might be allowed them to go through the province.

CHAPTER LXV

TWO ACCUSATIVES AND ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION

Reading Lesson

376. ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

1. **Nātūra nōs multa docuit**, *nature has taught us many things.*
2. **Haeduī Caesarem auxilium rogant**, *the Haedui ask help from Cæsar.*
3. **Haeduī ā Caesare auxilium petunt**, *the Haedui seek help from Cæsar.*

377. RULE. *Verbs of asking and teaching, and some verbs of demanding, take two accusatives, one of the person, the other of the thing.*

a. But **petō** always, and **postulō** generally, requires the preposition **ā** (ab), and **quaerō ex** (ab, dē), with the *ablative of the person.*

378. ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

1. **Mē metū līberābis**, *you will free me from fear.*
2. **Castra ex eō locō movent**, *they move the camp from this place.*
3. **Equus aquā caret**, *the horse lacks water.*

379. RULE. *After words denoting separation, privation, and want, the ablative is used.*

NOTE. — In 1 no preposition is required. No precise rule can be given for this. But generally, when real *movement*, *space*, or *distance* is involved, as in 2, the preposition is required, while with merely figurative separation and want, as in 1 and 3, the preposition is not required.

380. **Opus** and **ūsus**, meaning *need*, take the ablative, as: **auxiliō opus est**, *there is need of help.*

READING LESSON (*continued from* 338).

381. Nostrī equitēs, cupidius [1] novissimum [2] agmen īnsecūtī, aliēnō locō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt. Itaque Helvētiī nostrō impetuī audācius resistere ausī sunt.[3] Caesar calamitātem veritus suōs ā proeliō continēbat. Eō tempore satis esse arbitrābātur hostīs rapīnīs prohibēre atque eōs lacessere nē agrōs sociōrum populārentur. Interim Caesarī frūmentō opus erat. Itaque Haeduōs frūmentum, quod pollicitī erant, flāgitābat. Nam frūmentō,[4] quod flūmine [5] Ararī subvēxerat, minus ūtī poterat,[6] quod iter ab Ararī Helvētiī āverterant, ā quibus discēdere nōlēbat.

EXERCISES

382. 1. The enemy's cavalry at this time resisted the Romans very boldly. 2. And Cæsar feared disaster, for his cavalry needed grain. 3. But, since the enemy had turned their course from the river, he could not use his own grain. 4. And so, in order that he might be freed from anxiety,[7] he asked for grain from the Hædui.

NOTE. — The words needed in this exercise, except those repeatedly used before, are to be found in 376, 378, and 381.

[1] 178, *a.* [2] *newest = last, rear.* [3] 487. [4] 366. [5] 48.
[6] **minus . . . poterat**, *he was less able.* [7] *anxiety = fear =* **metus.**

EARLY ROMAN COIN

CHAPTER LXVI

SUBORDINATE CLAUSES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

Cognate Accusative

383. ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

1. **Cōnsilia quae cēpimus hostibus ēnūntiantur**, *the plans which we have formed are reported to the enemy.*
2. **Fugitīvus dīxit cōnsilia quae cēpissēmus hostibus ēnūntiārī**, *the fugitive said that the plans which we had formed were reported to the enemy.*

a. The verb **ēnūntiantur**, which is in the principal clause of 1, becomes **ēnūntiārī** in 2, according to 306, but **cēpimus**, which is in the subordinate clause of 1, becomes subjunctive in 2.

384. RULE. *A subordinate clause in indirect discourse* (307, *a* and *b*) *takes the subjunctive.*

385. Cognate Accusative

1. **Vītam bonam vīvit**, *he lives a good life.*
2. **Eōs hōc monēo**, *I warn them this* = (*thus*), or *I give them this* (kind of) *warning.*

a. In 1 the noun and verb have a similar, or kindred, meaning. Such an accusative is therefore called the *cognate accusative*, from the Latin word **cōgnātus**, *kindred, connected with.*

b. In 2 **hōc** does not refer to some outside object, but merely limits the idea contained within the verb itself and is closely connected with it, and so is called *cognate accusative.*

c. A cognate accusative, therefore, is either a noun having the same or kindred meaning with the verb, or a neuter pronoun or adjective limiting the idea expressed in the verb itself.

386. With **valeō**, *be strong, have influence*, and with **possum**, *be able, have power*, the neuter accusatives, **nihil**, **quid**, **quan-**

tum, and **multum** (**plūs**, **plūrimum**, or **minus**, **minimum**), are quite common as cognate, or adverbial, accusatives, as :

1. **Quid potest?** *what power has he*, or *what can he do?*
2. **Nihil potest**, *he has no power*, or *he can do nothing.*
3. **Multum (plūs, plūrimum) potest**, *he has much* (*more*, *most*, or *very great*) *power.*

READING LESSON

387. Ubi sē diūtius[1] dūcī[2] intellēxit, eōrum prīncipēs convocāvit. In[3] hīs erant Dīviciācus et Liscus, quī summō magistrātuī praeerat. Graviter eōs accūsat, quod, tam propinquīs hostibus,[4] ab eīs nōn frūmentum cōnferātur ; praesertim cum eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscēperit, multō[5] etiam gravius queritur. Tum Liscus ōrātiōne Caesaris adductus respondet : esse nōn nūllōs[6] quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimum valeat, quī plūs possint quam ipsī magistrātūs. Hōs sēditiōsā ōrātiōne multitūdinem dēterrēre nē[7] frūmentum cōnferant, quod dēbeant. Ab eīsdem nostra cōnsilia quaeque in castrīs gerantur hostibus ēnūntiārī ; hōs ā sē coercērī nōn posse.

EXERCISES

388. 1. The Hædui put Cæsar off, although he had undertaken the war at[8] their entreaties. 2. The people were influenced by the reckless talk of the leaders, who had very great power. 3. Liscus said that these leaders had more influence than he himself. 4. Although Liscus held[9] the highest office, he could not restrain these men.

NOTE. — Find the words and phrases for this exercise in 387.

[1] 178, *a*. [2] *is being drawn* (*on*) = *put off*. [3] *among*.
[4] *The enemy* (being) *so near* (334). [5] 180. [6] *not none* = *some*.
[7] **nē . . . cōnferant**, *so that they may not bring* = *from bringing* (277, *b*).
[8] *at* = *because of* (141). [9] Use the proper form of **praesum**.

CHAPTER LXVII

GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES AND THE ABLATIVE OF QUALITY

389. ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

1. **Cupidus pugnandī est**, *he is desirous of fighting.*

2. **Reī mīlitāris perītus est**, *he is experienced in military affairs.*

390. RULE. *Adjectives denoting desire, knowledge, memory, fullness, power, sharing, guilt, and their opposites, govern the genitive.*

391. ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLE

Est summā virtūte, *he is* [*a man*] (with, possessed of) *of the greatest courage.*

392. RULE. *A noun, with an adjective, may be used in the ablative to denote quality.* Compare 136.

READING LESSON

393. Caesar hāc ōrātiōne Liscī Dumnorīgem, Diviciācī frātrem, dēsīgnārī sentiēbat; sed quod, plūribus[1] praesentibus, eās rēs iactārī nōlēbat, ex sōlō quaerit ea quae in conventū dīxerat. Reperit ipsum esse[2] Dumnorīgem, summā audāciā, cupidum rērum novārum;[3] multōs annōs magnum numerum equitātūs circum sē habēre, neque sōlum domī sed etiam apud fīnitimās cīvitātīs plūrimum posse.[2] Praetereā fāvit Helvētiīs[4] Dumnorīx, quod huius potentiae causā ipse ex Helvētiīs uxōrem habēbat; ōderat Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū[5] potentia eius minor erat. Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō Caesar initium[2] fugae, quae paucīs ante diēbus facta esset,[6] factum esse[2] ā Dumnorīge quī equitātuī, quem auxiliō Caesarī Haeduī mīserant, praeerat.

[1] *Too many* (178, *a*; and 334) *being present = while too many were present.*
[2] 306. [3] **rērum novārum**, *new things = change, revolution.*
[4] 360. [5] 141. [6] 384.

EXERCISES

394. 1. Dumnorix, the brother of Diviciacus, was a man of great boldness. 2. Cæsar, desirous of finding out why Dumnorix favoured the Helvetii, inquired from Liscus alone. 3. He learned that Dumnorix for the sake of power had a wife from the Helvetii. 4. By the coming of the Romans Dumnorix thought that this power would be less.

CHAPTER LXVIII

VERBS OF FEARING AND INDIRECT REQUESTS

Hortatory Subjunctive

395. ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

1. **Timeō nē veniat**, *I fear that* (lest) *he will* (may) *come.*
2. **Timeō ut veniat**, *I fear that he will* (may) *not come.*

396. RULE. *Verbs of fearing take the subjunctive with* **nē** *or* **ut.**

a. With verbs of fearing **nē** is translated *that*, or *lest*, and **ut** *that not.*

Hortatory Subjunctive

397. The subjunctive is used in exhortations, corresponding to the English *let*, as:

veniat, *let him come*; **nē eāmus**, *let us not go.*

398. **Requests**

DIRECT	INDIRECT
1. **Venī**, *come.*	1. **Eī persuāsit ut venīret**, *he persuaded him to come.*
2. **Nōlī venīre**, *do not come.*	2. **Eum cohortātus est nē venīret**, *he urged him not to come.*
3. **Veniat**, *let him come.*	3. **Postulābat ut venīret**, *he requested that he should come.*

a. DEFINITION. *An indirect request is a subordinate clause following a verb expressing or implying a command or request.*

399. RULE. *The verb of an indirect request is in the subjunctive.*

READING LESSON

400. Hīs[1] cōgnitīs — praesertim cum[2] Dumnorīx sē suspīciōne līberāre nōn posset — Caesar satis esse causae[3] arbitrābātur quā rē[4] in eum aut ipse animadverteret aut cīvitātem animadvertere iubēret. Sed hōc facere nōlēbat; nam nē eius suppliciō Dīviciācī animum offenderet verēbātur. Itaque Dīviciācum ad sē vocārī iubet, et per interpretem, cui summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat, cum eō conloquitur. Ostendit quae ipsō praesente in conciliō dē Dumnorīge sint dicta; petit atque hortātur ut sine offēnsiōne animī vel ipse dē eō, causā cōgnitā,[5] statuat vel cīvitātem statuere iubeat.

EXERCISES

401. 1. I fear that he will do this, I fear that he will not do this. 2. Let him do this, let us not do this. 3. Do this, do not do this. 4. He persuaded him to do this, he exhorted them not to do this. 5. Cæsar urged the state to punish Dumnorix. 6. He himself did not wish to hurt the feelings of Diviciacus.

[1] *these (things).* [2] *since.* [3] 188.
[4] *on account of which thing = wherefore, why.*
[5] *the cause having been learned = after investigating the case* (334).

CHAPTER LXIX

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS. READING LESSON

402. Indefinite Pronouns

Mas.	Fem.	Neu.	
Quis	**qua**	**quid** (**quod**)	*any*, used after **sī**, **nisi**, **nē**, and **num**, is declined like the interrogative **quis** (233 or 471), except that the feminine singular and neuter plural have **qua** instead of **quae**.
Quisquam		**quidquam** (**quicquam**)	*any*, *any at all*, used in negative clauses, or clauses implying a negative, occurs only in the singular masculine and neuter.
Aliquis	**aliqua**	**aliquid** (**aliquod**)	*some*, *some one* (but no one in particular), is declined like **quis** above. (See 472.)
Quisque	**quaeque**	**quidque** (**quodque**)	*each*, *every*, *every one*, is declined like **quis**, with the suffix **-que** added.
Quīdam	**quaedam**	**quiddam** (**quoddam**)	*a certain*, *some one* (whom the writer has in mind), is declined regularly (472).
Quīvīs	**quaevīs**	**quidvīs** (**quodvīs**)	*any one you wish*, *any one whosoever*, is declined like **quīdam**.
Quīlibet	**quaelibet**	**quidlibet** (**quodlibet**)	

403. Negative Combinations

1. In negative purpose in Latin **nē quis** (**qua**, **quid**), *that not* (or *lest*) *any one* is used for *that no one*, as: **nē quis veniat**, *that no one may come.*

2. In statements *and no one* = *and not any one* = **neque** (or **nec**) **quisquam**, as: **nec quisquam vēnit**, *and no one came.*

READING LESSON

404. Ipse Dīviciācus plūrimum [1] domī atque in reliquā Galliā poterat. Sed Dumnorīx erat nōn magnā grātiā,[2] atque eā quam habēbat potentiā [3] paene ad perniciem Dīviciācī, suī frātris, ūtēbātur. Nec quisquam ex eō plūs quam Dīviciācus dolōris [4] cēpit. Tamen quōdam amōre frāternō commōtus est, quem quīvīs in [5] frātrem habēre dēbet. Itaque cum, quae quisque dē frātre dīxīsset, cōgnōvisset, Caesarem obsecrāre coepit nē quid gravius in frātrem statueret.[6] Nam verēbātur nē, sī quid eī ā Caesare gravius accidisset,[7] cum ipse eum locum amīcitiae apud eum tenēret, aliquī id suā voluntāte factum [8] exīstimārent. Haec [9] cum ā Caesare peteret, Caesar eius dextram [10] prēndit; cōnsolātus rogat [11] fīnem ōrandī faciat. Dumnorīgem ad sē vocat. Monet ut in [12] reliquum tempus omnīs suspīciōnēs vītet. Dumnorīgī custōdēs pōnit ut quae agat, quibuscum loquātur, scīre possit.

[1] 386. [2] 392. [3] 366. [4] 188.

[5] *for* or *toward.*

[6] **statuō**, *decide, take measures;* **nē quid . . . statueret**, *that he should not take any very severe measures against his brother.*

[7] *should happen* = *should be done to.*

[8] Foot-note 2, p. 133.

[9] Put before the conjunction for emphasis, and to show that it refers back to the preceding sentence.

[10] Supply *hand.*

[11] The **ut** is sometimes, as here, omitted.

[12] *for.* Cf. foot-note 3, p. 149.

CHAPTER LXX

REVIEW OF TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES

405. The tenses of the subjunctive in subordinate clauses do not designate a fixed or definite time, but represent an act as *past* or *not past* at the time designated by the verb with which the subjunctive is connected (288–290), thus:

406. **Rules for the Tenses of the Subjunctive**

1. The *present* subjunctive represents an act or event *not past*, connected with a *primary* tense.

2. The *imperfect* subjunctive represents an act or event *not past*, connected with a *secondary* tense.

3. The *perfect* subjunctive represents a *past* act or event, connected with a *primary* tense.

4. The *pluperfect* subjunctive represents a *past* act or event, connected with a *secondary* tense.

NOTE. — Apply the rules as given above to the subjunctives in the following

READING LESSON

407. Eōdem diē Caesar, ab explōrātōribus certior factus hostīs sub monte cōnsēdisse mīlia passuum ab ipsīus castrīs octō, quālis[1] esset ascēnsus montis quī cōgnōscerent mīsit. Renūntiātum est facilem esse. Dē tertiā vigiliā T.[2] Labiēnō imperat ut cum duābus legiōnibus summum iugum montis ascendat. P.[2] Cōnsidius, quī reī[3] mīlitāris perītissimus habēbātur[4] cum explōrātōribus praemittitur. Prīmā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenērētur, Cōnsidius ad

[1] *what was the ascent, who should find out, he sent = he sent* (men) *to find out*, etc. (336).

[2] T. for Titus; P. for Publius. [3] 390. [4] *was held = was considered.*

Caesarem contendit; dīcit montem, quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit,[1] ab hostibus tenērī. Caesar celeriter aciem īnstrūxit. Labiēnus, cui erat[2] praescrīptum nē[3] proelium committeret, nisi ipse Caesar cum cōpiīs suīs adesset, nostrōs exspectābat proeliōque abstinēbat. Multō[4] diē Caesar cōgnōvit montem ā Labiēnō tenērī et Cōnsidium timōre perterritum quod[5] nōn vīdisset[6] renūntiāsse.[7]

EXERCISES

408. 1. Cæsar directed[8] Labienus to ascend[9] the hill. 2. He sends Considius to ascertain what is being done.[10] 3. He reports that Labienus does not hold the hill which he has ascended. 4. Considius had seen Labienus on top of[11] the hill. 5. But he was so frightened that he thought that Labienus was an enemy.

CHAPTER LXXI

TENSES OF PARTICIPLES AND INFINITIVES

409. The tenses of the participle and infinitive denote time, *present*, *past*, or *future*, relative to the time designated by the verb with which they are connected. Compare 405.

Illustrative Examples

410. Participles

1. **Mīlitēs domō proficīscentīs vīdī**, *I saw the soldiers* (starting) *as they were starting from home.*
2. **Mīlitēs domō profectōs vīdī**, *I saw the soldiers* (having started) *after they had started from home.*
3. **Mīlitēs dōmō profectūrōs vīdī**, *I saw the soldiers* (about to start) *as they were about to start from home.*

[1] 384. [2] 341, 372. *who had been directed.* [3] *not to*, etc. 398, 2; 399. [4] *at much day = late in the day.* [5] *what.* [6] 384. [7] Foot-note 4, p. 136. [8] **praescrībō** (341). [9] 398, 399. [10] 287. [11] *top of* = **summus.**

411. Infinitives

1. The present infinitive represents an act as taking place at the same time as that designated by the verb on which it depends, as:

Dīcit sē scrībere, *he says that he is writing.*
Dīxit sē scrībere, *he said that he was writing.*

2. The perfect infinitive represents an act that took place before the time designated by the verb on which it depends, as:

Dīcit sē scrīpsisse, *he says that he has written.*
Dīxit sē scrīpsisse, *he said that he had written.*

3. The future infinitive represents an act that is to take place later than the time designated by the verb on which it depends, as:

Dīcit sē scrīptūrum esse, *he says that he will write.*
Dīxit sē scrīptūrum esse, *he said that he would write.*

EXERCISES

412. 1. Dux, in proelium prōcessūrus, mīlitēs cohortātus est. 2. Dux, mīlitēs cohortātus, in proelium prōcessit. 3. Dux, in proelium prōcēdēns, volnerātus est. 4. Duce[1] mīlitēs cohortātō, sīgnum **proeliī** committendī datum est. 5. Duce[1] mīlitēs cohortante, hostēs prōcessērunt. 6. Proeliō commissō, multī volnerātī sunt. 7. Mīlitēs tēla coniciunt, mīlitēs tēla conicere dīxit. 8. Mīlitēs tēla coniēcērunt, mīlitēs tēla coniēcisse dīxit. 9. Mīlitēs mox tēla coniectūrōs esse dīxit.

[1] 334. Why are **dux**, in 1, 2, and 3, and **duce**, in 4 and 5, not in the same case? Does the tense or voice of the participle have anything to do with the case of the noun with which it agrees?

413. 1. The leader was wounded while[1] exhorting his soldiers. 2. The leader, having exhorted his soldiers, gave the signal for[2] battle. 3. The soldiers, having seized[3] their arms, are advancing. 5. He said that the soldiers were advancing. 6. We think that the soldiers have advanced and will soon commence battle.

READING LESSON

414. Posterō diē Caesar iter ab Helvētiīs āvertit atque ad oppidum fīnitimum frūmentī comparandī causā īre contendit. Helvētiī, quod Rōmānōs frūmentō sē interclūsūrōs esse exīstimārent, nostrōs ā novissimō agmine īnsequī ac lacessere coepērunt. Itaque Caesar equitātum quī sustinēret hostium impetum mīsit. Ipse triplicem aciem īnstrūxit atque in summō iugō omnia auxilia conlocārī iussit. Helvētiī, cum omnibus suīs carrīs secūtī, impedīmenta in ūnum locum contulērunt, et sub nostram aciem successērunt. Caesar, remōtīs equīs nē qua[4] spēs fugae relinquerētur, cohortātus suōs proelium commīsit. Gallīs magnō ad pugnam erat impedīmentō,[5] quod plūra eōrum scūta ūnō ictū pīlōrum trānsfīxa sunt. Tandem volneribus cōnfectī, ad montem, quī aderat, sē recipere coepērunt.

[1] Use no word for *while*.

[2] *for* here = *of*.

[3] Use the proper form of **capiō**. The perfect participle in Latin, except in deponent verbs, is always passive. So in changing from English to Latin the perfect active participle must first be changed to the passive. Thus *having seized their arms* will become *their arms having been seized*. Will the word for *arms* then be subject nominative, or independent and therefore ablative absolute?

[4] 402; 403, 1. [5] 342.

CHAPTER LXXII

TEMPORAL CLAUSES WITH DUM, DŌNEC, ETC.

415. 1. **Dum**, *while*, regularly takes the present indicative, as:

Dum haec geruntur, *while these things were* (being done) *going on.*

2. **Dum, dōnec**, and **quoad**, *as long as*, take the indicative, as:

Quoad potuit, fortissimē restitit, *he resisted very bravely as long as he could.*

3. **Dum, dōnec**, and **quoad**, *until*, regularly take

a. The indicative to denote an actual fact, as:

Dōnec rediit, silentium fuit, *until he returned there was silence.*

b. The subjunctive to denote intention or expectancy, as:

Exspectābat Caesar dum nāvēs convenīrent, *Cæsar waited until the ships should assemble*, or *for the ships to assemble.*

416. **Antequam** and **priusquam**, *before, sooner than*, take

a. The indicative to denote an actual fact, as:

Profectus sum ante quam vēnistī, *I started before you came.*

b. The subjunctive to denote intention, expectancy, or prevention, as:

Priusquam plūrēs cīvitātēs cōnspīrārent, lātius exercitum distribuit, *before more states should conspire, he distributed his army more widely.*

417. READING LESSON

Dum haec geruntur, Boiī, quī novissimīs hostium praesidiō[1] erant, nostrōs ab latere apertō lacessere coepērunt; et id cōnspicātī Helvētiī proelium celeriter redintegrāre statuērunt, priusquam Rōmānī Boiōs repellere possent. Diū proelium dubium erat. Nam Rōmānīs bipartītō eōdem

[1] 342.

tempore pugnandum[1] erat. Hostēs, quoad potuērunt, sustinuērunt atque ācriter pugnāvērunt, dōnec nostrī impedīmentīs[2] castrīsque potītī sunt. Ibi Orgetorīgis fīlia atque ūnus ē[3] fīliīs captus est. Ex eō proeliō hominum mīlia cxxx superfuērunt, eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt: in fīnīs Lingonum quārtō diē pervēnērunt. Trīduum[4] propter volnera mīlitum Caesarī morandum[1] erat, priusquam eōs sequī potuit. Itaque Lingonibus imperāvit nē Helvētiōs frūmentō iuvārent, quoad ipse cum exercitū vēnīsset.

EXERCISES

418. 1. The battle was not doubtful till the Boii came to the assistance[5] of the Helvetii. 2. While the Boii were assailing our men on the flank,[6] the Helvetii renewed[7] the battle. 3. Then the Romans had to fight[8] fiercely before they could get possession of the camp. 4. After the battle Cæsar delayed until he could assist the wounded.[9] 5. Before the army was able to follow, the enemy had escaped.[10]

CHAPTER LXXIII

THE INDICATIVE WITH POSTQUAM, UBI, ETC.

419. RULE. **Postquam**, *after*; **ubi**, **ut**, *when, as soon as*; **simul ac** (**atque** 133, note), *as soon as, take the indicative* (generally perfect tense).

NOTE. — **Ut**, meaning *as* (not temporal), always takes the indicative, as: **proximā nocte, ut dīxerat, profectus est**, *on the next night, he started, as he had said.*

[1] 488, *b*. [2] 366. [3] *of*, not *from* (foot-note 1, p. 89). [4] **221**.
[5] 342. [6] **latus**. [7] **redintegrō, āre**, etc.
[8] *it was to be fought*, etc. (488, *b*).
[9] Foot-note 1, p. 98. [10] **effugiō**.

420. READING LESSON

Interim Helvētiī omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs dē dēditiōne ad eum mīsērunt. Quī[1] cum eum in itinere convēnissent, eōs in eō locō quō tum essent suum adventum exspectāre iussit. Eō[2] postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs et arma poposcit. Dum ea cōnferuntur circiter hominum mīlia VI, timōre perterritī nē armīs trāditīs[3] suppliciō adficerentur, prīmā nocte, ē castrīs Helvētiōrum effūgērunt. Quod[1] ubi Caesar intellēxit, imperāvit ut redūcerentur; reliquōs omnīs armīs trāditīs[4] in dēditiōnem accēpit. Ita bellum Helvētiōrum cōnfectum est. Helvētiōs in fīnīs suōs, unde[5] erant profectī, revertī iussit. Eōrum quī domum rediērunt cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar imperāverat, repertus est numerus mīlium c et x. Summa omnium, quī domō exiērunt, fuērunt ad mīlia CCCLXVIII.

[1] **Qui cum**, *who when* = *and when they*. **Quod ubi Caesar intellēxit** = *and when Cæsar learned this*. In Latin a relative, pronoun, or adverb, at the beginning of a sentence, referring to something in the preceding sentence, serves as a connective, where the English uses a demonstrative or personal pronoun, often with a conjunction.

[2] *There after Cæsar came* = *after Cæsar came there*. **eō** refers to the preceding sentence, and so is put first to connect the thought more closely. In English the conjunction regularly comes first. Cf. foot-note 9, p. 158.

[3] *The arms being given up* = *if their arms should be given up*. The ablative absolute is often equivalent to an English clause. It is well first to give the words their exact meaning, then translate by whatever phrase or clause will best express the idea.

[4] What is the best translation for *armīs trāditīs* here?

[5]

PLACE WHERE	PLACE TO WHICH
ibi, *in that place, there.*	**eō**, *to that place, thither, there.*
ubi, *in which place, where.*	**quō**, *to which place, whither, where.*

PLACE FROM WHICH

inde, *from that place, thence, there.*
unde, *from which place, whence, where.*

CHAPTER LXXIV

CONDITIONS AND WISHES

421. A conditional sentence contains two clauses: the *condition*, introduced by **sī**, *if* (negative **nisi** or **sī nōn**), and the *conclusion*.

NOTE. — Read very carefully 422–424, then learn 425.

ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

422. Simple Conditions

A condition which simply states that a certain thing is (or was) true, if some other thing is (or was) true, without implying anything as to the fact, takes the indicative, in any tense required, as:

a. **Sī hōc facis, rēctē facis,** *if you do this, you do right.*

b. **Sī hōc fēcistī, tē laudō,** *if you did this, I commend you.*

c. **Sī dux aderat, mīlitēs fortiter pugnābant,** *if the leader was present, the soldiers fought bravely.*

423. Future Conditions

1. *Future more Vivid with the Indicative*

A condition, referring distinctly or vividly to the future, corresponding to the English with *shall* or *will* and implying expectation or probability, takes the indicative; future (or *future perfect* for *completed* action) in the condition, and the future in the conclusion, as:

(Time of condition and conclusion the same)

a. **Sī mīlitēs in proelium prōcēdent, dux cum eīs ībit.**
If the soldiers advance to battle, the leader will go with them.

(Condition completed)

b. **Nisi arma trādideris, pācem tēcum nōn faciet.**
Unless you give (shall have given) up the arms, he will not make peace with you.

NOTE. — The arms must be given up *before* peace will be made.

2. Future less Vivid with the Subjunctive

A condition referring less distinctly or vividly to the future, corresponding to the English with *should* or *would* and implying uncertainty or mere possibility, takes the subjunctive ; present (or *perfect* for *completed* action) in the condition, and the present in the conclusion, as :

(Time of condition and conclusion the same)

a. **Sī mīlitēs in proelium prōcēdant, dux cum eīs eat.**
If the soldiers should advance to battle, the leader would go with them.

(Condition completed)

b. **Sī arma trādideris, pācem tēcum faciat.**
If you should give up the arms, he would make peace with you.

NOTE. — The arms were to be given up *before* peace would be made.

424. **Conditions Contrary to Fact**

A condition in which something is assumed contrary to the fact, takes the subjunctive ; the imperfect referring to the present or something continuing to present time, and the pluperfect referring to something finished in the past, as :

a. **Sī dux adesset, exercitus nōn verērētur.**
If the leader were present, the army would not fear.

b. **Sī dux adfuisset, exercitus nōn superātus esset.**
If the leader had been present, the army would not have been defeated.

425. **Summary of Conditions**

I. Simple Conditions . . . take the indicative, in any tense required.

II.
- *a.* Future more Vivid . . . indicative ; future (or *future perfect* for *completed* action) in the condition, and the future in the conclusion.
- *b.* Future less Vivid . . . subjunctive ; present (or *perfect* for *completed* action) in the condition, and the present in the conclusion.

III. { *a.* Contrary to Fact, *present* . . . the imperfect subjunctive.
b. Contrary to Fact, *past* . . . the pluperfect subjunctive.

Wishes

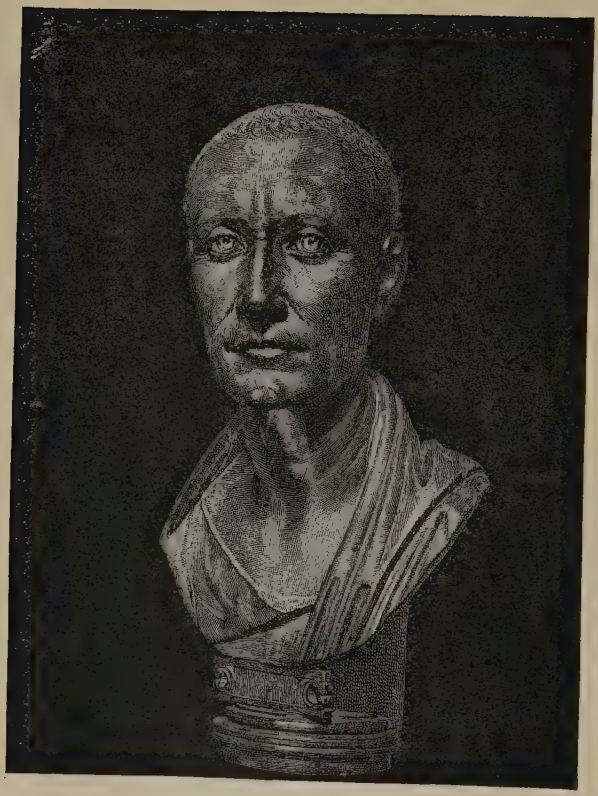
426. Clauses expressing a wish take the subjunctive, frequently but not always introduced by **utinam**, *would that*; they correspond exactly to conditions of the less vivid future (423, 2), and to conditions contrary to fact (424), as:

1. **Utinam meus frāter veniat**, *O that my brother would come!* (423, 2.)
2. **Utinam meus frāter adesset**, *I wish that my brother were here.* (424, *a.*)
3. **Utinam meus frāter adfuisset**, *would that my brother had been here!* (424, *b.*)

EXERCISES

427. 1. Sī vīs, potes. 2. Sī haec cīvitās est, cīvis sum. 3. Nisi imperātor aderat, lēgātus nōn saepe proelium committēbat. 4. Sī nēmō praetereā sequētur, cum sōlā decimā legiōne ībō. 5. Sī mīlitēs vīcerint, laudābuntur. 6. Sī urbs oppugnāta sit, cīvēs sē dēfendant. 7. Sī mīlitēs fortiter pugnent, vincant. 8. Sī nōn dux abesset, fortius mīlitēs pugnārent. 9. Utinam ille adesset! 10. Sī prīnceps coniūrātiōnis ex urbe exīsset, nōs salvī essēmus. 11. Utinam exīsset et omnēs sēcum suōs ēdūxisset! 12. Ariovistus dīxit: "In Galliam nōn vēnissem nisi rogātus essem ā Gallīs. 13. Sī mihi bellum intuleris, mē dēfendam." 14. Caesar respondit: "Nōlī bellum Haeduīs sociīsque eōrum īnferre; redde obsidēs quōs habēs; sī id ita fēceris, mihi populōque Rōmānō amīcitia tēcum erit." 15. Sī Ariovistus id quod Caesar postulāverat fēcisset, Caesar pācem cum eō fēcisset.

428. 1. If these brave soldiers fight, they conquer. 2. If they fought, they conquered. 3. If they should fight, they would conquer; if they should conquer, they would be praised. 4. If they had fought, they would have conquered. 5. O that they may conquer! 6. Would that they had conquered! 7. If you will go, I will go with you. 8. If you will return the hostages, I will not make war upon you. 9. If you should make war upon me, I should seize all your towns. 10. If our ancestors had not fought bravely, we should not now be free. 11. Would that all men were free!



GAIVS IVLIVS CAESAR

From the marble bust in the British Museum

SELECTIONS FOR READING

FABLES

429. THE KID AND THE WOLF

Haedus stāns in tēctō domūs[1] lupō[2] praetereuntī maledīxit. Cui lupus, "Nōn tū," inquit,[3] "sēd tēctum mihi maledīxit." Saepe locus et tempus timidōs hominēs audācīs reddit.

430. IN UNION IS STRENGTH

Agricola senex, cum mortem sibi[4] adpropinquāre sentīret,[5] fīliōs convocāvit, quōs interdum discordāre nōverat,[6] et fascem virgulārum adferrī iubet. Quibus[7] adlātīs, fīliōs hortātur ut hunc fascem frangerent. Quod[7] cum facere nōn possent, distribuit singulās virgās; iīsque celeriter fractīs, docuit fīliōs, quam[8] fīrma rēs esset concordia quamque imbēcillis discordia.

431. SOUR GRAPES

Vulpēs ūvam in vīte cōnspicāta ad illam subsiliit omnium vīrium suārum contentiōne, sī[9] eam forte attingere posset. Tandem dēfatīgāta inānī labōre discēdēns dīxit: "At nunc etiam acerbae sunt, nec eās in viā repertās[10] tollerem."[11]

[1] 210, *b*.

[2] **lupō praetereuntī maledīxit**, *to a wolf passing by spoke ill = reviled a wolf as he was passing by* (409, 410, 1).

[3] **inquit** = *said he*, used, as here, only in a direct quotation. [4] 341.

[5] 279, 2. [6] From **nōscō**. [7] 420, note 1. [8] *how*.

[9] **sī** = *to see if*. [10] **repertās**, *found = if they were found*. [11] 424.

432. THE OXEN

In eōdem prātō pāscēbantur trēs bovēs [1] in maximā concordiā, et sīc ab omnī ferārum incursiōne tūtī erant. Sed dissidiō inter illōs ortō,[2] singulī ā ferīs petītī et laniātī sunt.

Fābula docet quantum bonī [3] sit [4] in concordiā.

433. THE TRUMPETER

Tubicen ab hostibus captus, "Nōlīte [5] mē," inquit, "interficere; nam inermis sum, neque quidquam [6] habeō praeter hanc tubam." At hostēs, "Propter hōc ipsum," inquiunt, "tē interimēmus, quod, cum ipse pugnandī [7] sīs [8] imperītus, aliōs ad pugnam incitāre solēs."

Fābula docet nōn sōlum maleficōs esse pūniendōs sed etiam eōs quī aliōs ad male faciendum irrītent.

434. THE GOLDEN EGG

Mulier quaedam habēbat gallīnam, quae eī cotīdiē ōvum pariēbat aureum. Hinc suspicārī [9] coepit illam [10] aurī māssam intus celāre [10] et gallīnam occīdit. Sed nihil in eā repperit nisi quod [11] in aliīs gallīnīs reperīrī solet. Itaque dum [12] maiōribus dīvitiīs [13] inhiat etiam minōrēs perdidit.

435. THE LION'S SHARE

Societātem iūnxerant leō, iuvenca, capra, ovis. Praedā autem [14] quam cēperant in quattuor partīs dīvīsā, leō, "Prīma," ait, "mea est; dēbētur enim haec praestantiae meae. Tollam et secundam, quam merētur rōbur meum.

[1] From **bōs**. [2] From **orior**. [3] 188. [4] 287. [5] 347. [6] 402. [7] 389, 390. [8] 279, 1. [9] 303. [10] *that she*, etc., 254, *b*; and 306. [11] **nisi quod** = *except what*. [12] 415, 1. [13] 341.

[14] The words **autem**, **enim**, **ferē**, **modo**, **quidem**, **quoque**, **vērō**, are postpositive. If they belong to a single word, they are put directly after that word; if they belong to a phrase or clause, they come after the *first* word (except a preposition) of that phrase or clause.

Tertiam vindicat sibi ēgregius labor meus. Quārtam quī sibi adrogāre voluerit, is sciat[1] sē habitūrum mē inimīcum sibi." Quid facerent imbēcillae bēstiae? aut quae sibi leōnem īnfestum habēre vellet?

436. BELLING THE CAT

Mūrēs aliquandō habuērunt cōnsilium, quō modo ā fēle cavērent.[2] Multīs aliīs propositīs, omnibus[3] placuit, ut eī tintinābulum adnecterētur; sīc enim ipsōs sonitū admonitōs eam fugere posse.[4] Sed cum iam inter mūrīs quaererētur[5] quī fēlī tintinābulum adnecteret, nēmō repertus est.

Fābula docet in suādendō[6] plūrimōs esse audācīs, in ipsō perīculō timidōs.

ROMAN HISTORY

SATURNUS

437. Antīquissimīs temporibus Saturnus in Ītaliam vēnisse dīcitur, arma Iovis[7] fugiēns. Hanc regiōnem Latium vocāvit quoniam hīs in ōrīs tūtus latuisset. Saturnus Ītalōs[8] prīmus agricultūram[8] docuit.

LATINUS AND AENEAS

438. Posteā Latīnus rēx fuit. Interea Trōiā in Asiā captā ā Graecīs, Aenēās dux Trōiānus cum multīs sociīs in Ītaliam pervēnit, cui Latīnus fīliam Lāvīniam in mātrimōnium dedit. Aenēās urbem condidit, quam ab nōmine uxōris Lāvīnium appellāvit.

[1] 397. [2] 287. [3] 360.

[4] **posse** is infinitive because it expresses the *thought* of all, as suggested by **omnibus placuit** (306).

[5] 279, 2; and 488, *b*. [6] 318, *a*.

[7] **Iuppiter, Iovis**, *Jupiter*. [8] 377.

ALBA LONGA

439. Post Aenēae mortem Ascanius, Aenēae fīlius, rēgnum accēpit. Hīc in monte Albānō urbem condidit quae Alba Longa appellāta est. Silvius deinde rēgnāvit, Ascanī fīlius casū quōdam in silvīs nātus. Hōc cōgnōmen rēgibus posteā omnibus mānsit, quī Albae[1] rēgnāvērunt. Tandem Silvius Procās duōs fīliōs relīquit, Numitōrem et Amūlium. Amūlius per dolum rēgnum obtinuit. Addit scelerī scelus: Numitōris fīlium interfēcit et fīliam, Rheam Silviam, Vestālem virginem fēcit nē quem[2] fīlium relinqueret.

ROMULUS AND REMUS

440. Sed Rhea Silvia ā Mārte geminōs fīliōs, Rōmulum et Remum, peperit.[3] Quod[4] ubi Amūlius cōgnōvit, māter in custōdiam datur, puerōs in Tiberim abicī iubet. Forte super rīpās Tiberis sē effūderat, et cum alveus, quō expositī erant puerī, ad lītus fluitāsset, aqua refluēns eōs in siccō relīquit. Eōrum vagītum lupa, quae ad flūmen bibendī causā[5] vēnerat, audīvit et īnfantīs nūtrīvit. Faustulus pāstor quī puerōs invēnit eōs tulit in casam et coniugī dedit ēducandōs.

FOUNDING OF ROME, 753 B. C.

441. Puerī inter pāstōrēs adolēvērunt. Cum cōgnōvissent quis ipsōrum avus, quae māter fuisset, Amūlium interfēcērunt et Numitōrī avō rēgnum restituērunt. Tum frātrēs in īīs locīs ubi expositī ubique ēducātī erant urbem condidērunt. Fāma est lūdicrō[6] frātris Remum novōs trānsiluisse mūrōs, inde ab īrātō Rōmulō interfectum.[7] Ita sōlus potītus est imperiō[8] Rōmulus; condita urbs conditōris nōmine appellāta est.

[1] 354. [2] 403, 1. [3] From **pariō**. [4] 420, note 1. [5] 367. [6] 342. [7] 323, n. 2. [8] 366.

SEIZURE OF THE SABINE WOMEN

442. Rōmulus, ut cīvium numerum augēret, asȳlum aperuit ad quod multī ex cīvitātibus suīs pulsī vēnērunt. Iam rēs Rōmāna erat valida; sed novae urbis cīvibus coniugēs deërant. Tum Rōmulus lēgātōs in vīcīnās gentīs mīsit, quī societātem cōnūbiumque peterent. Nusquam benīgnē lēgātiō audīta est. Itaque Rōmulus lūdōs et spectāculum īnstituit. Multī studiō etiam videndae [1] novae urbis convenērunt, maximē [2] Sabīnī cum līberīs ac coniugibus. Ubi tempus spectāculī vēnit, sīgnō datō, iuventūs Rōmāna virginēs rapuit.

WAR WITH THE SABINES

443. At raptārum [3] parentēs tum sordidā veste lacrimīsque cīvitātēs concitābant, quae statim bellum parant. Bellum maximum fuit; nam Sabīnī callidissimī erant nec ostendērunt bellum priusquam intulērunt. Cōnsiliō etiam additus est dolus. Spurius Tarpēius Rōmānae praeerat arcī.[4] Huius fīliam virginem aurō corrūpit dux ut armātōs [5] in arcem accipiat — aquam forte ea tum extrā moenia petītum [6] ierat. Illa petiit ut, quod in sinistrīs manibus habērent, sibi darent. Aureās enim [7] armillās magnī ponderis [8] gemmātōsque magnā speciē [9] ānulōs vīderat. At hostēs in arcēm ductī scūtīs Tarpēiam obruērunt; nam haec quoque [10] in sinistrīs manibus habēbant.

THE BATTLE, IN WHICH JUPITER STAYS THE FLIGHT OF THE ROMANS

444. Tenuēre [11] tamen arcem Sabīnī. Sed īra et cupiditās recuperandae arcis animōs Rōmānōrum stimulāvit. Prīnci-

[1] 318, *b*; and 319. [2] *mostly* (194).
[3] *of the seized* (maidens), p. 98, foot-note 1. [4] 341.
[5] *the armed* (men). Cf. 6. [6] 321. [7] Foot-note 14, p. 172.
[8] 136. [9] 392. [10] *also*. Cf. 7. [11] Perfect (98).

pēs utrimque pugnam ciēbant : ab [1] Sabīnīs Mettius Curtius, ab Rōmānīs Hostius Hostīlius. Mox Hostius cadit et Rōmāna inclīnātur aciēs. Rōmulus arma ad caelum tollēns, "Juppiter," inquit, "pater deum [2] hominumque, arcē [3] hostīs fugamque foedam siste. Hīc ego tibi templum Statōrī Jovī voveō." Restitēre [4] Rōmānī tamquam caelestī voce iussī. At Mettius Curtius clāmābat, "Vīcimus perfidōs hospitēs. Iam sciunt aliud [5] esse virginēs rapere, aliud [5] pugnāre cum virīs." In eum haec [6] glōriantem [7] Rōmulus impetum facit. Ex equō tum Mettius pellitur. Pulsum [7] Rōmānī persequuntur, et alia Rōmāna aciēs audāciā rēgis accēnsa fundit Sabīnōs. Miserrima fit caedēs. Tum Sabīnae mulierēs sē inter tēla volantia intulērunt hinc patrēs, hinc virōs, ōrantēs nē sē sanguine socerī [8] generīque maculārent. Movet rēs [9] nunc multitūdinem, nunc ducēs. Silentium et repentīna fit quiēs.

TREATY WITH THE SABINES — INSTITUTIONS OF ROMULUS

445. Inde ad foedus faciendum ducēs prōdeunt, nec pācem modo sed cīvitātem ūnam ex duābus faciunt, atque imperium omne cōnferunt Rōmam. Ut Sabīnīs tamen aliquid darētur, cīvēs Quirītēs [10] ā Curibus, oppidō [11] Sabīnōrum, appellātī sunt. Centum ex seniōribus Rōmulus lēgit, quī propter aetātem senātus [10] vocātī sunt. Plēbem in cūriās trīgintā dīvīsit. Eōdem tempore centuriae cōnscrīptae sunt. Rōmulō [12] rēgnante Rōma domī mīlitiaeque tantum [13] valuit ut quadrāgintā deinde annōs tūtam pācem habēret.

Hīs rēbus [12] cōnfectīs, dum exercitum recēnset, subitō coörta est tempestās cum magnō fragōre tonitribusque,

[1] **ab** = *on the side of.* [2] **deum** for **deōrum** (457).
[3] From **arceō** (294, *a*). [4] Perfect (98).
[5] *one thing . . . another thing* (200 and 201, *a*). [6] 385, *b*, *c*.
[7] 409; 410, 1 and 2. [8] *as fathers-in-law and sons-in-law.*
[9] **rēs**, *thing*, here means *the plea* (of the women).
[10] 84 and 85. [11] 82 and 83. [12] 334. [13] 386.

et Rōmulus ē cōnspectū ablātus[1] est; eum ad deōs abīsse volgō crēditum est; cui reī fidem fēcit Proculus, quī in contiōnem prōdit et dīxit Rōmulum caelō repente dēlapsum ita locūtum esse: "Abī,[2] nūntiā[2] Rōmānīs caelestēs ita velle ut mea Rōma caput[3] orbis terrārum[4] sit; proinde rem mīlitārem colant[5] sciantque nūllās opēs hūmānās armīs[6] Rōmānīs resistere posse." "Haec," inquit, "locūtus sublīmis abiit." Ita Rōmulus prō deō cultus[7] et Quirīnus appellātus est.

REIGN OF NUMA POMPILIUS, B. C. 715–672

446. Post ūnīus annī interrēgnum Numa Pompilius, vir summā iūstitiā[8] et religiōne et cōnsultissimus omnis dīvīnī atque hūmānī iūris,[9] rēx creātus est. Curibus[10] habitābat. Cum Rōmam[11] vēnisset, ut ferōcem populum religiōne ac metū deōrum mītigāret, plūrima sacra īnstituit et sacerdōtēs suōs cuique[12] deōrum praefēcit. Āram Vestae cōnsecrāvit et ignem in ārā perpetuō alendum[13] virginibus dedit. Jovis sacerdōtem creāvit, īnsīgnīque eum veste et curūlī sellā adōrnāvit. Huic duōs flāminēs adiēcit, Mārtī ūnum, alterum Quirīnō. Sacerdōtēs duodecim Mārtī lēgit, quī caelestia arma, quae ancīlia appellantur, ferre per urbem canentēs carmina solēbant. Pontificem deinde maximum lēgit, eīque omnia pūblica prīvātaque sacra attribuit, ut īdem pontifex deum cōnsuleret auguriīs quae suscipienda[14] essent. Iānum indicem pācis bellīque fēcit, apertus ut in armīs esse cīvitātem, clausus pācātōs omnīs populōs sīgnificāret. Bis post Numae rēgnum clausus fuit, semel T. Manliō cōnsule

[1] From **auferō**. [2] 294, *a*. [3] 84 and 85.
[4] *circle of the lands = the world.* [5] 397. [6] 360.
[7] **et** connects **cultus** and **appellātus**. [8] 392. [9] 390.
[10] 352, *b*; and 354, 1. [11] 354, 2. [12] *to each one his own* or *special.*
[13] *he intrusted* (*gave*) *the fire to the virgins to be continually kept = he intrusted the keeping of the fire to*, etc.
[14] 312, *d*; and 313, 2.

post Pūnicum prīmum bellum, iterum imperātōre Caesare Augustō post proelium Actiacum.

Eā[1] pietāte omnibus pectora imbuerat ut fidēs ac iūs nōn minus quam poenārum metus cīvitātem regerent. Ita duo rēgēs, alius[2] aliā viā, ille[3] bellō hīc pāce, cīvitātem auxērunt. Rōmulus septem et trīgintā rēgnāvit annōs, Numa trēs et quadrāgintā. Valida et bellī et pācis artibus[4] erat cīvitās.

REIGN OF TULLUS HOSTILIUS, 672-640 B. C.

1. War between the Albans and Romans

447. Numae morte ad interrēgnum rēs rediit. Inde Tullum Hostīlium, cuius avus in clārā pugnā adversus Sabīnōs fortissimē pugnāverat, rēgem populus creāvit. Hīc nōn sōlum proximō rēgī dissimilis sed ferōcior etiam quam Rōmulus fuit et undique māteriam excitandī bellī quaerēbat. Forte ēvēnit ut agrestēs Rōmānī ex Albānō agrō, Albānī ex Rōmānō, praedās agerent. Lēgātīs ad rēs repetendās nēquīquam missīs, bellum utrimque summā ope parābātur. Albānī priōrēs ingentī exercitū in agrum Rōmānum fēcēre impetum. Interim Tullus audācter nocte in agrum Albānum iniit. Inde dux Albānus lēgātum praemissum[5] nūntiāre Tullō iubet, priusquam dīmicent, opus esse conloquiō.[6] Ita utrimque exercitūs ducēs in medium ad conloquium prōcēdunt. Ibi īnfit Albānus: "Inūriās et nōn redditās rēs et ego et tū, Tulle, causam huiusce[7] esse bellī vīdimus. Sed sī vēra dīcenda sunt, cupīdō imperī duōs cōgnātōs vīcīnōsque populōs ad arma stimulat. Itaque ineāmus[8] aliquam viam quā[9] utrī utrīs imperent,[10] sine

[1] *that = such.* [2] 201, *b.* [3] 254, *a.* [4] 158.

[5] *he orders a messenger, sent ahead, to announce = he sends a messenger ahead and orders him to announce*, etc.

[6] 380.

[7] The appended **-ce** is often found with some form of **hīc**, as: **huiusce, hōsce**, etc.

[8] 397. [9] 48. [10] Connect this with **dēcernī** (287).

magnā clāde, sine multō sanguine, dēcernī possit. Utrimque ratiō inītur, cui fortūna ipsa praebuit māteriam.

2. The Horatii and Curiatii

Forte in duōbus tum exercitibus erant trigeminī frātrēs, Horātiī Cūriātiīque. Cum trigeminīs agunt rēgēs ut prō suā quisque patriā dīmicent ferrō. Priusquam dīmicārent foedus īctum est eīs lēgibus, ut ibi imperium esset unde victōria fuisset. Foedere īctō, trigeminī arma capiunt et incitātī adhortantium[1] vocibus in medium[2] inter duās aciēs prōcēdunt. Cōnsēderant utrimque prō castrīs duo exercitūs. Sīgnum datur īnfestīsque armīs ternī iuvenēs magnō animō concurrunt. Ut prīmō concursū increpuēre arma mīcantēsque fulsēre gladiī, horror īngēns spectantīs perstringit. Cōnsertīs deinde manibus duo Rōmānī super alium alius, volnerātīs tribus Albānīs, exspīrantēs corruērunt. Ad quōrum[3] cāsum cum conclāmāsset gaudiō Albānus exercitus, Rōmānae legiōnēs sine spē iam in ūnum oculōs convertēre quem trēs Cūriātiī circumsteterant. Forte is integer fuit et ferōx, sed ūniversīs sōlus nēquīquam pār. Itaque fugam simulāvit ut singulōs intervallīs brevibus secūtūrōs adgrederētur. Iam aliquantum spatī ex eō locō ubi pugnātum est aufūgerat, cum respiciēns videt ūnum haud procul ab sēsē abesse. In[4] eum magnō impetū rediit et dum[5] Albānus exercitus inclāmat Cūriātiīs utī opem ferant frātrī, iam Horātius caesō hoste victor secundam pugnam petēbat. Tum clāmōre faventium[6] adiūtus, priusquam tertius cōnsequī posset, et[7] alterum Cūriātium interficit. Iamque singulī[8] supererant, sed nec spē[9] nec vīribus parēs. Alter integer est et geminātā victōriā[10] ferōx, alter volnere et cursū cōnfectus est. Nec illud proelium fuit. Rōmānus

[1] *by the cheers of* (*those*) *encouraging* (foot-note 1, p. 98) *them.*
[2] *into the middle between* = *to a point halfway between.* [3] 420, n. 1.
[4] *upon.* [5] 415, 1. [6] Cf. 1. [7] *also* or *even.*
[8] **singulī** = *one on each side.* [9] 158. [10] 141.

exsultāns illum male sustinentem arma necat et iacentem spoliat. Rōmānī ovantēs ac grātulantēs Horātium accipiunt. Ita exercitūs inde domōs abductī sunt. Prīnceps Horātius ībat trigemina spolia prae sē gerēns.

3. Treachery of Fufetius in the War against Fidenae

Nōn diū pāx Albāna mānsit. Nam Mettius Fufetius, dux Albānus, ā suō populō culpābātur quod tribus mīlitibus fortūna pūblica commissa esset. Itaque, ut animōs volgī conciliāret, causam bellī quaerēbat. Hōc per prōditiōnem effēcit. Fīdēnātēs, colōniam Rōmānam, concitāvit ut arma contrā Rōmānōs caperent et cum Vēientibus, quī Rōmānōrum hostēs erant, sē coniungerent, pollicitus cum cōpiīs suīs eōs esse adiūtūrum. Cum Fīdēnae apertē dēfēcissent, Tullus contrā hostīs exercitum dūcit. Fufetius per speciem societātis cōpiās suās cum Rōmānīs conjungit. Mettiō[1] nōn multum animī[2] erat. Ergō nec manēre cum Tullō ausus est nec trānsīre apertē ad Fīdēnātēs. Cōnsilium erat fortūnam pugnae spectāre, et utrī vīcissent iīs addere sē socium. Dum dubitat, sinistrum cornū cui praeerat inclīnāre coepit. Inde Tullus in trepidā rē[3] spē simulātā clārā vōce equitēs redīre ad proelium iubet. Terror ad hostīs trānsiit nec illī tulēre impetum. Nōn alia ante Rōmāna pugna atrōcior fuit. Posterō diē Fufetius atrōcissimō suppliciō interfectus est et Alba propter prōditiōnem ducis penitus dēlēta est.

4. Growth of the City and Death of Tullus

Rōma interim crēscit Albae ruīnīs;[4] duplicātur cīvium numerus. Prīncipēs Albānōrum in patrēs,[5] ut ea quoque pars reī pūblicae crēsceret, lēgit, cūriamque fēcit quae Hostīlia appellāta est. Et, ut omnium ōrdinum vīribus aliquid ex novō populō adicerētur, equitum turmās ex Albānīs lēgit.

[1] 93. [2] *force of character, will, decision.*
[3] *in the critical situation.* [4] 141. [5] *senators.*

Hāc fidūciā vīrium Tullus Sabīnīs[1] bellum indīxit. Cum bellum utrimque summā ope parārent, Tullus prior in agrum Sabīnum trānsiit. Pugna ferōx fuit, ubi[2] equitātū auctō nūper plūrimum[3] Rōmāna aciēs valuit. Victīs Sabīnīs, cum in magnā glōriā rēgnum Tullī ac tōta rēs Rōmāna esset, nūntiātum rēgī patribusque est in monte Albānō lapidibus[4] pluisse. Ab hōc prōdigiō novemdiāle sacrum pūblicē susceptum est. Haud ita multō[5] post pestilentiā labōrātum est.[6] Unde[7] cum pigritia mīlitandī orerētur,[8] nūlla tamen ab armīs quiēs dabātur ā bellicō rēge, quī salūbriōra crēdēbat mīlitiae[9] quam domī[9] iuvenum corpora esse, dōnec ipse quoque longinquō morbō est implicitus. Tum ita fractī sunt spīritūs illī ferōcēs ut animum sacrīs atque omnibus magnīs parvīsque superstitiōnibus dēderet. Trāditur rēgem īrā Iovis īctum fulmine cum domō cōnflagrāsse. Tullus magnā glōriā bellī rēgnāvit annōs duōs et trīgintā.

REIGN OF ANCUS MARCIUS, B. C. 640-616

448. Tullō mortuō, Numae nepōtem Ancum Mārcium rēgem populus creāvit. Ancus cupidus otī[10] erat et avī mōrēs atque īnstitūta restituere parābat. Tum Latīnī, quibuscum, Tullō rēgnante, īctum foedus erat, sustulērunt animōs et incursiōnem in agrum Rōmānum fēcērunt. Ancus, priusquam eīs bellum indīceret, lēgātum mīsit, quī rēs repeteret. Lēgātus, ubi ad fīnīs eōrum vēnit, unde[11] rēs repetuntur, capite vēlātō, ait: "Audī, Iuppiter; audīte, fīnēs huius populī. Ego sum pūblicus nūntius populī Rōmānī; verbīs meīs fidēs sit."[12] Inde lēgātus, quī fētiālis appellātur,

[1] 341. [2] *when = in which.* [3] 386.
[4] 48. [5] *not so very long afterwards* (180).
[6] *there was suffering from* (371, *b*) = *the people were afflicted with.*
[7] *whence although = and although from this* (420, n. 1). [8] 279.
[9] 354, 1. [10] 390. [11] *whence* (420, n. 5) = *from whom.* [12] 397.

peragit postulāta. Sī nōn dēduntur[1] rēs, quās exposcit, hastam sanguineam in fīnīs hostium ēmittit. Hōc modō bellum indictum est, mōremque eum posterī accēpērunt.

Lēgātō rēs repetentī Latīnī superbē respondērunt. Itaque bellum eīs indictum est. Ancus exercitū novō cōnscrīptō profectus urbem Latīnōrum vī cēpit, secūtusque mōrem rēgum priōrum, quī rem Rōmānam auxerant hostibus[2] in cīvitātem accipiendīs,[2] multitūdinem omnem Rōmam trādūxit. Urbī montem Aventīnum adiūnxit. Iāniculum quoque nōn sōlum mūrō[3] sed etiam ob commoditātem itineris ponte[3] Subliciō in Tiberim factō coniūnctum est. Nec urbs tantum hōc rēge[4] crēvit sed etiam ager fīnēsque. Rēgnāvit Ancus annōs quattuor et vīgintī, cuilibet[5] superiōrum[6] rēgum bellī pācisque et artibus[7] et glōriā pār.

REIGN OF TARQUINIUS PRISCUS, B. C. 616–578

449. Ancō rēgnante Lūcius Tarquinius cum coniuge et fortūnīs omnibus Rōmam migrāvit. Ad Iāniculum forte ventum erat.[8] Ibi eī,[9] ut trāditum est,[10] carpentō sedentī[11] cum uxōre aquila dēmissa pilleum aufert, superque carpentum cum magnō clangōre volitāns rūrsus capitī aptē repōnit, inde sublīmis abit. Accēpit id augurium laeta[12] uxor perīta prōdigiōrum,[13] et alta spērāre virum[14] iubet. Hās spēs cōgitātiōnēsque sēcum portantēs urbem ingressī sunt. Ibi benīgnitāte ac comitāte amīcitiam rēgis sibi conciliāvit et tūtor etiam līberīs rēgis īnstitūtus est. Itaque cum comitia[15] rēgī creandō fierent,[15] puerōs vēnātum[16] mīsit et scienter effēcit ut ipse cōnsēnsū populī rēx creārētur. Nec minus rēgnī[13] suī fīrmandī quam augendae reī[13] pūblicae memor

[1] 422. [2] 318, *b*; 319. [3] 48.
[4] *he being king* (334) = *while he was king*, or *during his reign*. [5] 402.
[6] *former*. [7] 158. [8] 371, *b*. [9] **eī** = *from him*.
[10] *as has been handed down* (371, *b*) = *according to tradition*.
[11] *while sitting* (409, 410) *in his chariot*.
[12] *joyful* = *joyfully*. [13] 390. [14] *husband*.
[15] *when assemblies were formed* = *when meetings were being held*. [16] 321.

centum in patrēs lēgit. Bellum prīmum cum Latīnīs gessit, praedāque[1] inde[2] magnā potītus, lūdōs fēcit. Tum prīmo circō, quī nunc maximus dīcitur, dēsignātus locus est; deinde annuī mānsēre lūdī. Bellō Sabīnō cōnfectō Tarquinius prīmus triumphāns Rōmam rediit. Maiōre inde animō pācis opera inchoāvit quam gesserat bella; nam mūrō lapideō urbem cingere parat, et īnfima urbis loca circā forum cloācīs siccat; et aedem Iovis in Capitōliō inchoāvit.

Eō tempore in rēgiā prōdigium vīsū[3] mīrābile fuit: puerō[4] dormientī, cui Serviō Tulliō fuit nōmen, caput[5] ārsit. Tum Tanaquil: "Scīre licet," inquit, "hunc[6] lūmen[7] quondam rēbus nostrīs adflictīs futūrum[8] praesidiumque: proinde eum omnī indulgentiā nūtriāmus." Inde puer omnibus artibus puerīlibus ērūditus est. Iuvenis ēvāsit vērē indolis rēgiae, nec,[9] cum quaererētur gener Tarquiniō, quisquam[9] Rōmānae iuventūtis ullā arte cōnferrī potuit; fīliam eī suam rēx in mātrimōnium dedit. Duodēquadrāgēnsimō fermē annō ex quō rēgnāre coeperat Tarquinius, nōn apud rēgem modo sed apud patrēs plēbemque maximō honōre[10] Servius Tullius erat. Tum Ancī fīliī duo, indignantēs quod patriō rēgnō tūtōris fraude pulsī essent, et veritī ut nē ab Tarquiniō quidem ad sē redīret rēgnum, rēgem in rēgiā occīdērunt. Clāmor inde subitō ortus est concursusque mīrantium[11] quid reī[12] esset. Tanaquil inter tumultum claudī rēgiam iubet. Cum clāmor impetusque multitūdinis vix sustinērī posset, ex superiōre parte aedium per fenestrās populum adloquitur. Iubet bonō animō[10] esse: sōpītum fuisse[13] rēgem subitō ictū; ferrum haud altē in corpus dēscendisse;[13] paucīs diēbus ipsum

[1] 366. [2] 420, n. 5. [3] 321, 2.
[4] *to the boy sleeping* = *while the boy lay asleep.* [5] *head* = *hair.*
[6] *this* (boy). [7] 85.
[8] **futūrum** (323, n. 2; and 306) *is about to be* = *is destined to be.*
[9] 402, 403, 2. [10] 392. [11] *of* (those) *wondering.*
[12] *what of action* (188) *there was* = *what was going on* or *what the matter was.*
[13] 306, with note.

rēgem esse vīsūrōs;[1] interim Servium Tullium rēgis mūnera obitūrum esse.[1] Servius cum lictōribus prōdit, ac sede rēgiā sedēns alia[2] dēcernit, dē aliīs[2] cōnsultūrum sē rēgem esse simulat. Itaque per aliquot diēs, cum iam exspīrāsset Tarquinius, cēlātā morte suās opēs fīrmāvit. Tum dēmum, cum complōrātiōne[3] in rēgiā ortā[4] mors patefacta esset, Servius voluntāte patrum rēgnāvit. Ancī līberī iam tum exsulātum[5] ierant.

REIGN OF SERVIUS TULLIUS, B. C. 578–534

450. Servius Tullius scienter ac bene imperium administrāvit. Nec iam pūblicīs magis cōnsiliīs quam prīvātīs sē mūnīvit. Peropportūnē Vēientibus bellum indictum est. In eō bellō et virtūs et fortūna ēnituit Tullī; fūsōque ingentī hostium exercitū summō cum honōre rediit, adgrediturque[6] inde ad pācis maximum opus. Cēnsum enim īnstituit, rem salūberrimam futūrō imperiō. Tum classīs centuriāsque ex cēnsū discrīpsit. Prīma classis dīvīsa est in seniōrēs quī urbem custōdīrent;[7] iuvenēs quī bella gererent. Mīlia LXXX cīvium cēnsa[8] dīcuntur. Ad[9] eam multitūdinem urbs quoque amplificanda erat. Addit duōs collīs, Quirīnālem Vīminālemque. Aggere et fossīs et mūrō circumdat urbem. Simul et aliquod addere urbī decus voluit. Iam tum erat inclitum Diānae fānum. Id commūniter ā cīvitātibus Asiae factum erat. Eum cōnsēnsum cīvitātum laudāvit Servius. Itaque populīs Latīnīs persuāsit ut et ipsī[10] Rōmae fānum Diānae cum populō Rōmānō facerent. Ea erat cōnfessiō caput rērum[11] Rōmam esse dē quō totiēns armīs certātum erat.[12]

Servius Tullius duās fīliās, alteram ferōcem, alteram

[1] 306, with note. [2] 201, *a*. [3] 334. [4] *having risen* (from **orior**). [5] 321, 1. [6] **adgreditur ad**, *turns to* or *begins*. [7] 336. [8] **cēnsa** (323, n. 2) = *to have been enrolled*. [9] **for** = *to accommodate*. [10] **et ipsī** = *they, too*. [11] *the head of affairs* = *the mistress of the world*. [12] 371, *b*.

mītem, habēbat. Duo quoque Tarquinī Prīscī fīliī longē disparēs mōribus erant. Forte accidit ut Tullia ferōx Tarquiniō mītī nūberet; Tullia mītis Tarquiniō ferōcī. Sed ferōx Tullia mītem virum mox dēspiciēbat et alterum Tarquinium mīrābātur. Ita Lūcius Tarquinius et Tullia minor, cum morte domōs vacuās novō mātrimōniō fēcissent, iunguntur nūptiīs. Statim Tarquinius, quī posteā Superbus appellātus est, ā Tulliā incitātus, convocātō senātū rēgnum petere coepit. Quā rē audītā, Servius ad cūriam properāvit. "Quid hōc," inquit, "Tarquinī,[1] reī[2] est? Quā tū audāciā mē vīvō[3] vocāre ausus es[4] patrēs?" Cum ille ferōciter respondisset, clāmor oritur et concursus populī fiēbat in cūriam. Tum Tarquinius vīribus validior arripit Servium, atque ē cūriā per[5] gradūs dēicit. Inde prope exsanguis fugiēns[6] interficitur. Tullia carpentō in forum invecta ēvocāvit virum ē cūriā, rēgemque prīma appellāvit. Ā quō iussa ex tantō tumultū discēdere cum domum redīret, is quī carpentum agēbat subitō restitit pavidus iacentemque[7] Servium trucīdātum ostendit. Foedum inhūmānumque inde trāditur scelus. Nam āmēns[8] Tullia per patris corpus carpentum ēgit. Servius Tullius rēgnāvit annōs quattuor et quadrāgintā.

REIGN OF TARQUINIUS SUPERBUS, B. C. 534–510

451. Ubi Tarquinius rēgnāre coepit, prīncipēs cīvitātis, quōs Serviō fāvisse crēdēbat, interfēcit et armātōs circum sē habēbat. Neque enim ad iūs rēgnī quicquam[9] praeter vim habēbat quod neque populī iussū neque auctōritāte patrum

[1] 44, *c.* [2] *what of business* (188) *is this? = what does this mean?*
[3] *me alive = while I am living* (334). [4] 487. [5] *down over.*
[6] *fleeing = attempting to flee.*
[7] **iacentem**, *lying* (dead) = *as he lay* (dead in the street).
[8] *out of her mind, frenzied, unnatural, cruel.*
[9] *For not anything for the right of the throne had he = he had no right to*, etc.

rēgnābat. Itaque, cum in voluntāte cīvium nihil speī repōnere posset, metū[1] rēgnum retinuit atque imperium sine cōnsiliō per sē sōlum exercēbat. Aliōs inimīcōs occīdit, aliōs in exsilium ēgit. Mōrem senātum cōnsulendī solvit; bellum, pācem, foedera, quibuscum voluit, fēcit. Latīnōrum sibi maximē gentem conciliābat, ut peregrīnīs quoque opibus[2] tūtior inter cīvīs esset; Mamiliō, prīncipī Latīnōrum, fīliam nūptum[3] dat. Iam magna Tarquinī auctōritās inter Latīnōs erat. Ita renovātum est id foedus, quō rēs omnis Albāna cum colōniīs suīs in Rōmānum cessit imperium.

Cum iniūstus esset in pāce rēx, tamen dux bellī audāx fuit; eā arte aequāsset[4] superiōrēs rēgēs, nisi dēgener in aliīs fuisset. Is prīmus Volscīs bellum intulit Pōmētiamque ex hīs vī cēpit. Captīvā praedā magnificum illum templum Iovis inchoāvit. Deinde Gabiōs, propinquam urbem, nēquīquam vī adortus, fraude ac dolō adgressus est. Nam, cum sē bellum pōnere[5] simulāret, Sextum fīlium Gabiōs mīsit. Sextus benīgnē ab Gabīnīs excipitur, quod patris superbiae vītandae causā sē vēnisse simulāvit. Ita Gabīnīs persuādet ut bellum contrā rēgem redintegret et efficit ut ipse dux bellī legātur. Tum sēcrētō nūntium Rōmam ad patrem mittit rogātum quid sē facere vellet. Rēx in hortum ambulāvit sequente nūntiō fīlī; ibi tacitus summa papāverum capita dīcitur baculō dēcussisse, neque ullam vōcem ēmisisse. Nūntius Gabiōs rediit et quid vīdisset nūntiāvit. Sextus, quid vellet parēns, intellēxit et multōs prīncipēs cīvitātis interfēcit. Eōrum bona inter multitūdinem dīvīsit. Itaque largītiōne populus conciliātus est dōnec orba cōnsiliō[6] auxiliōque Gabīna rēs rēgī Rōmānō sine ullā dīmicātiōne trāditur.

Inde ad negōtia urbāna mentem convertit. In perficiendō templō Iovis summā pecūniā[7] atque operīs plēbis ūsus est.

[1] *by fear = by inspiring fear.* [2] 141. [3] 321. [4] 424.
[5] *was laying aside = ending.* [6] 379. [7] 366.

Fabrōs ex Etrūriā arcessīvit. Forōs in circō fēcit cloācamque maximam, receptāculum omnium purgāmentōrum urbis sub terrā ēgit; quibus duōbus operibus[1] vix quicquam novum adaequāre potest. Rēx Rōmānus iam magnificentiā pūblicōrum operum exhauriēbātur, atque ut praedā[2] potīrētur Ardeam vī oppugnāvit. Hanc urbem dum oppugnat, negōtium[3] eī domī contrahitur. Nam eius fīlius Lucrētiae, coniugī Tarquinī Collātīnī, vim[4] fēcerat. Illa maesta[5] sē occīdit in cōnspectū virī patrisque, obtestāta eōs ut hanc iniūriam ulcīscerentur. Hanc ob causam et propter superbiam ipsīus rēgis L. Brūtus, Collātīnus, aliīque cum incēnsō populō ēgērunt[6] ut imperium rēgī[7] abrogāret, exsulēsque[8] esse iubēret L. Tarquinium cum coniuge ac līberīs. L. Tarquinius Superbus rēgnāvit annōs quīnque et vīgintī. Ita Rōmae septem rēgēs rēgnāvērunt annōs ducentōs quadrāgintā trēs. Duo cōnsulēs inde creātī sunt, L. Jūnius Brūtus et L. Tarquinius Collātīnus.

[1] 341. [2] 366. [3] *trouble is heaped upon him.*

[4] *had done violence to.* [5] *sad = in grief.*

[6] *acted with . . . so that = prevailed upon . . . to.*

[7] The dative after a verb meaning *take away* may often be translated by *from.*

[8] Plural because **Tarquinium cum coniuge** = *Tarquinius and his wife.*

EXTRACTS FROM OVID

SCANSION

THERE are many metres used by Latin poets. That of the extracts in this book is called Elegiac, and consists of two kinds of line; the longer is known as a **Hexameter** (*i. e.*, a *six* measure), the shorter as a **Pentameter** (*i. e.*, a *five* measure).

The groundwork of the line is the **foot**. A foot always begins with a heavy syllable (or, as it is usually called, a long syllable) on which the accent falls, and is followed either by one syllable of equal weight, or by two light, or short, syllables. If a foot consists of two heavy syllables, it is called a **spondee**, and is marked thus: *hōstēs;* if it consists of a heavy syllable followed by two light syllables, it is called a **dactyl**, thus: *mīlĭtĕ.*

A Hexameter consists of six of these feet. The last must be a spondee. The last but one must be a dactyl. The rest may be either spondees or dactyls:

Nŏn mĭhĭ | sĕrvō|rūm, cŏmĭ|tēs nōn | cūră lĕ|gēndī
1 2 3 4 5 6

A Pentameter consists of two and a half feet twice over:

Nŏn āp|tāē prŏfŭ|gŏ || vēstĭs ŏ|pīsvĕ fŭ|ĭt
1 2 ½ 3 4 ½

In the Pentameter the second half must consist of dactyls, and there must also be a sharp division between the two portions of the line.

Similarly, the Hexameter should have a sharp division (called a **Cæsura**) after the first syllable of the third foot.

Occasionally this is found after the second syllable when the third foot is a dactyl:

Tēlă vĭ|rīs ănĭ|mīquĕ || că|dūnt, glădĭ|īsquĕ rĕ|mōtīs
1 2 3 4 5 6

but in these cases there is also a cæsura in the fourth foot.

The Value of Syllables

As a rule, the ear will tell which syllables are heavy (or long) and which are light (or short). A few guiding rules may, however, be given.[1] A vowel before *two* consonants is almost always long, thus: *nŏvĭēns*. A vowel before *one* consonant is short unless it happen to be naturally long, thus in the line:

Sūrgĭt: hă|bēnt gĕmĭ|nī || vĭncŭlă | nūllă pĕ|dēs
1 2 ½ 3 4 ½

-ni is naturally long. In this line we may notice that *h* does not count, and therefore *habent* practically begins with a vowel.[2] A little practice will soon enable the beginner to detect the value of a syllable.

Elision

If a word ending in a vowel, a diphthong, or a syllable concluded by *m* (as, *hast*am) come before a word beginning with a vowel or *h*, the final syllable of the first word is *elided*, or cut off. Thus the line (from Vergil):

Omnia praecepi atque animo mecum ante peregi

must be read thus:

Ōmnĭă | prāēcēp' |ātqu' ănĭ|mō mēc' | āntĕ pĕr|ĕgī
1 2 3 4 5 6

[1] In the middle of a word each syllable has a fixed value: *e. g.*, ōra, dŏmĭnus, cŭpīdo. The last vowel of a word frequently is short or long according to circumstances.

[2] If **habent** began with a real consonant, the last syllable of **surgit** would be long, with the result that the line would not *scan*, *i. e.*, would not run smoothly.

SPRING

Tristia, III. 12, ll. 5–12.

Iam violam puerique legunt hilaresque puellae,
rustica quae nullo nata[1] serente[2] venit;
prataque pubescunt variorum flore colorum,
indocilique loquax gutture vernat[3] avis;
utque malae matris crimen deponat,[4] hirundo
sub trabibus cunas tectaque parva facit;
herbaque, quae latuit Cerealibus obruta sulcis,
exit et expandit molle cacumen humo.

HOW TO BAN A GHOST

Fasti, V. ll. 381–396.

Nox ubi iam media est somnoque silentia praebet,
et canis[5] et variae[6] conticuistis aves,[5]
ille memor veteris ritus timidusque deorum
surgit; habent gemini vincula[7] nulla pedes:
signaque dat, digitis medio cum pollice iunctis,[8]
occurrat[9] tacito ne levis umbra sibi.
cumque manus puras fontana perluit unda,
vertitur, et nigras accipit ante fabas,
aversusque iacit; sed dum iacit, 'haec ego mitto,
his,' inquit, 'redimo meque meosque fabis.'
hoc noviens dicit, nec respicit. umbra putatur
colligere, et nullo terga vidente sequi.
rursus aquam tangit, Temesaeaque concrepat aera,
et rogat, ut tectis exeat[10] umbra suis.
cum dixit noviens, 'manes exite paterni,'
respicit, et pure sacra peracta putat.

[1] **rustica nata**, in apposition to **quae**.
[2] **nullo serente** (333).
[3] *i. e.* begins its spring song.
[4] 272.
[5] Vocative.
[6] = *of varied note.*
[7] *i. e.*, shoes.
[8] *i. e.*, snaps his fingers to let the ghost know he is there.
[9] 273.
[10] 398 a.

THE FOUNDING OF ROME

I

Fasti, IV. ll. 735–752.

Iam luerat poenas frater Numitoris, et omne
pastorum gemino sub duce volgus erat.
contrahere[1] agrestes et moenia ponere[1] utrique
convenit. ambigitur, moenia ponat[2] uter.
'nil opus est,' dixit, 'certamine,' Romulus, 'ullo:
magna fides avium est, experiamur[3] aves.'
res placet: alter adit nemorosi saxa Palati:
alter Aventinum mane cacumen init.
sex Remus, hic volucres bis sex videt ordine: pacto
statur,[4] et arbitrium Romulus urbis habet.
apta dies legitur, qua moenia signet[5] aratro.
sacra Palis suberant; inde movetur opus.
fossa fit ad solidum,[6] fruges iaciuntur in ima[7]
et de vicino terra petita[8] solo.
fossa repletur humo, plenaeque imponitur ara,
et novus accenso fungitur[9] igne focus.
inde premens stivam designat moenia sulco;
alba iugum niveo cum bove vacca tulit.

II

Fasti, IV. ll. 753–760.

Vox fuit haec regis: 'condenti, Iuppiter, urbem,
et genitor Mavors, Vestaque mater, ades,[10]
quosque pium est adhibere deos, advertite cuncti:[11]
auspicibus vobis hoc mihi surgat[12] opus.

[1] Subject to **convenit**.
[2] 398.
[3] Subjunc. for imperat. = *let us try*.
[4] Impersonal = *they stand*.
[5] 335.
[6] *i. e.*, to the solid rock.
[7] Supply **fossa**.
[8] Supply **est**.
[9] 366.
[10] 341.
[11] = **o cuncti dei, quos . . . adhibere, advertite**.
[12] Subjunct. for imperat.

longa sit[1] huic aetas dominaeque[2] potentia terrae;[3]
sitque[1] sub hac oriens occiduusque dies.'
ille precabatur, tonitru dedit omina laevo
Iuppiter, et laevo fulmina missa polo.

III

Fasti, IV. ll. 761–774.

Augurio laeti iaciunt fundamina cives,
et novus exiguo tempore murus erat.
hoc Celer urget opus, quem Romulus ipse vocarat;[4]
'sint'[5] que, 'Celer, curae,' dixerat, 'ista tuae.
neve[6] quis aut muros, aut factam vomere fossam
transeat,[5] audentem[7] talia[8] dede neci.'
quod Remus ignorans, humiles contemnere muros
coepit, et, 'his populus,' dicere, 'tutus erit?'
nec mora, transiluit. rutro Celer occupat ausum,[9]
ille premit duram sanguinolentus humum.
haec ubi rex didicit, lacrimas introrsus obortas
devorat et clausum pectore volnus habet.
flere palam non vult[10] exemplaque fortia servat,
'sic' que 'meos muros transeat[5] hostis,' ait.

THE SABINE WOMEN PREVENT A BATTLE BETWEEN THEIR FATHERS AND THEIR HUSBANDS

Fasti, III. ll. 201–220.

("Stant acies: sed utra di[11] sint[12] pro parte rogandi,
eligite: hinc coniunx, hinc pater arma tenet.
quaerendum est, viduae fieri[13] malimus,[12] an orbae.[14]
consilium vobis forte piumque dabo.")

[1] Subjunct. for imperat. [2] Dat. in apposition to **huic**.
[3] Gen. after **dominae**. [4] = **vocaverat**.
[5] Subjunct. for imperat. [6] = **et nē quis** . . . = *and let no one.*
[7] Obj. to **dēde**. [8] Obj. to **audentem**.
[9] Has active meaning. [10] 481.
[11] Nom. plur. of **deus**. [12] 287. [13] 484.
[14] The order is: **(utrum) malimus fieri viduae an orbae.**

consilium dederat :[1] parent, crinesque resolvunt,
maestaque funerea corpora veste tegunt.
iam steterant acies ferro mortique[2] paratae ;
iam lituus pugnae signa daturus erat ;
cum raptae veniunt inter patresque virosque,
inque sinu natos, pignora cara, tenent.
ut medium campi scissis tetigere[3] capillis,
in terram posito procubuere[4] genu ;
et, quasi sentirent, blando clamore nepotes
tendebant ad avos bracchia parva suos.
qui poterat, clamabat avum, tunc denique visum ;
et qui vix poterat, posse coactus[5] erat.
tela viris animique cadunt, gladiisque remotis
dant soceri generis accipiuntque manus ;
laudatasque tenent natas, scutoque nepotem
fert avus : hic scuti dulcior usus erat.

TARQUINIUS AND SEXTUS

Fasti II. ll. 545–552.

Hortus odoratis suberat cultissimus herbis,
sectus humum rivo lene[6] sonantis aquae.
illic Tarquinius mandata latentia nati
accipit, et virga lilia summa metit.
nuntius ut rediit, decussaque lilia dixit,
filius, 'agnosco iussa parentis,' ait.
nec mora ; principibus caesis ex urbe Gabina,
traduntur ducibus moenia nuda suis.

THE SIEGE OF ROME: JUPITER'S ADVICE

Fasti, VI. ll. 317–326.

Iam ducibus somnum dederat[7] labor : increpat illos
Iuppiter et sacro, quid velit,[8] ore docet :

[1] Subject, *she* ; the speaker is the wife of Romulus.
[2] 264.
[3] = **tetigērunt**, from **tangō**.
[4] = **prōcubuērunt** : add **se**.
[5] From **cōgō**.
[6] Adj. used as adverb.
[7] From **dō, dare**.
[8] 398.

'surgite, et in medios de summis arcibus hostes
mittite, quam minime perdere vultis, opem.'
somnus abit, quaeruntque novis ambagibus acti,
perdere quam nolint [1] et iubeantur [1] opem.
esse Ceres visa est. iaciunt Cerealia dona,
iacta super galeas scutaque longa sonant.
posse fame vinci [2] spes excidit : hoste repulso
candida Pistori ponitur ara Iovi.

THEN, AND NOW

Fasti, I. ll. 197–212.

Pluris [3] opes nunc sunt, quam prisci temporis annis,
dum populus pauper, dum nova Roma fuit,
dum casa Martigenam capiebat parva Quirinum,
et dabat exiguum fluminis ulva torum.
Iuppiter angusta vix totus stabat in aede,
inque Iovis dextra fictile fulmen erat.
frondibus ornabant, quae nunc Capitolia gemmis ; [4]
pascebatque suas ipse senator oves :
nec pudor [5] in stipula placidam cepisse quietem,
et faenum capiti supposuisse fuit.
iura dabat populis posito modo praetor aratro,
et levis argenti lamina crimen erat.
at postquam fortuna loci caput extulit [6] huius,
et tetigit [7] summo vertice Roma deos,
creverunt [8] et opes et opum furiosa cupido,
et, cum possideant [9] plurima, plura petunt.

[1] 398.
[2] **eos posse famē vinci**, in apposition to **spes**.
[3] = *of more* (*account*).
[4] Order is : **ornabant frondibus Capitolia, quae nunc (ornant) gemmis.**
[5] Supply **fuit.**
[6] From **ex(ef)-ferō.**
[7] From **tangō.**
[8] From **crescō.**
[9] 279.

SCREECH OWLS

Fasti, VI. ll. 111–122.

Sunt avidae volucres; non quae[1] Phineïa mensis
guttura fraudabant, sed genus inde trahunt.
grande caput, stantes oculi, rostra apta rapinae;[2]
canities pennis, unguibus hamus inest.
nocte volant, puerosque petunt nutricis[3] egentes,
et vitiant cunis corpora rapta suis.
carpere dicuntur lactentia viscera[4] rostris,
et plenum poto sanguine guttur habent.
est illis strigibus nomen; sed nominis huius
causa, quod horrendum[5] stridere nocte solent.
sive igitur nascuntur aves, seu carmine fiunt,
naeniaque in volucres falsa figurat anus.

THE MISCHIEVOUS BOY OF CARSEOLUM

Fasti, IV. ll. 623–642.

'Hoc' ait 'in campo'— campumque ostendit — 'habebat
rus[6] breve cum duro parca colona viro.
ille suam peragebat humum, sive usus aratri,
seu curvae falcis, sive bidentis erat.
haec modo verrebat stantem tibicine[7] villam,
nunc matris plumis ova fovenda dabat;
aut virides malvas, aut fungos colligit albos,
aut humilem grato calfacit igne focum.
et tamen assiduis exercet bracchia telis,
adversusque minas frigoris arma parat.
filius huius erat primo lascivus in aevo,
addideratque annos ad duo lustra duos.

[1] = *not those which* . . . (*i. e.*, Harpies, that snatched the food from the mouth of Phineus).
[2] 264. [3] 389. [4] = viscera eorum qui lactent.
[5] Adj. used as adverb. [6] = farm. [7] Sing. for plur.

is capit extremi vulpem convalle salicti ;
abstulerat [1] multas illa cohortis [2] aves.
captivam stipula faenoque involvit, et ignes
admovet ; urentes effugit illa manus.
qua fugit, incendit vestitos messibus agros ;
damnosis vires ignibus aura dabat.
factum abiit, monimenta manent ; nam vivere captam
nunc quoque lex vulpem Carseolana vetat.'

ON THE EVE OF EXILE

Tristia, I. 3, ll. 1–26.

Cum subit illius tristissima noctis imago,
qua mihi supremum tempus in Urbe fuit,
cum repeto noctem, qua tot mihi cara reliqui,
labitur ex oculis nunc quoque gutta meis.
iam prope lux aderat, qua me discedere Caesar
finibus extremae iusserat Ausoniae.
nec spatium fuerat, nec mens satis apta [3] parandi ; [4]
torpuerant longa pectora nostra mora.
non mihi servorum,[5] comites [6] non cura legendi,[5]
non aptae profugo vestis opisve fuit.
non aliter stupui, quam qui Iovis ignibus ictus
vivit et est vitae nescius ipse suae.
ut tamen hanc animi nubem dolor ipse removit,
et tandem sensus convaluere [7] mei,
alloquor extremum[8] maestos abiturus amicos
qui modo de multis unus et alter erant.
uxor amans flentem flens acrius ipsa tenebat,
imbre per indignas usque cadente genas.
nata procul Libycis aberat diversa sub oris,
nec poterat fati certior esse mei.

[1] From **au** (**abs**)-**ferō**.
[2] *i. e.*, the farmyard.
[3] Obj. to **parandi**.
[4] After **spatium** and **mens**.
[5] After **cura**.
[6] Obj. to **legendi**.
[7] = **convaluērunt**.
[8] **adverb**.

quocumque aspiceres, luctus gemitusque sonabant,
formaque non taciti funeris intus erat.
femina virque meo, pueri quoque, funere maerent,
inque domo lacrimas angulus omnis habet:
si licet exemplis[1] in parvis grandibus[1] uti,
haec facies Troiae, cum caperetur, erat.

OVID'S PLACE OF BANISHMENT

Tristia, III. 10, ll. 5–24.

Sauromatae cingunt, fera gens, Bessique Getaeque,
quam non ingenio[2] nomina[3] digna meo!
dum tamen aura tepet, medio defendimur Histro:
ille suis liquidus bella repellit aquis.
at cum tristis hiems squalentia protulit ora,
terraque marmoreo est candida facta gelu,
dum parat et Boreas et nix habitare sub Arcto
tum patet has gentes axe tremente premi.
nix iacet, et iactam ne sol pluviaeque resolvant[4]
indurat Boreas perpetuamque facit.
ergo ubi delicuit[5] nondum prior, altera venit,
et solet in multis bima manere locis.
tantaque commoti vis est Aquilonis, ut altas
aequet humo turres tectaque rapta ferat.[6]
pellibus et sutis arcent mala frigora braccis,
oraque de toto corpore sola patent.
saepe sonant moti glacie pendente capilli,
et nitet inducto candida barba gelu;
nudaque consistunt, formam servantia testae,
vina, nec hausta meri, sed data[7] frusta bibunt.

[1] 366. [2] Abl. after **dignus**.
[3] The order is: **nōmina quam non digna ingenio meo.**
[4] 272. [5] From **dēliquescō**.
[6] 280. [7] *i. e.*, handed to them.

ULYSSES WAS MORE FORTUNATE THAN OVID

Tristia, I. 5, ll. 59–72.

Ille brevi spatio[1] multis erravit in annis
inter Dulichias Iliacasque domos:
nos freta sideribus totis distantia[2] mensos[3]
sors tulit[4] in Geticos Sarmaticosque sinus.
ille habuit fidamque manum sociosque fideles;
me profugum comites deseruere[5] mei.
ille suam laetus patriam victorque petebat;
a patria fugi victus et exul ego.
nec mihi Dulichium domus est Ithaceve Samosve,
poena quibus non est grandis abesse locis:[6,7]
sed quae de septem totum circumspicit orbem
montibus,[8] imperii Roma[9] deumque[10] locus.
illi corpus erat durum patiensque laborum;[11]
invalidae vires ingenuaeque mihi.

A STORM

Tristia, I. 2, ll. 19–34.

Me miserum, quanti montes volvuntur aquārum!
iam iam tacturos sidera summa[12] putes.
quantae diducto subsidunt aequore valles!
iam iam tacturas Tartara nigra putes.
quocumque aspicio, nihil est nisi pontus et aër,
fluctibus hic tumidus, nubibus ille minax.
inter utrumque[13] fremunt immani murmure venti:
nescit, cui domino[14] pareat,[15] unda maris.

[1] = within a narrow compass. [2] *i. e.*, whole constellations apart.
[3] From **mētior.** [4] 483. [5] 98. [6] 379.
[7] The order is: **abesse quibus locis non est grandis poena.**
[8] With **de septem.**
[9] The order is: **sed Roma, quae . . . montibus, locus, etc.**
[10] = **deōrumque.** [11] 390.
[12] Obj. to **tacturos** = *the stars on high.* [13] From **uterque**
[14] 360. [15] 287.

nam modo purpureo vires capit Eurus ab ortu,
nunc Zephyrus sero vespere missus adest,
nunc sicca gelidus Boreas bacchatur ab Arcto,
nunc Notus adversa proelia fronte gerit.
rector in incerto est, nec quid fugiatve[1] petatve[1]
invenit : ambiguis ars stupet ipsa malis.
scilicet occidimus, nec spes est ulla salutis,
dumque loquor, voltus obruit unda meos.

SILENUS AND THE HONEY

Fasti, III. ll. 703-718.

Ut satyri levisque senex tetigere[2] saporem,
quaerebant flavos per nemus omne favos.
audit in exesa stridorem examinis ulmo,
aspicit et ceras dissimulatque senex;
utque piger pandi tergo residebat aselli,
applicat hunc ulmo corticibusque cavis.
constitit[3] ipse super ramoso stipite nixus,[4]
atque avide trunco condita mella petit.
milia crabronum coëunt, et vertice nudo
spicula defigunt, oraque summa notant.
ille cadit praeceps et calce feritur aselli,
inclamatque suos, auxiliumque rogat.
concurrunt satyri, turgentiaque ora parentis
rident : percusso[5] claudicat ille genu.
ridet et ipse deus,[6] limumque inducere monstrat ;[7]
hic paret monitis[8] et linit ora luto.

[1] 287.
[2] = **tetigērunt**, from **tangō** ; 98.
[3] From **con-sistō**.
[4] From **nītor**.
[5] From **per-cutiō**.
[6] *i. e.*, Bacchus.
[7] **monstrat** + infin. = *shows him* (*how*) *to*.
[8] 360.

HERCULES AND CACUS

Fasti, I. ll. 497–528.

Mane erat: excussus[1] somno Tirynthius hospes
de numero tauros sensit abesse duos.
nulla videt quaerens taciti vestigia furti:
traxerat aversos Cacus in antra feros:
Cacus, Aventinae timor atque infamia silvae,
non leve finitimis hospitibusque malum.
dira viro facies,[2] vires pro corpore, corpus
grande: pater monstri Mulciber huius erat:
proque domo longis spelunca[2] recessibus ingens
abdita, vix ipsis invenienda feris.[3]
ora super postes affixaque bracchia pendent,
squalidaque humanis ossibus albet humus.
servata male[4] parte boum Iove natus[5] abibas;
mugitum rauco furta dedere[6] sono.
'accipio revocamen,' ait, vocemque secutus
impia per silvas victor ad antra venit.
ille aditum fracti praestruxerat obiice montis;
vix iuga movissent[7] quinque bis illud opus.
nititur hic umeris,—caelum quoque sederat illis,—
et vastum motu collabefactat onus.
quod simul evolsum[8] est, fragor aethera terruit ipsum,
ictaque subsedit pondere molis humus.
prima movet Cacus collata[9] proelia dextra,
remque ferox saxis stipitibusque gerit.
quis[10] ubi nil agitur, patrias male fortis[11] ad artes
confugit, et flammas ore sonante vomit.

[1] From **ex-cutiō**.
[2] Supply **erat**.
[3] 313.
[4] Adv. with **servata**.
[5] *thou (who wast) born from Jupiter; i. e.*, Hercules.
[6] Perf. of **dō, dare**; 98.
[7] 424 b.
[8] From **e-vellō**.
[9] 483.
[10] = **quibus**.
[11] With **fortis**, like **male**—**servata** above.

quas quotiens proflat, spirare Typhoëa credas,[1]
et rapidum Aetnaeo fulgur ab igne iaci.
occupat Alcides, adductaque clava trinodis
ter quater adversi sedit[2] in ore viri.
ille cadit, mixtosque vomit cum sanguine fumos,
et lato moriens pectore plangit humum.

[1] 423, 2, a. [2] *i. e.*, fell, was delivered.

APPENDIX

TABLES OF DECLENSIONS, CONJUGATIONS, ETC.

NOUNS

452. NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION

Stem in **-ā-**

	Singular	Terminations	Plural	Terminations
Nom.	puella	-a	puellae	-ae
Acc.	puellam	-am	puellās	-ās
Gen.	puellae	-ae	puellārum	-ārum
Dat.	puellae	-ae	puellīs	-īs
Abl.	puellā	-ā	puellīs	-īs

453. NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION

Stem in **-o-**

			Singular		Terminations Mas.	Neu.
Nom.	servus	fīlius	bellum	cōnsilium	-us	-um
Acc.	servum	fīlium	bellum	cōnsilium	-um	-um
Gen.	servī	fīlii	bellī	cōnsilii	-ī	-ī
Dat.	servō	fīliō	bellō	cōnsiliō	-ō	-ō
Abl.	servō	fīliō	bellō	cōnsiliō	-ō	-ō
			Plural			
Nom.	servī	fīlī	bella	cōnsilia	-ī	-a
Acc.	servōs	fīliōs	bella	cōnsilia	-ōs	-a
Gen.	servōrum	fīliōrum	bellōrum	cōnsiliōrum	-ōrum	-ōrum
Dat.	servīs	fīliīs	bellīs	cōnsiliīs	-īs	-īs
Abl.	servīs	fīliīs	bellīs	cōnsiliīs	-īs	-īs

a. The vocative singular of **servus** is **serve**; of **fīlius** is **fīlī**.

Nouns in -er and -ir

		Singular		Terminations
Nom.	puer	ager	vir	—
Acc.	puerum	agrum	virum	-um
Gen.	puerī	agrī	virī	-ī
Dat.	puerō	agrō	virō	-ō
Abl.	puerō	agrō	virō	-ō
		Plural		
Nom.	puerī	agrī	virī	-ī
Acc.	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	-ōs
Gen.	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	-ōrum
Dat.	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	-īs
Abl.	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	-īs

454. NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

a. Consonant Stems: Mutes

					Terminations	
		Singular			M. and F.	Neu.
Nom.	rēx	mīles	prīnceps	caput	-s or —	—
Acc.	rēgem	mīlitem	prīncipem	caput	-em	—
Gen.	rēgis	mīlitis	prīncipis	capitis	-is	-is
Dat.	rēgī	mīlitī	prīncipī	capitī	-ī	-ī
Abl.	rēge	mīlite	prīncipe	capite	-e	-e
		Plural				
Nom.	rēgēs	mīlitēs	prīncipēs	capita	-ēs	-a
Acc.	rēgēs	mīlitēs	prīncipēs	capita	-ēs	-a
Gen.	rēgum	mīlitum	prīncipum	capitum	-um	-um
Dat.	rēgibus	mīlitibus	prīncipibus	capitibus	-ibus	-ibus
Abl.	rēgibus	mīlitibus	prīncipibus	capitibus	-ibus	-ibus

b. Liquid Stems

	Singular			
Nom.	cōnsul	legiō	homō	pater
Acc.	cōnsulem	legiōnem	hominem	patrem
Gen.	cōnsulis	legiōnis	hominis	patris
Dat.	cōnsulī	legiōnī	hominī	patrī
Abl.	cōnsule	legiōne	homine	patre

PLURAL

Nom.	cōnsulēs	legiōnēs	hominēs	patrēs
Acc.	cōnsulēs	legiōnēs	hominēs	patrēs
Gen.	cōnsulum	legiōnum	hominum	patrum
Dat.	cōnsulibus	legiōnibus	hominibus	patribus
Abl.	cōnsulibus	legiōnibus	hominibus	patribus

Neuters

SINGULAR

Nom.	nōmen	genus	corpus	iter
Acc.	nōmen	genus	corpus	iter
Gen.	nōminis	generis	corporis	itineris
Dat.	nōminī	generī	corporī	itinerī
Abl.	nōmine	genere	corpore	itinere

PLURAL

Nom.	nōmina	genera	corpora	itinera
Acc.	nōmina	genera	corpora	itinera
Gen.	nōminum	generum	corporum	itinerum
Dat.	nōminibus	generibus	corporibus	itineribus
Abl.	nōminibus	generibus	corporibus	itineribus

c. **i-Stems**

	SINGULAR				TERMINATIONS M. AND F.
Nom.	hostis	turris	vīs	imber	-is
Acc.	hostem	turrim, -em	vim	imbrem	-em, -im
Gen.	hostis	turris	vīs	imbris	-is
Dat.	hostī	turrī	vī	imbrī	-ī
Abl.	hoste	turrī, -e	vī	imbrī, -e	-ī, -e

PLURAL

Nom.	hostēs	turrēs	vīrēs	imbrēs	-ēs
Acc.	hostīs, -ēs	turrīs, -ēs	vīrīs, -ēs	imbrīs, -ēs	-īs, -ēs
Gen.	hostium	turrium	vīrium	imbrium	-ium
Dat.	hostibus	turribus	vīribus	imbribus	-ibus
Abl.	hostibus	turribus	vīribus	imbribus	-ibus

Avis, **cīvis**, **fīnis**, **nāvis**, often have **-ī** in the ablative singular.

Neuters

		Singular		Terminations Neu.
Nom.	mare	animal	calcar	—
Acc.	mare	animal	calcar	—
Gen.	maris	animālis	calcāris	-is
Dat.	marī	animālī	calcārī	-ī
Abl.	marī	animālī	calcārī	-ī
		Plural		
Nom.	maria	animālia	calcāria	-ia
Acc.	maria	animālia	calcāria	-ia
Gen.	marium[1]	animālium	calcārium	-ium
Dat.	maribus	animālibus	calcāribus	-ibus
Abl.	maribus	animālibus	calcāribus	-ibus

d. Mixed **i**-Stems

	Singular			
Nom.	caedēs	arx	cliēns	cīvitās
Acc.	caedem	arcem	clientem	cīvitātem
Gen.	caedis	arcis	clientis	cīvitātis
Dat.	caedī	arcī	clientī	cīvitātī
Abl.	caede	arce	cliente	cīvitāte
	Plural			
Nom.	caedēs	arcēs	clientēs	cīvitātēs
Acc.	caedīs, -ēs	arcīs, -ēs	clientīs, -ēs	cīvitātīs, -ēs
Gen.	caedium	arcium	clientium	cīvitātum (-ium)
Dat.	caedibus	arcibus	clientibus	cīvitātibus
Abl.	caedibus	arcibus	clientibus	cīvitātibus

455. NOUNS OF THE FOURTH DECLENSION

Stem in **-u-**

		Singular		Terminations M. and F.	Neu.
Nom.	manus	lacus	cornū	-us	-ū
Acc.	manum	lacum	cornū	-um	-ū
Gen.	manūs	lacūs	cornūs	-us	-ūs
Dat.	manuī	lacuī	cornū	-uī	-ū
Abl.	manū	lacū	cornū	-ū	-ū

[1] The genitive plural of **mare** is once written **marum**.

			Plural	Terminations M. and F.	Neu.
Nom.	manūs	lacūs	cornua	-ūs	-ua
Acc.	manūs	lacūs	cornua	-ūs	-ua
Gen.	manuum	lacuum	cornuum	-uum	-uum
Dat.	manibŭs	lacubus	cornibus	-ibus (-ubus)	-ibus
Abl.	manibus	lacubus	cornibus	-ibus (-ubus)	-ibus

456. NOUNS OF THE FIFTH DECLENSION

Stem in **-ē-**

		Singular		Terminations
Nom.	diēs	rēs	planitiēs	-ēs
Acc.	diem	rem	planitiem	-em
Gen.	diēī	reī	planitiēī	-eī, -ēī
Dat.	diēī	reī	planitiēī	-eī, -ēī
Abl.	diē	rē	planitiē	-ē
		Plural		
Nom.	diēs	rēs		-ēs
Acc.	diēs	rēs		-ēs
Gen.	diērum	rērum		-ērum
Dat.	diēbus	rēbus		-ēbus
Abl.	diēbus	rēbus		-ēbus

457. Special Paradigms

	Singular		
Nom.	deus	domus	Iuppiter
Acc.	deum	domum	Iovem
Gen.	deī	domūs, domī	Iovis
Dat.	deō	domuī, domō	Iovī
Abl.	deō	domō, domū	Iove
	Plural		
Nom.	deī (diī), dī	domūs	
Acc.	deōs	domōs, domūs	
Gen.	deŏrum, deum	domuum (domōrum)	
Dat.	deīs (diīs), dīs	domibus	
Abl.	deīs (diīs), dīs	domibus	

458. ADJECTIVES

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

	Singular		
	Mas.	Fem.	Neu.
Nom.	bonus	bona	bonum
Acc.	bonum	bonam	bonum
Gen.	bonī	bonae	bonī
Dat.	bonō	bonae	bonō
Abl.	bonō	bonā	bonō
	Plural		
Nom.	bonī	bonae	bona
Acc.	bonōs	bonās	bona
Gen.	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
Dat.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
Abl.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

	Mas.	Fem.	Neu.	Mas.	Fem.	Neu.
Nom.	miser	misera	miserum	aeger	aegra	aegrum
Acc.	miserum	miseram	miserum	aegrum	aegram	aegrum
	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.

459. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

	Singular			
	Mas. and Fem.	Neu.	Mas. and Fem.	Neu.
Nom.	prūdēns	prūdēns	audāx	audāx
Acc.	prūdentem	prūdēns	audācem	audāx
Gen.	prūdentis	prūdentis	audācis	audācis
Dat.	prūdentī	prūdentī	audācī	audācī
Abl.	prūdentī	prūdentī	audācī	audācī
	Plural			
Nom.	prūdentēs	prūdentia	audācēs	audācia
Acc.	prūdentēs, -īs	prūdentia	audācēs, -īs	audācia
Gen.	prūdentium	prūdentium	audācium	audācium
Dat.	prūdentibus	prūdentibus	audācibus	audācibus
Abl.	prūdentibus	prūdentibus	audācibus	audācibus

	Singular			
	Mas. and Fem.	Neu.	Mas. and Fem.	Neu.
Nom.	vetus	vetus	omnis	omne
Acc.	veterem	vetus	omnem	omne
Gen.	veteris	veteris	omnis	omnis
Dat.	veterī	veterī	omnī	omnī
Abl.	vetere	vetere	omnī	omnī
	Plural			
Nom.	veterēs	vetera	omnēs	omnia
Acc.	veterēs	vetera	omnēs, -īs	omnia
Gen.	veterum	veterum	omnium	omnium
Dat.	veteribus	veteribus	omnibus	omnibus
Abl.	veteribus	veteribus	omnibus	omnibus

	Singular		
	Mas.	Fem.	Neu.
Nom.	ācer	ācris	ācre
Acc.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre
Gen.	ācris	ācris	ācris
Dat.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
Abl.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
	Plural		
Nom.	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Acc.	ācrīs, -ēs	ācrīs, -ēs	ācria
Gen.	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
Dat.	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Abl.	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

460. PRESENT ACTIVE PARTICIPLE

	Singular			
	Mas. and Fem.	Neu.	Mas. and Fem.	Neu.
Nom.	laudāns	laudāns	iēns	iēns
Acc.	laudantem	laudāns	euntem	iēns
Gen.	laudantis	laudantis	euntis	euntis
Dat.	laudantī	laudantī	euntī	euntī
Abl.	laudante	laudante	eunte	eunte

	Plural			
Nom.	laudantēs	laudantia	euntēs	euntia
Acc.	laudantīs, -ēs	laudantia	euntīs, -ēs	euntia
Gen.	laudantium	laudantium	euntium	euntium
Dat.	laudantibus	laudantibus	euntibus	euntibus
Abl.	laudantibus	laudantibus	euntibus	euntibus

461. IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

	Singular					
	Mas.	Fem.	Neu.	Mas.	Fem.	Neu.
Nom.	alius	alia	aliud	neuter	neutra	neutrum
Acc.	alium	aliam	aliud	neutrum	neutram	neutrum
Gen.	alīus	alīus	alīus	neutrīus	neutrīus	neutrīus
Dat.	aliī	aliī	aliī	neutrī	neutrī	neutrī
Abl.	aliō	aliā	aliō	neutrō	neutrā	neutrō

Plural is regular like **bonus** (458).

Plural is regular.

	Mas.	Fem.	Neu.	Mas. and Fem.	Neu
Nom.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	trēs	tria
Acc.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	trēs, -īs	tria
Gen.	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus	trium	trium
Dat.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	tribus	tribus
Abl.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	tribus	tribus

	Mas.	Fem.	Neu.	Singular	Plural
Nom.	duo	duae	duo	mīlle	mīlia
Acc.	duōs, duo	duās	duo	mīlle	mīlia
Gen.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	mīlle	mīlium
Dat.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	mīlle	mīlibus
Abl.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	mīlle	mīlibus

462. DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

	Singular			
	Mas. and Fem.	Neu.	Mas. and Fem.	Neu.
Nom.	altior	altius	——	plūs
Acc.	altiōrem	altius	——	plūs
Gen.	altiōris	altiōris	——	plūris
Dat.	altiōrī	altiōrī	——	——
Abl.	altiōre	altiōre	——	plūre

	Plural			
Nom.	altiōrēs	altiōra	plūrēs	plūra
Acc.	altiōrēs, -īs	altiōra	plūrēs, -īs	plūra
Gen.	altiōrum	altiōrum	plūrium	plūrium
Dat.	altiōribus	altiōribus	plūribus	plūribus
Abl.	altiōribus	altiōribus	plūribus	plūribus

463. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
altus	altior	altissimus
fortis	fortior	fortissimus
audāx	audācior	audācissimus
potēns	potentior	potentissimus
miser	miserior	miserrimus
aeger	aegrior	aegerrimus
ācer	ācrior	ācerrimus
facilis	facilior	facillimus
difficilis	difficilior	difficillimus
similis	similior	simillimus
dissimilis	dissimilior	dissimillimus
gracilis	gracilior	gracillimus
humilis	humilior	humillimus

464.

a. **Irregular Comparison**

bonus, *good*	melior, *better*	optimus, *best*
malus, *bad*	peior, *worse*	pessimus, *worst*
magnus, *great*	maior, *greater*	maximus, *greatest*
parvus, *small*	minor, *less*	minimus, *least*
multus, *much*	plūs, *more*	plūrimus, *most*

b. **Adjectives with no Positive**

[cis, citrā, adv., *on this side*]	citerior, *hither*	citimus, *hithermost*
[dē, prep., *down*]	dēterior, *lower, worse, inferior*	dēterrimus, *worst*
[in, intrā, prep., *in, within*]	interior, *inner*	intimus, *inmost*
[prae, prō, prep, *before*]	prior, *former*	prīmus, *first*

[prope, adv., *near*]	propior, *nearer*	proximus, *nearest, next, last*
ultrā, adv., *beyond*]	ulterior, *farther*	ultimus, *farthest*

Adjectives with Double Superlative

exterus, *outside*	exterior, *outer*	extrēmus extimus	*outermost, farthest*
īnferus, *below*	īnferior, *lower*	īnfimus īmus	*lowest*
posterus, *following*	posterior, *later*	postrēmus postumus	*last*
superus, *above*	superior, *higher*	suprēmus summus	*highest, greatest (in excellence)*

ADVERBS

465. COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

cārē	cārius	cārissimē
pulchrē	pulchrius	pulcherrimē
fortiter	fortius	fortissimē
prūdenter	prūdentius	prūdentissimē
audācter	audācius	audācissimē
facile	facilius	facillimē

466. ADVERBS FROM IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

bene, *well*	melius, *better*	optimē, *best, excellently*
male, *badly*	peius, *worse*	pessimē, *worst*
——	magis, *more, rather*	maximē, *most, mostly, chiefly*
parum, *little*	minus, *less*	minimē, *least, by no means*
multum, *much*	plus, *more*	plūrimum, *the most, very much*
prope, *nearly, almost*	propius, *nearer*	proximē, *most nearly, last*

Adverbs not formed from Adjectives

saepe, *often*	saepius, *more often*	saepissimē, *most often*
diū, *a long time*	diūtius, *longer*	diūtissimē, *very long*

467. NUMERALS

	Cardinals	Ordinals	Roman Numerals
1	ūnus, -a, -um	prīmus, -a, -um	I
2	duo, duae, duo	secundus *or* alter	II
3	trēs, tria	tertius	III
4	quattuor	quārtus	IV
5	quīnque	quīntus	V
6	sex	sextus	VI
7	septem	septimus	VII
8	octō	octāvus	VIII
9	novem	nōnus	IX
10	decem	decimus	X
11	ūndecim	ūndecimus	XI
12	duodecim	duodecimus	XII
13	tredecim	tertius decimus	XIII
14	quattuordecim	quārtus decimus	XIV
15	quīndecim	quīntus decimus	XV
16	sēdecim	sextus decimus	XVI
17	septendecim	septimus decimus	XVII
18	duodēvīgintī	duodēvīcēnsimus	XVIII
19	ūndēvīgintī	ūndēvīcēnsimus	XIX
20	vīgintī	vīcēnsimus	XX
21	vīgintī ūnus *or* ūnus et vīgintī	vīcēnsimus prīmus *or* ūnus et vīcēnsimus	XXI
22	vīgintī duo *or* duo et vīgintī	vīcēnsimus secundus *or* alter et vīcēnsimus	XXII
28	duodētrīgintā	duodētrīcēnsimus	XXVIII
29	ūndētrīgintā	ūndētrīcēnsimus	XXIX
30	trīgintā	trīcēnsimus	XXX
40	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēnsimus	XL
50	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēnsimus	L
60	sexāgintā	sexāgēnsimus	LX
70	septuāgintā	septuāgēnsimus	LXX
80	octōgintā	octōgēnsimus	LXXX
90	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēnsimus	XC
100	centum	centēnsimus	C
101	centum ūnus *or* centum et ūnus	centēnsimus prīmus *or* centēnsimus et prīmus	CI

	Cardinals	Ordinals	Roman Numerals
200	ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēnsimus	CC
300	trecentī	trecentēnsimus	CCC
400	quadringentī	quadringentēnsimus	CCCC
500	quīngentī	quīngentēnsimus	D
600	sēscentī	sēscentēnsimus	DC
700	septingentī	septingentēnsimus	DCC
800	octingentī	octingentēnsimus	DCCC
900	nōngentī	nōngentēnsimus	DCCCC
1000	mīlle	mīllēnsimus	M
2000	duo mīlia	bis mīllēnsimus	
100000	centum mīlia	centiēns mīllēnsimus	

PRONOUNS

468. PERSONAL PRONOUNS

	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	ego	nōs	tū	vōs	——	——
Acc.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs	sē, sēsē	sē, sēsē
Gen.	meī	nostrum, nostrī	tuī	vestrum, vestrī	suī	suī
Dat.	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs	sibi	sibi
Abl.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs	sē, sēsē	sē, sēsē

469. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

	Singular			Plural		
	Mas.	Fem.	Neu.	Mas.	Fem.	Neu.
Nom.	hĭc	haec	hŏc	hī	hae	haec
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hŏc	hōs	hās	haec
Gen.	hūius	hūius	hūius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	huīc	huīc	huīc	hīs	hīs	hīs
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs
Nom.	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
Acc.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
Gen.	illīus	illīus	illīus	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
Abl.	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

	Singular			Plural		
	Mas.	Fem.	Neu.	Mas.	Fem.	Neu.
Nom	is	ea	id	eī, iī	eae	ea
Acc.	eum	eām	id	eōs	eās	ea
Gen.	ēius	ēius	ēius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	eī	eī	eī	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
Abl.	eō	eā	eō	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs

Nom.	iste	ista	istud	istī	istae	ista
Acc.	istum	istam	istud	istōs	istās	ista
Gen.	istīus	istīus	istīus	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
Dat.	istī	istī	istī	istīs	istīs	istīs
Abl.	istō	istā	istō	istīs	istīs	istīs

Nom.	īdem	eadem	idem	eīdem iīdem, īdem	eaedem	eadem
Acc.	eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
Gen.	ēiusdem	ēiusdem	ēiusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	eīsdem iīsdem	eīsdem iīsdem	eīsdem iīsdem
Abl.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	eīsdem iīsdem	eīsdem iīsdem	eīsdem iīsdem

Nom.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
Acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Gen.	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
Dat.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
Abl.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

470. RELATIVE PRONOUNS

	Singular			Plural		
	Mas.	Fem.	Neu.	Mas.	Fem.	Neu.
Nom.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Gen.	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cuī	cuī	cuī	quibus	quibus	quibus
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

471. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS

	Singular			Plural		
	Mas.	Fem.	Neu.	Mas.	Fem.	Neu.
Nom.	quis (quī)	(quae)	quid (quod)	quī	quae	quae
Acc.	quem	(quam)	quid (quod)	quōs	quās	quae
Gen.	cuius	(cuius)	cuius	quorum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	(cui)	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Abl.	quō	(quā)	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

472. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

Singular

	Mas.	Fem.	Neu.
Nom.	aliquis	aliqua	aliquid (aliquod)
Acc.	aliquem	aliquam	aliquid (aliquod)
Gen.	alicuius	alicuius	alicuius
Dat.	alicui	alicui	alicui
Abl.	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō

Plural

Nom.	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
Acc.	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
Gen.	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
Dat.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
Abl.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

Singular

Nom.	quīdam	quaedam	quiddam, quoddam
Acc.	quendam	quandam	quiddam, quoddam
Gen.	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	cuiusdam
Dat.	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam
Abl.	quōdam	quādam	quōdam

Plural

Nom.	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
Acc.	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
Gen.	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
Dat.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
Abl.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

REGULAR VERBS

473. FIRST CONJUGATION: ā-verbs

Laudō, *praise*

Principal parts: laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE VOICE		*Present*	PASSIVE VOICE	
I praise, am praising, do praise			*I am praised, am being praised*	
laudō	laudāmus		laudor	laudāmur
laudās	laudātis		laudāris (-re)	laudāminī
laudat	laudant		laudātur	laudantur
		Future		
I shall praise, etc.			*I shall be praised*	
laudābō	laudābimus		laudābor	laudābimur
laudābis	laudābitis		laudāberis (-re)	laudābiminī
laudābit	laudābunt		laudābitur	laudābuntur
		Imperfect		
I praised, was praising, did praise			*I was praised, was being praised*	
laudābam	laudābāmus		laudābar	laudābāmur
laudābās	laudābātis		laudābāris (-re)	laudābāminī
laudābat	laudābant		laudābātur	laudābantur
		Perfect		
I have praised, praised, did praise			*I have been praised, was praised*	
laudāvī	laudāvimus			
laudāvistī	laudāvistis	laudātus { sum / es / est	laudātī { sumus / estis / sunt	
laudāvit	laudāvērunt (-ēre)			
		Future Perfect		
I shall have praised			*I shall have been praised*	
laudāverō	laudāverimus			
laudāveris	laudāveritis	laudātus { erō / eris / erit	laudātī { erimus / eritis / erunt	
laudāverit	laudāverint			

Pluperfect

I had praised		*I had been praised*			
laudāveram	laudāverāmus	laudātus	eram	laudātī	erāmus
laudāverās	laudāverātis		erās		erātis
laudāverat	laudāverant		erat		erant

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

laudem	laudēmus	lauder	laudēmur
laudēs	laudētis	laudēris (-re)	laudēminī
laudet	laudent	laudētur	laudentur

Imperfect

laudārem	laudārēmus	laudārer	laudārēmur
laudārēs	laudārētis	laudārēris (-re)	laudārēminī
laudāret	laudārent	laudārētur	laudārentur

Perfect

laudāverim	laudāverimus	laudātus	sim	laudātī	sīmus
laudāveris	laudāveritis		sīs		sītis
laudāverit	laudāverint		sit		sint

Pluperfect

laudāvissem	laudāvissēmus	laudātus	essem	laudātī	essēmus
laudāvissēs	laudāvissētis		essēs		essētis
laudāvisset	laudāvissent		esset		essent

IMPERATIVE

Present

SINGULAR

laudā, *praise thou* — laudāre, *be thou praised*

PLURAL

laudāte, *praise ye* — laudāminī, *be ye praised*

Future

SINGULAR

laudātō, *thou shalt praise* — laudātor, *thou shalt be praised*
laudātō, *he shall praise* — laudātor, *he shall be praised*

PLURAL

laudātōte, *ye shall praise*	——
laudantō, *they shall praise*	laudantor, *they shall be praised*

INFINITIVE

Pres.	laudāre, *to praise*	laudārī, *to be praised*
Perf.	laudāvisse, *to have praised*	laudātus esse, *to have been praised*
Fut.	laudātūrus esse, *to be about to praise*	laudātum īrī, *to be about to be praised*

PARTICIPLES

Pres.	laudāns, *praising*	——
Perf.	——	laudātus, *having been praised, praised*
Fut.	laudātūrus, *about to praise*	——

GERUND

Acc.	laudandum, *praising*
Gen.	laudandī, *of praising*
Dat.	laudandō, *for praising*
Abl.	laudandō, *by praising*

GERUNDIVE

laudandus, *to be praised*

SUPINE

Acc.	laudātum, *to praise*
Abl.	laudātū, *to praise*

474. **SYNOPSIS**

(*A model for all regular verbs*)

Laudō

INDICATIVE

	ACTIVE VOICE	PASSIVE VOICE
Pres.	laudō	laudor
Fut.	laudābō	laudābor
Imperf.	laudābam	laudābar
Perf.	laudāvī	laudātus sum
F. P.	laudāverō	laudātus erō
Plup.	laudāveram	laudātus eram

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres.	laud**em**	lau**der**
Imperf.	laud**ārem**	laud**ārer**
Perf.	laud**āverim**	laud**ātus** sim
Plup.	laud**āvissem**	laud**ātus** essem

IMPERATIVE

Pres.	laud**ā**	laud**āre**
Fut.	laud**ātō**	laud**ātor**

INFINITIVE

Pres.	laud**āre**	laud**ārī**
Perf.	laud**āvisse**	laud**ātus** esse
Fut.	laud**ātūrus** esse	laud**ātum** īrī

PARTICIPLES

Pres.	laud**āns**	
Perf.		laud**ātus**
Fut.	laud**ātūrus**	

GERUND

laud**andī**

GERUNDIVE

laud**andus**

SUPINE

laud**ātum**

475. **Synopsis of the Periphrastic Conjugations**

	First, or Active, Periphrastic	**Second, or Passive, Periphrastic**
	INDICATIVE	
	I am about to praise (*just ready to praise, likely to praise*, etc.)	*I am to be praised* (*must be praised, have to be praised*, etc.)
Pres.	laud**ātūrus** sum	laud**andus** sum
Fut.	laud**ātūrus** erō	laud**andus** erō
Impf.	laud**ātūrus** eram	laud**andus** eram
Perf.	laud**ātūrus** fuī	laud**andus** fuī
F. P.	laud**ātūrus** fuerō	laud**andus** fuerō
Plup.	laud**ātūrus** fueram	laud**andus** fueram

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres.	laudātūrus sim	laudandus sim
Impf.	laudātūrus essem	laudandus essem
Perf.	laudātūrus fuerim	laudandus fuerim
Plup.	laudātūrus fuissem	laudandus fuissem

INFINITIVE

Pres.	laudātūrus esse	laudandus esse
Perf.	laudātūrus fuisse	laudandus fuisse

So in the other conjugations:

monitūrus su	monendus sum
rēctūrus sum	regendus sum
captūrus sum	capiendus sum
audītūrus sum	audiendus sum

476. SECOND CONJUGATION: ē-verbs

Moneō, *advise*

Principal parts: moneō, -ēre, monuī, monitus

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE VOICE		*Present* PASSIVE VOICE	
I advise, am advising, do advise		*I am advised, am being advised*	
moneō	monēmus	moneor	monēmur
monēs	monētis	monēris (-re)	monēminī
monet	monent	monētur	monentur
		Future	
I shall advise		*I shall be advised*	
monēbō	monēbimus	monēbor	monēbimur
monēbis	monēbitis	monēberis (-re)	monēbiminī
monēbit	monēbunt	monēbitur	monēbuntur
		Imperfect	
I advised, was advising, did advise		*I was advised, was being advised*	
monēbam	monēbāmus	monēbar	monēbāmur
monēbās	monēbātis	monēbāris (-re)	monēbāminī
monēbat	monēbant	monēbātur	monēbantur

Perfect

I have advised, advised, did advise *I have been advised, was advised*

monuī	monuimus	monitus	sum	monitī	sumus
monuistī	monuistis		es		estis
monuit	monuērunt (-ēre)		est		sunt

Future Perfect

I shall have advised *I shall have been advised*

monuerō	monuerimus	monitus	erō	monitī	erimus
monueris	monueritis		eris		eritis
monuerit	monuerint		erit		erunt

Pluperfect

I had advised *I had been advised*

monueram	monuerāmus	monitus	eram	monitī	erāmus
monuerās	monuerātis		erās		erātis
monuerat	monuerant		erat		erant

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

moneam	moneāmus	monear	moneāmur
moneās	moneātis	moneāris (-re)	moneāminī
moneat	moneant	moneātur	monēantur

Imperfect

monērem	monērēmus	monērer	monērēmur
monērēs	monērētis	monērēris (-re)	monērēminī
monēret	monērent	monērētur	monērentur

Perfect

monuerim	monuerimus	monitus	sim	monitī	sīmus
monueris	monueritis		sīs		sītis
monuerit	monuerint		sit		sint

Pluperfect

monuissem	monuissēmus	monitus	essem	monitī	essēmus
monuissēs	monuissētis		essēs		essētis
monuisset	monuissent		esset		essent

IMPERATIVE

Present

SINGULAR

monē, *advise thou*	**monēre**, *be thou advised*

PLURAL

monēte, *advise ye*	**monēminī**, *be ye advised*

Future

SINGULAR

monētō, *thou shalt advise*	**monētor**, *thou shalt be advised*
monētō, *he shall advise*	**monētor**, *he shall be advised*

PLURAL

monētōte, *ye shall advise*	———
monentō, *they shall advise*	**monentor**, *they shall be advised*

INFINITIVE

Pres.	**monēre**, *to advise*	**monērī**, *to be advised*
Perf.	**monuisse**, *to have advised*	**monitus** esse, *to have been advised*
Fut.	**monitūrus**, esse, *to be about to advise*	**monitum** īrī, *to be about to be advised*

PARTICIPLES

Pres.	**monēns**, *advising*	———
Perf.	———	**monitus**, *having been advised, advised*
Fut.	**monitūrus**, *about to advise*	———

GERUND

Acc.	**monendum**, *advising*
Gen.	**monendī**, *of advising*
Dat.	**monendō**, *for advising*
Abl.	**monendō**, *by advising*

GERUNDIVE

monendus, *to be advised*

SUPINE

Acc.	**monitum**, *to advise*
Abl.	**monitū**, *to advise*

477. THIRD CONJUGATION: e-verbs

Regō, *rule*

Principal parts: regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctus

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE VOICE		*Present* PASSIVE VOICE	
I rule, am ruling, do rule		*I am ruled, am being ruled*	
regō	regimus	regor	regimur
regis	regitis	regeris (-re)	regiminī
regit	regunt	regitur	reguntur
		Future	
I shall rule		*I shall be ruled*	
regam	regēmus	regar	regēmur
regēs	regētis	regēris (-re)	regēminī
reget	regent	regētur	regentur
		Imperfect	
I ruled, was ruling, did rule		*I was ruled, was being ruled*	
regēbam	regēbāmus	regēbar	regēbāmur
regēbās	regēbātis	regēbāris (-re)	regēbāminī
regēbat	regēbant	regēbātur	regēbantur
		Perfect	
I have ruled, ruled, did rule		*I have been ruled, was ruled*	
rēxī	rēximus	rēctus { sum, es, est	rēctī { sumus, estis, sunt
rēxistī	rēxistis		
rēxit	rēxērunt (-ēre)		
		Future Perfect	
I shall have ruled		*I shall have been ruled*	
rēxerō	rēxerimus	rēctus { erō, eris, erit	rēctī { erimus, eritis, erunt
rēxeris	rēxeritis		
rēxerit	rēxerint		
		Pluperfect	
I had ruled		*I had been ruled*	
rēxeram	rēxerāmus	rēctus { eram, eras, erat	rēctī { erāmus, eratis, erant
rēxerās	rēxerātis		
rēxerat	rēxerant		

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

regam	**regāmus**	regar	**regāmur**
regās	**regātis**	**regāris (-re)**	**regāminī**
regat	**regant**	**regātur**	**regantur**

Imperfect

regerem	**regerēmus**	regerer	**regerēmur**
regerēs	**regerētis**	**regerēris (-re)**	**regerēminī**
regeret	**regerent**	**regerētur**	**regerentur**

Perfect

rēxerim	**rēxerimus**		
rēxeris	**rēxeritis**	**rēctus** { sim / sīs / sit	**rēctī** { sīmus / sītis / sint
rēxerit	**rēxerint**		

Pluperfect

rēxissem	**rēxissēmus**		
rēxissēs	**rēxissētis**	**rēctus** { essem / essēs / esset	**rēctī** { essēmus / essētis / essent
rēxisset	**rēxissent**		

IMPERATIVE

Present

SINGULAR

rege, *rule thou* — **regere**, *be thou ruled*

PLURAL

regite, *rule ye* — **regiminī**, *be ye ruled*

Future

SINGULAR

regitō, *thou shalt rule* — **regitor**, *thou shalt be ruled*
regitō, *he shall rule* — **regitor**, *he shall be ruled*

PLURAL

regitōte, *ye shall rule* — ———
reguntō, *they shall rule* — **reguntor**, *they shall be ruled*

INFINITIVE

Pres.	**regere**, *to rule*	**regī**, *to be ruled*
Perf.	**rēxisse**, *to have ruled*	**rēctus esse**, *to have been ruled*
Fut.	**rēctūrus esse**, *to be about to rule*	**rēctum īrī**, *to be about to be ruled*

PARTICIPLES

Pres.	**regēns**, *ruling*	———
Perf.	———	**rēctus**, *having been ruled, ruled*
Fut.	**rectūrus**, *about to rule*	———

GERUND

Acc.	**regendum**, *ruling*
Gen.	**regendī**, *of ruling*
Dat.	**regendō**, *for ruling*
Abl.	**regendō**, *by ruling*

GERUNDIVE

regendus, *to be ruled*

SUPINE

Acc.	**rēctum**, *to rule*
Abl.	**rēctū**, *to rule*

478. THIRD CONJUGATION: verbs in **-iō**

Capiō: *take*

Principal parts: **capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus**

INDICATIVE

Active Voice		*Present*	Passive Voice
I take, am taking, do take			*I am taken, am being taken*
capiō	**capimus**	**capior**	**capimur**
capis	**capitis**	**caperis (-re)**	**capiminī**
capit	**capiunt**	**capitur**	**capiuntur**
		Imperfect	
I shall take		*I shall be taken*	
capiam	**capiēmus**	**capiar**	**capiēmur**
capiēs	**capiētis**	**capiēris (-re)**	**capiēminī**
capiet	**capient**	**capiētur**	**capientur**

Imperfect

I took, was taking, did take		*I was taken, was being taken*	
capiēbam	capiēbāmus	capiēbar	capiēbāmur
capiēbās	capiēbātis	capiēbāris (-re)	capiēbāminī
capiēbat	capiēbant	capiēbātur	capiēbantur

Perfect

I have taken, took, did take		*I have been taken, was taken*	
cēpī	cēpimus	captus sum	captī sumus
cēpistī	cēpistis	captus es	captī estis
cēpit	cēpērunt (-ēre)	captus est	captī sunt

Future Perfect

cēperō	cēperimus	captus erō	captī erimus
cēperis	cēperitis	captus eris	captī eritis
cēperit	cēperint	captus erit	captī erunt

Pluperfect

I had taken		*I had been taken*	
cēperam	cēperāmus	captus eram	captī erāmus
cēperās	cēperātis	captus erās	captī erātis
cēperat	cēperant	captus erat	captī erant

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

capiam	capiāmus	capiar	capiāmur
capiās	capiātis	capiāris (-re)	capiāminī
capiat	capiant	capiātur	capiantur

Imperfect

caperem	caperēmus	caperer	caperēmur
caperēs	caperētis	caperēris (-re)	caperēminī
caperet	caperent	caperētur	caperentur

Perfect

cēperim	cēperimus	captus sim	captī sīmus
cēperis	cēperitis	captus sīs	captī sītis
cēperit	cēperint	captus sit	captī sint

Pluperfect

cēpissem	cēpissēmus	captus	essem	captī	essēmus
cēpissēs	cēpissētis		essēs		essētis
cēpisset	cēpissent		esset		essent

IMPERATIVE

Present

SINGULAR

cape, *take thou*	capere, *be thou taken*

PLURAL

capite, *take ye*	capiminī, *be ye taken*

Future

SINGULAR

capitō, *thou shalt take*	capitor, *thou shalt be taken*
capitō, *he shall take*	capitor, *he shall be taken*

PLURAL

capitōte, *ye shall take*	——
capiuntō, *they shall take*	capiuntor, *they shall be taken*

INFINITIVE

Pres.	capere, *to take*	capī, *to be taken*
Perf.	cēpisse, *to have taken*	captus esse, *to have been taken*
Fut.	captūrus esse, *to be about to take*	captum īrī, *to be about to be taken*

PARTICIPLES

Pres.	capiēns, *taking*	——
Perf.	——	captus, *having been taken, taken*
Fut.	captūrus, *about to take*	——

GERUND

Acc.	capiendum, *taking*
Gen.	capiendī, *of taking*
Dat.	capiendō, *for taking*
Abl.	capiendō, *by taking*

GERUNDIVE

capiendus, *to be taken*

SUPINE

Acc. captum, *to take*
Abl. captū, *to take*

479. FOURTH CONJUGATION: ī-verbs

Audiō, *hear*

Principal parts: audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE VOICE		*Present* PASSIVE VOICE	
I hear, am hearing, do hear		*I am heard, am being heard*	
audiō	audīmus	audior	audīmūr
audīs	audītis	audīris (-re)	audīminī
audit	audiunt	audītur	audiuntur

Future

I shall hear		*I shall be heard*	
audiam	audiēmus	audiar	audiēmur
audiēs	audiētis	audiēris (-re)	audiēminī
audiet	audient	audiētur	audientur

Imperfect

I heard, was hearing, did hear		*I was heard, was being heard*	
audiēbam	audiēbāmus	audiēbar	audiēbāmur
audiēbās	audiēbātis	audiēbāris (-re)	audiēbāminī
audiēbat	audiēbant	audiēbātur	audiēbantur

Perfect

I have heard, heard, did hear		*I have been heard, was heard*	
audīvī	audīvimus	audītus { sum / es / est	audītī { sumus / estis / sunt
audīvistī	audīvistis		
audīvit	audīvērunt (-ēre)		

Future Perfect

I shall have heard		*I shall have been heard*	
audīverō	audīverimus	audītus { erō / eris / erit	audītī { erimus / eritis / erunt
audīveris	audīveritis		
audīverit	audīverint		

Pluperfect

I had heard		*I had been heard*	
audīveram	audīverāmus	audītus { eram	audītī { erāmus
audīverās	audīverātis	erās	erātis
audīverat	audīverant	erat	erant

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

audiam	audiāmus	audiar	audiāmur
audiās	audiātis	audiāris (-re)	audiāminī
audiat	audiant	audiātur	audiantur

Imperfect

audīrem	audīrēmus	audīrer	audīrēmur
audīrēs	audīrētis	audīrēris (-re)	audīrēminī
audīret	audīrent	audīrētur	audīrentur

Perfect

audīverim	audīverimus	audītus { sim	audītī { sīmus
audīveris	audīveritis	sīs	sītis
audīverit	audīverint	sit	sint

Pluperfect

audīvissem	audīvissēmus	audītus { essem	audītī { essēmus
audīvissēs	audīvissētis	essēs	essētis
audīvisset	audīvissent	esset	essent

IMPERATIVE

Present

SINGULAR

audī, *hear thou* — audīre, *be thou heard*

PLURAL

audīte, *hear ye* — audīminī, *be ye heard*

Future

SINGULAR

audītō, *thou shalt hear* — audītor, *thou shalt be heard*
audītō, *he shall hear* — audītor, *he shall be heard*

PLURAL

audītōte, *ye shall hear*	——
audiuntō, *they shall hear*	**audiuntor**, *they shall be heard*

INFINITIVE

Pres.	**audīre**, *to hear*	**audīrī**, *to be heard*
Perf.	**audīvisse**, *to have heard*	**audītus** esse, *to have been heard*
Fut.	**audītūrus** esse, *to be about to hear*	**audītum** īrī, *to be about to be heard*

PARTICIPLES

Pres.	**audiēns**, *hearing*	——
Perf.	——	**audītus**, *having been heard, heard*
Fut.	**audītūrus**, *about to hear*	——

GERUND

Acc.	**audiendum**, *hearing*
Gen.	**audiendī**, *of hearing*
Dat.	**audiendō**, *for hearing*
Abl.	**audiendō**, *by hearing*

GERUNDIVE

audiendus, *to be heard*

SUPINE

Acc.	**audītum**, *to hear*
Abl.	**audītū**, *to hear*

IRREGULAR VERBS

480. Sum, *I am* **Possum**, *I am able, I can* **Prōsum**, *I am helpful to.*

Principal parts { **sum, esse, fuī, futūrus** / **possum**,[1] **posse, potuī**, —— / **prōsum**,[2] **prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfutūrus**

[1] **Possum** is formed by uniting **potis**, *able*, and **sum**. From **potis** drop the ending **-is** and add **sum**. This gives **potsum**, then by assimilation **t** before **s** changes to **s**, making **possum**. Before a vowel the form **pot** does not change. In the perfect system the **f** is dropped, leaving **potuī** instead of **potfuī**. The infinitive shortens to **posse** for **potesse**.

[2] **Prōsum** is **prō** and **sum** combined without change except that **d** is inserted when two vowels come together, as **prō** + **esse** becomes **prōdesse**.

INDICATIVE

Present

sum	possum	prōsum
es	potes	prōdes
est	potest	prōdest
sumus	possumus	prōsumus
estis	potestis	prōdestis
sunt	possunt	prōsunt

Future

erō	poterō	prōderō
eris	poteris	prōderis
erit	poterit	prōderit
erimus	poterimus	prōderimus
eritis	poteritis	prōderitis
erunt	poterunt	prōderunt

Imperfect

eram	poteram	prōderam
erās	poterās	prōderās
erat	poterat	prōderat
erāmus	poterāmus	prōderāmus
erātis	poterātis	prōderātis
erant	poterant	prōderant

Perfect

fuī	potuī	prōfuī
fuistī	potuistī	prōfuistī
fuit	potuit	prōfuit
fuimus	potuimus	prōfuimus
fuistis	potuistis	prōfuistis
fuērunt (-ēre)	potuērunt (-ēre)	prōfuērunt (-ēre)

Future Perfect

fuerō	potuerō	prōfuerō
fueris	potueris	prōfueris
fuerit	potuerit	prōfuerit
fuerimus	potuerimus	prōfuerimus
fueritis	potueritis	prōfueritis
fuerint	potuerint	prōfuerint

Pluperfect

fueram	potueram	prōfueram
fuerās	potuerās	prōfuerās
fuerat	potuerat	prōfuerat
fuerāmus	potuerāmus	profuerāmus
fuerātis	potuerātis	prōfuerātis
fuerant	potuerant	prōfuerant

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

sim	possim	prōsim
sīs	possīs	prōsīs
sit	possit	prōsit
sīmus	possīmus	prōsīmus
sītis	possītis	prōsītis
sint	possint	prōsint

Imperfect

essem	possem	prōdessem
essēs	possēs	prōdessēs
esset	posset	prōdesset
essēmus	possēmus	prōdessēmus
essētis	possētis	prōdessētis
essent	possent	prōdessent

Perfect

fuerim	potuerim	prōfuerim
fueris	potueris	prōfueris
fuerit	potuerit	prōfuerit
fuerimus	potuerimus	prōfuerimus
fueritis	potueritis	prōfueritis
fuerint	potuerint	prōfuerint

Pluperfect

fuissem	potuissem	prōfuissem
fuissēs	potuissēs	prōfuissēs
fuisset	potuisset	prōfuisset
fuissēmus	potuissēmus	prōfuissēmus
fuissētis	potuissētis	prōfuissētis
fuissent	potuissent	prōfuissent

IMPERATIVE

Present

SINGULAR

es	——	prōdes

PLURAL

este	——	prōdeste

Future

SINGULAR

estō	——	prōdestō
estō	——	prōdestō

PLURAL

estōte	——	prōdestōte
suntō	——	prōsuntō

INFINITIVE

Pres.	esse	posse	prōdesse
Perf.	fuisse	potuisse	prōfuisse
Fut.	futūrus esse[1]		prōfutūrus esse

PARTICIPLE

Fut.	futūrus	prōfutūrus

481. **Volō, nōlō, mālō**

Principal parts	**volō, velle, voluī,** ——	*I am willing, I wish*
	nōlō,[2] **nōlle, nōluī,** ——	*I am unwilling*
	mālō,[3] **mālle, māluī,** ——	*I wish rather, I prefer*

INDICATIVE

Pres.	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
	vult	nōn vult	māvult
	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
Fut.	volam, -ēs, etc.	nōlam, -ēs, etc.	mālam, -ēs, etc.
Impf.	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam

[1] The form **fore** is often used in place of **futūrum esse.**

[2] **Nōlō** is for **nōnvolō**, from **nōn**, *not*, and **volō.**

[3] **Mālō** is for **māvolō**, from **magis**, *rather*, and **volō.**

Perf.	voluī	nōluī	māluī
F. P.	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō
Plup.	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres.	velim	nōlim	mālim
	velīs	nōlīs	mālīs
	velit	nōlit	mālit
	velīmus	nōlīmus	mālīmus
	velītis	nōlītis	mālītis
	velint	nōlint	mālint
Impf.	vellem	nōllem	māllem
Perf.	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
Plup.	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem

IMPERATIVE

Pres.	——	nōlī	——
		nōlīte	
Fut.	——	nōlītō, etc.	——

INFINITIVE

Pres.	velle	nōllē	mālle
Perf.	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

PARTICIPLE

Pres.	volēns	nōlēns	——

482. **Eō**, *go*: **adeō**, *go to, approach, visit*

Principal parts { **eō, īre, iī (īvī), itūrus**
adeō, -īre, -iī, -itus

INDICATIVE

	Active Voice		Passive Voice	
Pres.	eō	īmus	adeor	adīmur
	īs	ītis	adīris (-re)	adīminī
	it	eunt	adītur	adeuntur

Fut.	ībō	adībor
Impf.	ībam	adībar
Perf.	iī	aditus sum
F. P.	ierō	aditus erō
Plup.	ieram	aditus eram

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres.	eam	adear
Impf.	īrem	adīrer
Perf.	ierim	aditus sim
Plup.	īssem	aditus essem

IMPERATIVE

Pres.	ī	adīre
Fut.	ītō	adītor

INFINITIVE

Pres.	īre	adīrī
Perf.	īsse	aditus esse
Fut.	itūrus esse	aditum īrī

PARTICIPLES

Pres.	iēns, euntis (460)	
Perf.		aditus
Fut.	itūrus	

GERUND

eundī

GERUNDIVE

adeundus

SUPINE

itum

a. In the perfect **īvī** is generally contracted to **iī**, and the forms **iissem** and **iisse** to **īssem** and **īsse**.

b. The passive of **adeō** is given since the simple verb **eō** is intransitive and therefore has no passive, except a few impersonal forms (488, *b*).

c. Except in the present indicative, where most of the irregularities occur, the synopsis only is given. The pupil should be able to fill out all forms from the synopsis.

483. **Ferō**, *bear, bring, endure*

Principal parts: ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus

INDICATIVE

	Active Voice		Passive Voice	
Pres.	ferō	ferimus	feror	ferimur
	fers[1]	fertis	ferris (-re)	feriminī
	fert	ferunt	fertur	feruntur
Fut.	feram		ferar	
Impf.	ferēbam		ferēbar	
Perf.	tulī		lātus sum	
F. P.	tulerō		lātus erō	
Plup.	tuleram		lātus eram	

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres.	feram		ferar	
Impf.	ferrem		ferrer	
Perf.	tulerim		lātus sim	
Plup.	tulissem		lātus essem	

IMPERATIVE

Pres.	fer[2]		ferre	
Fut.	fertō[3]		fertor	

INFINITIVE

Pres.	ferre		ferrī	
Perf.	tulisse		lātus esse	
Fut.	latūrus esse		lātum īrī	

PARTICIPLES

Pres.	ferēns			
Perf.			lātus	
Fut.	latūrus			

GERUND

ferendī

GERUNDIVE

ferendus

SUPINE

lātum

[1] **Fers, fert**, etc., are for **feris, ferit**, with the vowel dropped.

[2] 295, 5, note. [3] 294, *b*.

484. **Fīō** (passive of **faciō**), *be made, become, happen*

Principal parts: fīō, fierī, factus sum

INDICATIVE			SUBJUNCTIVE	
Pres.	fīō	(fīmus)	*Pres.*	fīam
	fīs	(fītis)	*Impf.*	fierem
	fit	fīunt	*Perf.*	factus sim
Fut.	fīam		*Plup.*	factus essem
Impf.	fiēbam			
Perf.	factus sum		IMPERATIVE	
F. P.	factus erō		*Present*	
Plup.	factus eram		(fī)	
			(fīte)	

INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLES	
Pres.	fierī		
Perf.	factus esse		factus
Fut.	factum īrī		

GERUNDIVE

faciendus

a. The verb **faciō**, *make*, is regular in the active, and in the perfect tenses of the passive. But **fīō**, *be made* or *become*, active in form but passive in meaning, is used in the present, future, and imperfect as the passive of **faciō**. The forms in brackets are rarely used, and no future imperative is usually given.

DEPONENT VERBS

485. Deponent verbs have passive forms with active meanings. They are regular in conjugation.

Principal parts

I conjugation:
hortor, -ārī, hortātus sum, *exhort, urge*

II conjugation:
vereor, -ērī, veritus sum, *fear, dread*

III conjugation:
sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, *follow*

IV conjugation:
potior, -īrī, potītus sum, *get control of*

486. Synopsis

		INDICATIVE		
Pres.	hortor	vereor	sequor	potior
Fut.	hortābor	verēbor	sequar	potiar
Impf.	hortābar	verēbar	sequēbar	potiēbar
Perf	hortātus sum	veritus sum	secūtus sum	potītus sum
F. P.	hortātus erō	veritus erō	secūtus erō	potītus erō
Plup.	hortātus eram	veritus eram	secūtus eram	potītus eram
		SUBJUNCTIVE		
Pres.	horter	verear	sequar	potiar
Impf.	hortārer	verērer	sequerer	potīrer
Perf.	hortātus sim	veritus sim	secūtus sim	potītus sim
Plup.	hortātus essem	veritus essem	secūtus essem	potītus essem
		IMPERATIVE		
Pres.	hortāre	verēre	sequere	potīre
Fut.	hortātor	verētor	sequitor	potītor
		PARTICIPLES		
Pres.	hortāns	verēns	sequēns	potiēns
Fut.	hortātūrus	veritūrus	secutūrus	potitūrus
Perf.	hortātus	veritus	secūtus	potītus
		GERUND		
	hortandī	verendī	sequendī	potiundī
		GERUNDIVE		
	hortandus	verendus	sequendus	potiendus
		SUPINE		
	hortātum	veritum	secūtum	potītum

a. Deponents have participles of both voices, as:

sequēns, *following* — secūtus, *having followed*

secūtūrus, *about to follow* — sequendus, *to be followed*

b. The future infinitive is active in form and meaning, as:

secūtūrus esse, *to be about to follow*

c. The gerund and supine are also active.

487. SEMI-DEPONENTS

A few verbs have the active forms in the present system and the passive forms in other tenses, thus:

audeō, audēre, ausus sum, *dare* **gaudeō, -ēre, gavīsus sum,** *rejoice*
fīdō, fīdere, fīsus sum, *trust* **sōleō, -ēre, solitus sum,** *be wont to*

488. IMPERSONAL VERBS

a. Some verbs are used only in the third person singular and the infinitive impersonally. They are called impersonal verbs, because they have no personal subject. The word *it* is generally used in English, as: **accidit,** *it happens.*

b. Intransitive verbs are sometimes used in the passive impersonally, as: **pugnābātur,** *it was being fought,* or *there was fighting,* etc. So in the periphrastic conjugations, as: **mihi pugnandum est,** *it is for me to be fought,* or *I must fight.*

489. Synopsis

It is allowed	*It happens*	*It is fought, there is fighting,* etc.	*I must fight*
licet	accidit	pugnātur	mihi pugnandum est
licēbit	accidet	pugnābitur	pugnandum erit
licēbat	accidēbat	pugnābātur	pugnandum erat
licuit	accidit	pugnātum est	pugnandum fuit
licuerit	acciderit	pugnātum erit	pugnandum fuerit
licuerat	acciderat	pugnātum erat	pugnandum fuerat
liceat	accidat	pugnētur	pugnandum sit
licēret	accideret	pugnārētur	pugnandum esset
licuerit	acciderit	pugnātum sit	pugnandum fuerit
licuisset	accidisset	pugnātum esset	pugnandum fuisset
licēre	accidere	pugnārī	pugnandum esse
licuisse	accidisse	pugnātum esse	pugnandum fuisse
licitūrum esse		pugnātum īrī	

RULES OF SYNTAX

The numbers refer to paragraphs in the text.

1. The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative case, 29.

2. A finite verb agrees with its subject in number and person, 31.

3. A predicate noun agrees in case with the subject of the verb, 85.

4. An appositive is in the same case as the word it limits, 83.

5. An adjective agrees in gender, number, and case with the noun to which it belongs, 54.

6. A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, 236.

7. The vocative is used in addressing a person, 47.

8. A noun, or pronoun, used to limit another, not meaning the same person or thing, is in the genitive case, 38.

9. The genitive is often used after a word expressing a part of something, 188.

10. A noun, with an adjective, may be used in the genitive to denote quality, 136.

11. Adjectives denoting *desire*, *knowledge*, *memory*, *fullness*, *power*, *sharing*, *guilt*, and their opposites, govern the genitive, 390.

12. The indirect object is in the dative, 40.

13. Adjectives meaning *near*, also *fit*, *friendly*, *pleasing*, *like*, and their opposites, take the dative, 264.

14. The dative may be used with **est**, **sunt**, etc., to denote the possessor (the thing possessed being the subject), 93.

15. The dative is used with **sum** and a few other verbs to show that for which a thing serves, 342.

16. The dative with the gerundive denotes the person who has the thing to do, 314.

17. Many verbs compounded with the prepositions **ad**, **ante**, **in**, **inter**, **ob**, **post**, **prae**, **prō**, **sub**, **super**, and a very few with **circum** and **con**, govern the dative, 341.

18. Most verbs meaning to *favour*, *help*, *please*, *trust*, and their contraries; also to *believe*, *persuade*, *command*, *obey*, *serve*, *resist*, *envy*, *threaten*, *pardon*, and *spare*, take the dative, 360.

19. The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative, 30.

20. Verbs of *asking* and *teaching*, and some verbs of *demanding*, take two accusatives, one of the person and the other of the thing, 377.

21. Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative, 221.

22. The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative, 306.

23. The means or instrument by which something is done is expressed by the ablative, without a preposition, 48.

24. The ablative with **cum** is used to denote manner, 119 with *a*.

25. The ablative with **cum** is used to denote accompaniment, 120 with *a*.

26. The ablative is used with **cum** after verbs of association and contention, 120, note.

27. The ablative is used to express cause, 141.

28. The personal agent with the passive voice is expressed by the ablative with **ā** or **ab**, 77.

29. After verbs denoting separation, privation, and want, the ablative is used, 379.

30. **Opus** and **ūsus**, meaning *need*, take the ablative, 380.

31. The ablative is used with the comparative without **quam**, 172.

32. The measure of difference is expressed by the ablative, 180.

33. The ablative of specification is used to tell in what respect a thing is true, 158.

34. A noun, with an adjective, may be used in the ablative to denote quality, 392.

35. The verbs **ūtor**, **fruor**, **fungor**, **potior**, and **vēscor** take the ablative, 366.

36. A noun, or pronoun, with á participle or adjective agreeing with it, is often used independently in the ablative absolute, 334.

37. Time *when*, or *within which*, is expressed by the ablative, 219.

38. Place *where*, not including names of cities, is expressed by the ablative with **in**; place *to which* by the accusative with **ad** or **in**; place *from which* by the ablative with **ā** (**ab**), **dē**, **ē** (**ex**), 354 *a*.

39. With names of cities and **domus** and **rūs** —

1. Place *where* is expressed by the locative, 354, 1.
2. Place *to which* is expressed by the accusative without a preposition, 354, 2.
3. Place *from which* is expressed by the ablative without a preposition, 354, 3.

40. The subjunctive with **ut**, negative **nē**, is used to express purpose, 273.

41. The subjunctive with **ut**, negative **ut nōn**, is used to express result, 281.

42. A relative clause denoting purpose takes the subjunctive, 336.

43. The verb in an indirect question is in the subjunctive mood, 287.

44. The verb in an indirect request is in the subjunctive mood, 399.

45. Subordinate clauses in indirect discourse take the subjunctive, 384.

46. The subjunctive is used in exhortations, corresponding to the English *let*, 397.

47. **Cum**, *causal* or *concessive*, takes the subjunctive, 279, 1.

48. **Cum**, *temporal*, takes the subjunctive when it denotes the *circumstances* or *occasion* for some other action, 279, 2.

49. **Dum**, meaning *while*, regularly takes the present indicative, 415, 1.

50. **Dum**, **dōnec**, and **quoad**, *as long as*, take the indicative, 415, 2.

51. **Dum**, **dōnec**, and **quoad**, *until*, take
   a. The indicative to denote an actual fact, 415, 3, *a*.
   b. The subjunctive to denote intention or expectancy, 415, 3, *b*.

52. **Antequam** and **priusquam**, *before*, take —
   a. The indicative to denote an actual fact, 416, *a*.
   b. The subjunctive to denote intention, expectancy, or prevention, 416, *b*.

53. **Postquam**, *after*; **ubi**, **ut**, *when*, *as*, *as soon as*; **simul ac**, *as soon as*, take the indicative (usually *perfect*), 419.

54. Simple conditions, nothing implied, take the indicative, in both clauses, 425, I.

55. Future conditions, more vivid, take the future (or future perfect) indicative in the condition, and the future indicative in the conclusion, 425, II, *a*.

56. Future conditions, less vivid, take the present (or perfect) subjunctive in the condition, and the present subjunctive in the conclusion, 425, II, *b*.

57. Conditions contrary to fact take the imperfect subjunc-

tive for present or continued action, and the pluperfect for past or completed action, 425, III.

58. Clauses expressing a wish in the indefinite future take the present subjunctive, 426.

59. Clauses expressing a wish unfulfilled in the present take the imperfect subjunctive, 426.

60. Clauses expressing a wish referring to the past take the pluperfect subjunctive, 426.

61. The infinitive is often used to complete the meaning of another verb, 304.

62. The infinitive with subject accusative is used after verbs, and other expressions, of *knowing*, *thinking*, *saying*, and *perceiving*, 306.

63. The supine in -um is used after verbs of motion to express purpose, 321, 1.

64. The supine in -ū is used with a few adjectives as an ablative of specification, 321, 2.

For tenses of the subjunctive see 406.
For tenses of the infinitive see 409 and 411.
For tenses of the participle see 409 and 410.

ABBREVIATIONS

abl.	*ablative.*
abs.	*absolute.*
acc.	*accusative.*
act.	*active.*
adj.	*adjective.*
adv.	*adverb.*
cf. (cōnfer)	*compare.*
comp.	*comparative.*
conj.	*conjunction.*
dat.	*dative.*
def.	*defective.*
deg.	*degree.*
dep.	*deponent.*
dem.	*demonstrative.*
dis.	*distributive.*
f., fem.	*feminine.*
fut.	*future.*
gen.	*genitive.*
imperf.	*imperfect.*
impers.	*impersonal.*
imp.	*imperative.*
ind.	*indicative.*
indecl.	*indeclinable.*
indef.	*indefinite.*
inf.	*infinitive.*
interrog.	*interrogative.*
interj.	*interjection.*
intr.	*intransitive.*
irr.	*irregular.*
loc.	*locative.*
m., mas.	*masculine.*
n., neu.	*neuter.*
neg.	*negative.*
nom.	*nominative.*
num.	*numeral.*
ord.	*ordinal.*
part.	*participle.*
pass.	*passive.*
perf.	*perfect.*
pers.	*personal.*
pl., plur.	*plural.*
pluperf.	*pluperfect.*
pos.	*positive.*
poss.	*possessive.*
prep.	*preposition.*
pres.	*present.*
pron.	*pronoun.*
refl.	*reflexive.*
rel.	*relative.*
sing.	*singular.*
subj.	*subjunctive.*
sup.	*superlative.*
tr.	*transitive.*
v.	*verb.*

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

The numbers refer to paragraphs in the text.

A

ā, or **ab,** prep. with abl., *by, from.*

ab-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *hide.*

ab-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead away.* [*from.*

ab-eō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus, *go away, go*

ab-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus [ab-iaciō], *throw away, cast away, throw.*

ablātus, see **auferō.**

ab-rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *abrogate, take away.*

abstineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus [ab(s)-teneō], *hold back from, abstain.*

ab-sum, -esse, āfuī, āfutūrus, *be away from, be absent.*

āc, see **atque.**

accēnsus, -a, -um, *lighted, excited, aroused.*

ac-cidō, -ere, -cidī, —— [ad-cadō], *fall upon, fall out;* **accidit,** impers., *it happens.*

ac-cipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus [ad-capiō], *take, accept, receive.*

accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *accuse.*

ācer, ācris, ācre, *sharp, keen, eager, active.*

acerbus, -a, -um, *bitter, harsh.*

aciēs, -ēī [ācer], f., *edge, line* (of battle).

ācriter [ācer], adv., *sharply, fiercely.*

Actiacus, -a, -um, *of Actium.*

ad, prep. with acc., *to, toward; near; for, for the purpose of;* as adv. with numbers, *about, nearly.*

ad-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *add.*

ad-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead to, win over, influence, draw to, draw back* [*to, bring.*

ad-ferō, -ferre, attulī, adlātus, *bring*

adeo, -īre, -īvi, or -ii *approach.*

ad-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [ad-faciō], *make towards, cause, affect, afflict.*

ad-flīgō, -ere, -flīxī, -flīctus, *strike against, damage, afflict.*

ad-gredior, -ī, -gressus sum [ad-gradior], *go against, attack; enter upon, begin.*

ad-hibeō, -ēre, -hibuī, -hibitus, *call upon, invoke.* [*urge.*

ad-hortor, -ārī, -tātus sum, *exhort,*

ad-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus [ad-iaciō], *throw upon, add to.*

aditus, -ūs [ad-eō], m., *approach, entrance.*

ad-iungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus, *join to, unite.*

ad-iuvō, -āre, -iūvī, -iūtus, *give aid to, assist.*

ad-loquor, -ī, -locūtus sum, *speak to, address.*

ad-ministrō, -āre, -āvī, ātus, *manage, attend to.*

ad-moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *admonish, advise.*

ad-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, *move to* or *near, apply.*

ad-nectō, -ere, -nexuī, -nexus, *tie to, fasten.*

ad-olēscō, -ere, -olēvī, -ultus, *grow up.* Cf. Eng. *adult.*

ad-orior, -irī, -ortus sum, *arise, rise against, attack.*

ad-ōrnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *furnish, adorn, equip, decorate.*

ad-propinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *approach.*

adrogantia, -ae [ad-rogō], f., *arrogance, assumption, haughtiness.*

ad-rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *ask for, claim.*

ad-sum, -esse, -fuī, futūrus, *be present, help.*

adventus, -ūs [ad-veniō], m., *coming, arrival.*

adversus, -a, -um, *opposite, facing.*

adversus, prep. with acc., *against.*

advertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus, *observe, regard.*

aedīs, -is, f., *temple;* plur., *house.*

aeger, -gra, -grum, adj., *sick, weak.*

aegrē, adv., *feebly, with difficulty, scarcely.*

Aenēās, -ae, m., *Æneas,* a famous Trojan.

aequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *equal, level.*

aequor, -oris [aequus], n., *level surface, sea.*

āër, -āëris, m., *air.*

aes, aeris, n., *copper, bronze, instrument of bronze.*

aetas, -ātis, f., *age, life.*

aether, -eris, m., *air, upper air, sky.*

Aetnaeus, -a, -um, *of Mt. Ætna.*

aevum, -ī, n., *age.*

af-fīgō, -ere, -fixī, fixus, *fasten to.*

ager, agrī, m., *field, land.*

agger, -eris, m., *mound, rampart.*

agmen, -inis [agō], n. (*the thing led*), *army, column, line* (of an army); **novissimum agmen,** *rear line, rear.*

a-gnoscō, -ere, agnōvī, agnitus, *recognize.*

agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus, *lead, drive, take; do, effect, treat, arrange, argue; run* (a sewer).

agrestis, -e [ager], *of the country, rustic.*

agricola, -ae [ager-colō], m., *tiller of the field, farmer.*

agricultūra, -ae, *cultivation of the field, agriculture.*

ait, from **aiō,** a defective verb, *he says, says he.*

āla, -ae, f., *wing.*

Alba Longa, -ae, f., *Alba Longa,* a legendary city built by Ascanius.

Albānus, -a, -um, *of Alba, a citizen of Alba.*

albeō, -ēre, *be white.*

albus, -a, -um, *white.*

Alcīdēs, -ae, m., *son of Alceus, Hercules.*

aliēnus, -a, -um, *belonging to another, foreign; unfavorable.*

aliquandō, adv., *sometime.*

aliquantum, adv., *somewhat, considerable.*

aliquantus, -a, -um, *considerable, quite large.*

aliquis, -qua, -quid (402), indef. pron., *some one.*

aliquot, indecl. adj., *several.*

aliter, adv., *otherwise.*

alius, -a, -ud, *another.* (See 200.)

al-loquor [ad-loquor], -ī, locūtus, *address.*

alō, -ere, aluī, altus, *foster, support, keep, tend.*

altē [altus], adv., *high, deep, deeply.*

alter, altera, alterum, *the other* (see 200); **alter . . . alter,** *one . . . the other,* **unus et alter,** ***both.***

altus, -a, -um, *high, tall; deep.*

alveus, -ī, m., *tub, basket, tray.*

ambāges, -is, f., *obscurity, riddle.*

ambigō, -ere, *doubt* (pass. used impers., *there is a question*).

ambiguus, -a, -um, *doubtful.*

ambulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *walk.*

amēns, amentis [ā-mēns], adj., *without reason, rash, frenzied, excited.*

America, -ae, f., *America.*
amīcitia, -ae [amīcus], f., *friendship.*
amīcus, -a, -um [amō], *friendly, a friend.*
amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *love.*
amplificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *enlarge, increase.*
Amūlius, -ī, m., *Amulius,* king at Alba.
an, conj., *or.*
ancīle, -is, n., *shield.* [*tius.*
Ancus Mārtius, -ī, m., *Ancus Mar-*
angulus, -ī, m., *corner.*
angustus, -a, -um, *narrow.*
animadvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus [animus-advertō], *turn the mind to, notice;* with **in,** *take action against, punish.*
animal, -ālis, n., *animal.*
animus, -ī, m., *mind, feeling, will, resolution, spirit, anger.*
ānnulus, -ī, m., *ring.*
annus, -ī, m., *year.*
annuus, -a, -um, *annual, yearly.*
ante, adv., or prep. with acc., *before.*
ante-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *place before, put before, prefer.*
antīquus, -a, -um, *ancient.*
antrum, -ī, n., *cave.*
anus, -ūs, f., *old woman, witch.*
aperiō, -īre, aperuī, apertus, *uncover, disclose, reveal, make known.*
apertē [apertus], adv., *openly.*
apertus, -a, -um, *open, plain, uncovered, unprotected.*
appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *call, name.*
ap-plicō [ad-plico], -āre, -āvī and -uī, -ātus, *attach.*
Aprīlis, -e, *of April, April.*
aptē, adv., *skilfully.*
aptus, -a, -um, *fitted, suited.*
apud, prep. with acc., *with, among, in the presence of.*
aqua, -ae, f., *water.*
aquila, -ae, f., *eagle.*
Aquilēia, -ae, f., *Aquileia,* a town in Gaul.
Aquilo, -ōnis, m., *north wind.*
Aquītānia, -ae, f., *Aquitania,* a district of Gaul.
āra, -ae, f., *altar.*
Arar, Araris, acc. Ararim, m., a river of Gaul, the modern Saône.
arātrum, -ī [arō], n., *plough.*
arbitrium, -ī, n., *mastery.*
arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum, *think, judge.*
arceō, -ēre, -uī, -tus, *keep off.*
arcessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus, *send for.*
Arctos, -ī, f., *Great Bear, north.*
Ardea, -ae, f., *Ardea,* a city.
ārdēscō, -ere, ārsī, ——, *take fire, blaze, burn.*
argentum, -ī, n., *silver.*
Ariōvistus, -ī, m., *Ariovistus,* a German chief.
arma, -ōrum, plur., n., *arms, defences.*
armilla, -ae, f., *bracelet.*
armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *arm.*
arō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *plow.*
ar-ripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptus [ad-rapiō], *seize.*
ars, artis, f., *art, skill.*
arx, arcis, f., *citadel.*
ascendō, -ere, -dī, -sus, *ascend, climb.*
ascēnsus, -ūs [ascendō], m., *ascent.*
asellus, -ī, m., *donkey.*
Asia, -ae, f., *Asia.*
asper, -era, -erum, *rough.*
a-spiciō [ad-spicio], -ere, -spexī, -spectus, *see, look.*
assiduus, -a, -um, *continual, busy.*
asȳlum, -ī, n., *a place of refuge, asylum.*
at, conj., *but.*
at-que (generally **ăc** before a consonant), *and.*

atrōx, atrōcis, adj., *fierce, cruel.*
attingō, -ere, attigī, attactus [ad-tangō], *touch, reach to, border on.*
attribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, *assign, give over to.*
auctōritās, -ātis, f., *influence, prestige, authority.*
audācia, -ae [audāx], f., *boldness, courage, daring.*
audācter [audāx], adv., *boldly.*
audāx, -ācis [audeō], adj., *daring, bold, brave.*
audeō, -ēre, ausus sum (487), *dare.*
audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *hear.*
au-ferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus [ab-ferō], *carry away, take off.*
au-fugiō, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus [ab-fugiō], *flee away, escape.*
augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctus, *increase.*
augurium, -ī, n., *augury, omen, divination, interpretation of omens.*
aura, -ae, f., *air, breeze.*
aureus, -a, -um [aurum], *of gold, golden.*
aurum, -ī, n., *gold.*
Ausonia, -ae, f., *Italy.*
auspex, -icis, m. and f., *witness, director.* [. . . *or.*
aut, conj., *or;* **aut . . . aut,** *either . . . or.*
autem, conj., postpositive (435, n. 6), *but, on the other hand.*
auxilium, -ī, n., *aid, help;* plur., *auxiliaries.*
Aventīnus, -ī, m., *the Aventine,* one of the seven hills of Rome.
Aventīnus, -a, -um, *Aventine.*
āversus, -a, -um, *turned away, backward.*
ā-vertō, -ere, āvertī, āversus, *turn, turn away.*
avidē, adv., *greedily.*
avidus, -a, -um, *greedy.*
avis, -is, f., *bird.*
avus, -ī, m., *grandfather.*
axis, -is, m., *pole, sky.*

B

bacchor, -ārī, -ātus sum; *revel, rave.*
baculum, -ī, n., *a staff.*
barba, -ae, f., *beard.*
Belgae, -ārum, plur., m., *the Belgæ* or *the Belgians,* a tribe of Gaul.
bellicōsus, -a, -um [bellum], *warlike, fond of war.*
bellicus, -a, -um [bellum], *pertaining to war, military.*
bellum, -ī, n., *war.*
bene [bonus], adv., *well.*
benīgnē, adv., *kindly, courteously.*
benīgnitās, -ātis, f., *kindness.*
Bessi, -ōrum, m., a Thracian tribe.
bēstia, -ae, f., *a beast.*
bibō, -ere, bibi, ——, *drink.*
bidens, -ntis [bi-dens], m., *pitchfork.*
bīmus, -a, -um, *lasting two years.*
bipartītō, adv., *in two divisions.*
bis, adv., *twice.* [*sive.*
blandus, -a, -um, *winning, persua-*
bona, n., plur. of **bonus,** *good things; goods, property.*
Boreas, -ae, m., *Boreas, the north wind.*
bōs, bovis (gen. plur. **bovum** or **boum,** dat. **bōbus** or **būbus**), m. or f., *ox, cow.*
braccae, -ārum, f., *breeches.*
bracchium, -ī, n., *arm.*
brevis, -e, *brief, short, small.*

C

cacūmen, -inis, n., *summit, head.*
Cācus, -ī, m., *Cacus* (a giant).
cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsūrus, *fall.*
caedēs, -is [caedō], f., *slaughter.*
caedō, -ere, cecīdī, caesus, *cut; kill.*
caelestis, -e, *celestial, heavenly, of heaven;* **caelestēs,** plur., *the gods.*
caelum, -ī, n., *sky, heavens.*
Caesar, -aris, m., *Cæsar;* the title of the emperor.

calamitās, -ātis, f., *disaster defeat, calamity.*
calcar, -āris, n., *spur.*
calefaciō (or **calfaciō**), -ere, -fēcī, -factus (calidus, faciō), *heat.*
callidus, -a, -um, *shrewd, experienced.*
calx, calcis, f., *heel, hoof.*
campus, -ī, m., *plain, field.*
candidus, -a, -um, *white, glistening.*
canities, -ēī [cānus], f., *whiteness, grey hair, greyness.*
canō, -ere, cecinī, ——, *sing, chant, predict, foretell.*
caper, -prī, m., *goat.*
capillus, -ī, m., *hair.* [*tain.*
capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus, *take, con-*
Capitolium, -ī, n., *the Capitol* (at Rome).
capra, -ae, f., *goat, she-goat.*
captīvus, -ī, m., *captive.*
caput, capitis, n., *head, capital* (city).
carmen, -inis, n., *song, incantation.*
carpentum, -ī, n., *chariot.*
carpō, -ere, carpsī, carptus, *pluck, tear.*
carrus, -ī, m., *wagon.*
Carseolānus, -ā, -um, *of Carseolum.*
cārus, -a, -um, *dear.*
casa, -ae, f., *hut.*
castellum, -ī, n., *fortress.*
Casticus, -ī, m., *Casticus,* a leader of the Sequani in Gaul.
castra, -ōrum, n., plur., *camp.*
cāsus, -ūs, m., *fall, chance, accident, misfortune.*
causa, -ae, f., *cause, reason;* **causā** (after a genitive), *for the sake of.*
caveō, -ēre, cāvī, cautus, *guard against, be on one's guard, avoid.*
cavus, -a, -um, *hollow.*
cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessūrus, *withdraw, yield, surrender.*
Celer, -eris, m., *Celer,* a Roman knight.
celer, celeris, celere, *swift, quick.*
celeritās, -ātis [celer], f., *swiftness.*
celeriter [celer], adv., *swiftly.*
cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *conceal.*
Celtae, -ārum, m., *the Celts,* inhabiting a part of Gaul.
cēnseō, -ēre, -uī, -sus, *enumerate, reckon, think, propose.*
cēnsus, -ūs [cēnseō], m., *census, list.*
ntum, indecl. num. adj., *hundred.*
centuria, -ae, f., *a century,* a division of a hundred people.
cēra, -ae, f., *wax.*
Cereālis, -e, *of Ceres.*
Cere -eris, f., *Ceres,* goddess of corn; *corn.*
certāmen, -inis [certō], n., *contest, dispute.*
certē [certus], adv., *certainly.*
certō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *contend, strive.*
certus, -a, -um, *certain.*
Cicerō, -ōnis, m., *Cicero,* the famous orator at Rome.
cieō, -ēre, cīvī, citus, *incite, urge on.*
cingō, -ere, cīnxī, cīnctus, *surround.*
circa, prep. and adv., *around, about.*
circiter, adv., *about, nearly.*
circum, prep. with acc., *around.*
circum-dō, -dare, -dedī, -datus, *place around, surround.*
circum-sistō, -ere, -stetī, ——, *stand around, surround.*
circum-spiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus, *look round on, survey.*
circus, -ī, m., *circle, race-course, ring;* **Circus Māximus,** the *Circus Maximus* at Rome, with room for a hundred thousand spectators.
citerior, -ius, adj., comp., *hither, nearer* (186, 1).
citrā, prep. with acc., *on this side.*
cīvis, -is, m. or f., *citizen.*
cīvitās, -ātis [cīvis], f., *citizenship.*
clādēs, -is, f., *slaughter.*

clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *shout.*
clāmor, -ōris, m., *shout, cry, clamour.*
clangor, -ōris, m., *noise, uproar.*
clārus, -a, -um, *clear, famous, loud* (noise).
classis, -is, f., *class* (of people), *fleet* (of ships).
claudicō, -are, *limp.*
claudō, -ere, -sī, -sus, *close, shut.*
clāva, -ae, f., *club.*
cliēns, -tis, m., *client, vassal.*
cloāca, -ae, f., *sewer, drain.*
co-eō [cum+eo], -īre, -iī, -iturus, *assemble.*
coepī, -isse, coeptus (not found in the present system, 99, *b.*), *began.*
coërceō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *restrain.*
cōgitātiō, -ōnis, f., *thought, meditation.*
cōgnātus, -ā, -um, *kindred, related.*
cōgnōmen, -inis [cōgnōscō], n., *surname, name.*
cōgnōscō, -ere, cōgnōvī, cōgnitus, *learn;* **cōgnōvī,** *I have learned* or *I know.*
cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coactus [cum+agō], *compel.*
cohors, cohortis, f., *farm-yard; cohort,* a division of the legion.
co-hortor, -ārī, -ātus, *exhort, urge.*
col-labefactō, -āre, *shake.*
Collatīnus, -ī, m., *Collatinus.*
col-ligō -ere, -lēgī, -lectus, *collect.*
collis, -is, m., *hill.*
colō, -ere, coluī, cultus, *cultivate, cherish, worship.*
colōna, -ae, f., *country woman.*
colōnia, -ae [colōnus], f., *colony.*
colōnus, -ī [colō], m., *tiller* (of the soil), *settler, colonist.*
color, -ōris, m., *colour.*
comes, -itis [cum-eō, itūrus], m. and f., *companion.*
comitās, -ātis, f., *courtesy, friendliness.*
comitium, -ī, n., *the comitium,* a place of assembly; plur., *assembly, the comitia.*
com-memorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *mention.*
com-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *commit, intrust; commence* (battle).
commoditās, -ātis, f., *convenience.*
com-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, *move, move greatly, disturb, alarm.*
commūniter, adv., *in common.*
commūtātiō, -ōnis, f., *a change.*
com-parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *get together, compare.*
com-periō, -īre, comperī, compertus, *find out, discover, learn.*
com-probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *approve, commend.*
con-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, *yield, give up to, grant.*
con-cīdō, -ere, cīdī, -cīsus [caedō], *cut down, kill.*
conciliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *win, conciliate.*
concilium, -ī, n., *council.*
concitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *arouse, excite.*
con-clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *cry out, shout, exclaim.*
concordia, -ae, f., *harmony, concord.*
con-crepō, -āre, -uī, -itus, *clash.*
con-currō, -ere, -currī (or -cucurrī), -cursus, *rush together, charge.*
concursus, -ūs [con-currō], m., *rush, charge, meeting.*
conditor, -ōris [condō], m., *founder.*
condō, -ere, condidī, conditus, *found, hide.*
con-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *bring together, lead, conduct.*
cōn-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *bring together, compare, bring, transfer.*
cōnfessiō, -ōnis, f., *confession.*

cōn-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [con-faciō], *complete, finish, wear out, exhaust.*

cōn-firmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [firmus], *strengthen, confirm, assure.*

con-flagrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *burn, be consumed.*

con-fugiō, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus, *fly, have recourse to.*

con-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus [iaciō], *throw, hurl.*

con-iungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus, *join together, unite.*

coniūnx, -iugis [coniungō], m. and f. (a married person), *husband, wife.*

coniūrātiō, -ōnis, f., *conspiracy.*

con-locō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *place, station.*

conloquium, -ī [conloquor], n., *conference, conversation.*

con-loquor, -ī, -locūtus sum, *talk together, confer.*

conplōrātiō, -ōnis, f., *wailing.*

cōn-scrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus, *write* (names) *together, enroll, enlist.*

cōn-secrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [sacer], *consecrate.*

cōn-sequor, -ī, -cūtus sum, *follow.*

cōnsēnsus, -ūs, m., *agreement, harmony, consent.*

cōnsertus, -a, -um, *joined, united* (in battle).

cōn-servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *save, preserve.*

cōn-sīdō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessus, *sit down, settle, encamp.*

cōnsilium, -ī, n., *plan, council, advice, discretion.*

con-sistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitūrus, *stand.*

cōn-sōlor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *console, cheer.*

cōnspectus, -ūs, m., *sight, view.*

cōnspicōr, -ārī, -ātus sum, *catch sight of, see.*

cōnstat, -āre, impers., *it is evident, it is agreed.*

cōn-stituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus [statuō], *erect, station, arrange, determine.*

con-stō, -āre, -stitī, *stand still.*

cōnsuēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētus, *become accustomed;* **cōnsuēvī**, *I have become accustomed,* or *am accustomed.*

cōnsul, -is, m., *consul.*

cōnsulō, -ere, -suluī, -sultus, *consult.*

cōnsultus, -a, -um, *wise, learned, experienced.*

cōn-sūmō, -ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptus, *consume.*

con-temnō, -ere, -tempsī, -temptus, *despise, disdain.*

contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus, *contend, strive, hasten, hurry on.*

contentiō, -ōnis [contendō], f., *effort, exertion.*

contentus, -a, -um, *contented.*

con-ticescō, -ere, -ticuī [taceō], *become silent.*

con-tineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus [teneō], *hold, restrain, hem in, bound.*

continenter, adv., *continually.*

contiō, -ōnis, f., *assembly, meeting, speech.*

con-trahō, -ere, -trāxī, -tractus, *bring together, heap upon, bring upon.*

cōnūbium, -ī, n., *marriage, wedlock.*

con-valescō, -ere, -valuī, *recover.*

con-vallis, -is, f., *valley, dell.*

con-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, *come together, meet.*

convenit, impers. with dat., *it is agreed.*

conventus, -ūs [con-veniō], m., *meeting, assembly, agreement.*

con-vertō, -ere, -tī, -sus, *turn.*

con-vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *call together, summon.*

co-orior, -īrī, -ortus sum, *arise, spring up, break out.*
cōpia, -ae, f., *supply, abundance;* plur., *forces, troops.*
cornū, -ūs, n., *horn, wing* (of army).
corpus, -oris, n., *body.*
cor-rumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus, *corrupt, bribe.*
cor-ruō, -ere, -uī, ——, *fall.*
cortex, -icis, m. and f., *bark* (of tree).
cotīdiē, adv., *daily.*
crābro, -ōnis, m., *hornet.*
Crassus, -ī, m., *Crassus,* one of Cæsar's officers in Gaul.
crēber, -bra, -brum, *frequent, repeated.*
crēdō, -ere, crēdidī, crēditus, *trust to, trust, believe.*
creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *create, elect.*
crēscō, -ere, crēvī, crētus, *increase, grow larger.*
crīmen, -inis, n., *accusation.*
crīnis, -is, m., *hair.*
crūdēliter, adv., *cruelly.*
culpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *blame.*
cultus, -a, -um [colō], *cultivated.*
cum, prep. with abl., *with.*
cum, conj., *when; since, as; although.*
cūnae, -ārum, f., *cradle, nest.*
cunctus, -a, -um, *all.*
cupidē [cupidus], adv., *eagerly.*
cupiditās, -ātis [cupidus], f., *eagerness, desire.*
cupidō, -inis, f., *eagerness.*
cupidus, -a, -um [cupiō], *eager, desirous.* [*wish, long for.*
cupiō, -ere, cupīvī, cupītus, *desire,*
cūr, adv., *why.*
cūra, -ae, f., *care.*
Curēs, -ium, plur., f., *Cures,* the chief town of the Sabines.
cūria, -ae, f., *senate-house;* **cūriae,** plur., *curiae, companies, divisions* (of the early Romans).
Cūriātiī, -ōrum, m., *the Curiatii,* the three brothers who fought with the three Horatii.
cursus, -ūs [currō], m., *running, course, speed.*
curūlis, -e, *official;* **sella curūlis,** the *official* or *curule chair.*
curvus, -a, -um, *curved.*
custōdia, -ae [custōs], f., *guard, watch, protection, care.*
custōdiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus [custōs], *watch, guard, protect.*
custōs, -ōdis, m., *watch, guard, keeper, protector.*

D

damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *condemn.*
damnōsus, -a, -um, *destructive.*
dē, prep, with abl., *about, concerning, for, with reference to; from, down from.*
dea, -ae, f., *goddess.*
dēbeō, -ēre, dēbuī, dēbitus, *owe, ought, is due.*
decem, num. adj., *ten.*
dē-cernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētus, *decide, decree, determine.*
decimus, -a, -um, num. adj., *tenth.*
decus, -oris, n., *beauty, honor.*
dē-cutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussus, *strike off.*
dēditiō, -ōnis [dēdō], f., *surrender.*
dē-dō, -ere, dēdidī, dēditus, *give over;* with **sē,** *surrender.*
dēfatīgātus, -a, -um, *wearied.*
dēfendō, -ere, -dī, -sus, *defend.*
dē-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, --fectus [faciō], *fail, revolt.*
dē-fīgō, -ere, -fixī, -fixus, *insert.*
dēgener, -eris, adj., *unworthy, degenerate.*
dē-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus [iaciō], *throw down, cast down;* **dēiectus,** *disappointed.*
deinde, adv., *then, next, thereafter.*

dē-lābor, -ī, -lāpsus sum, *glide down, descend.*
dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, *destroy.*
dē-līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *deliberate, consider.*
dē-ligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus [dē-legō], *select, choose.*
dē-liquescō, -ere, -licuī, ——, *melt.*
dēmissus, -a, -um, *sent down, let down, swooping down.*
dēmum, adv., *at last.*
dēnique, adv., *at last.*
dē-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *put away.*
dēprecātor, -ōris, m., *mediator.*
dē-scendō, -ere, -dī, -sus, *descend, plunge.*
dē-serō, -ere, -uī, -sertus, *desert.*
dē-sīgnō, -āre, āvī, -ātus, *designate, indicate, trace.*
dē-spiciō, -ere, -spēxī, -spectus, *look down upon, despise.*
dē-sum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, *be wanting, fail.*
dē-terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *frighten from ; deter, hinder.*
deus, -ī, m., *a god.*
dē-vorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *gulp down.*
dexter, -tra, -trum, *right.*
dextra, -ae, f., *right hand.*
Diāna, -ae, f., *Diana,* a goddess.
dīcō, -ere, dixī, dictus, *say.*
dī-dūcō, -ere, -duxī, -ductus, *lead apart, part, divide.*
diēs, -ēī, m. and f. (217), *day.*
difficultās, -ātis, f., *difficulty.*
digitus, -ī, m., *finger.*
dignus, -a, -um, *worthy.*
dīligenter [dīligēns], adv., *carefully, attentively.*
dīligentia, -ae [dīligēns], f., *carefulness, earnestness, diligence.*
dīligō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus, *esteem.*
dīmicātiō, -ōnis [dīmicō], f., *fight, struggle, contest.*
dīmicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *fight, contend.*
dīrus, -a, -um, *dreadful.*
dis-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, *withdraw.*
discō, -ere, didicī, discitūrus, *learn.*
discordia, -ae, f., *discord, dissension.*
discordō, -āre, ——, ——, *disagree, quarrel.*
discrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus, *designate, form.*
dis-pār, -is, *unequal, ill-matched.*
dissidium, -ī, n., *dissension.*
dis-similis, -e, *dissimilar, unlike.*
dis-simulō, -are, -āvī, -ātus, *keep secret.*
di-stō, -āre, ——, ——, *be distant.*
dis-tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, *distribute, assign, turn over to.*
diū, adv., *for a long time, long.*
dīversus, -a, -um, *turned away, distant.*
dīves, -itis, adj., *rich.*
Dīviciācus, -ī, m., *Diviciacus,* leader among the Hædui in Gaul.
Dīvicō, -ōnis, m., *Divico,* a leader among the Helvetii in Gaul.
dīvidō, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsus, *divide.*
dīvīnus, -a, -um, *divine.*
dīvitiae, -ārum, f., plur., *riches.*
dō, dare, dedī, datus, *give.*
doceō, -ēre, -uī, -tus, *teach, show.*
doleō, -ēre, -uī, dolitūrus, *grieve.*
dolor, -ōris [dolcō], m., *grief.*
dolus, -ī, m., *deceit, trick.*
domina, -ae, f., *mistress.*
dominus, -ī, m., *master, owner.*
domus, -ūs or -ī, f. (210, *b*, *c*), *house.*
dōnec, conj., *until.*
dōnum, -ī, n., *gift.*
dormiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *sleep.*
dubitātiō, -ōnis [dubitō], f., *doubt, hesitation.*
dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *doubt hesitate.*

dubius, -a, -um, *doubtful, uncertain.*
ducentī, -ae, -a, num. adj., *two hundred.*
dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead, draw.*
dulcis, -e, *sweet.*
Dulichium, -ī, n., *Dulichium,* an island near Ithaca.
Dulichius, -a, -um, *of Dulichium.*
dum, conj., *as long as, while, until.*
Dumnorīx, -īgis, m., *Dumnorix,* a Hæduan nobleman, brother of Diviciacus.
duo, -ae, -o, num. adj., *two.*
duodecim, num. adj., *twelve.*
duodēquadrāgēnsimus, -a, -um, num. ord. adj., *thirty-eighth.*
duplicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *double.*
dūrus, -a, -um, *hard, strong.*
dux, ducis, m. or f., *leader.*

E

ē, see **ex.**
ēducō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *bring up, educate.*
ē-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead out, draw out, take away.*
ef-ferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātus [ex-ferō], *bring out, carry out, put forth.*
ef-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [ex-faciō], *bring about, cause, make* (something) *be.*
ef-fugiō, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus [ex-fugiō], *flee from, escape.*
ef-fundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsus [ex-fundō], *pour out;* **sē effundere,** *to overflow.*
egeō, -ēre, -uī, *be in want of.*
ēgregius, -a, -um, *extraordinary, excellent.*
ēligō, -ere, ēlēgī, ēlectus, *choose.*
ē-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *send out, throw;* **vōcem ēmittō,** *utter a sound.*
enim, conj., postpositive (435, n. 6), *for.*
ē-niteō, -ēre, -uī, ——, *shine forth, be conspicuous.*
e-nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *announce, report.*
eō, īre, īvī or iī, itūrus, *go.*
eō, adv., *to that place, there.*
epistula, -ae, f., *letter.*
eques, -itis [equus], m., *horseman, knight;* plur., *cavalry.*
equitātus, -ūs [eques], m. (*body of horsemen*), *cavalry.*
equus, -ī, m., *horse.*
ergō, adv., *therefore, then.*
errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *wander.*
ērudiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *teach, instruct, educate.*
et, conj., *and;* (rarely) *also;* **et . . . et,** *both . . . and.*
etiam, adv., *even.*
Etrūria, -ae, f., *Etruria,* a country of Italy.
Eurus, -ī, m., *Eurus,* the east wind.
ē-vādō, -ere, -sī, -sus, *come out, turn out; evade.*
ē-vellō, -ēre, -vellī, -volsus, *uproot, tear out.*
ē-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, *come out, turn out, happen.*
ē-vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *call out, summon.*
ex, or **ē** [**ex** before a vowel], prep. with abl., *out of, from, of; in accordance with, following from; after.*
exāmen, -inis, n., *swarm* (of bees).
ex-cidō, -ere, -cidī, -cessūrus, *fall out, pass away, perish.*
ex-cipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus [capiō], *receive; welcome.*
excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *excite, arouse.*
excursiō, -ōnis [ex-currō], f., *raid.*
ex-cutiō, -ere, excussī, excussus [ex-quatiō], *shake out, arouse.*
exemplum, -ī, n., *example, pattern.*

ex-eō, -īre, -iī, -itus, *go out.*
exerceō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *exercise.*
exercitus, -ūs [exerceō], m. (*a trained body of men*), *army.*
exēsus, -a, -um [ex-edō], *eaten out, hollow.*
ex-hauriō, -īre, -hausī, -haustus, *draw out, drain, exhaust.*
exiguus, -a, -um, *small, tiny.*
ex-īstimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex-aestimō], *estimate, reckon, consider, think.*
ex-pandō, -ere, -pandī, -pansus, *spread out.*
experior, -īrī, expertus sum, *try.*
explōrātor, -ōris [explōrō], m., *explorer ; spy, scout.*
ex-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *put out, expose.*
ex-poscō, -ere, -poposcī, ——, *ask, entreat, demand.*
ex-pūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (*fight it out*), *take* (a town) *by storm, capture.*
exsanguis, -e, *bloodless, lifeless.*
exsilium, -ī, n., *exile.*
ex-spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *look out for, wait for, expect.*
ex-spīrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *breathe out, expire, die.*
exsul, -is, m. and f., *an exile.*
exsulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *be* or *live in exile.*
exsultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *exult, rejoice.*
extrā, adv., or prep. with acc., *outside, outside of, beyond.*
extrēmus, -a, -um, *extreme, farthest* (186, 2), *end of.*
exul, -ulis, m., *exile.*

F

faba, -ae, f., *bean.*
faber, -brī, m., *carpenter, workman.*
fābula, -ae, f., *story, fable.*
faciēs, -ēī, f., *face, appearance.*
faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus, *make, do, build.*
factum, -ī, n., *deed.*
faenum, -ī, n., *hay.*
falsus, -a, -um, *false, deceitful.*
falx, -cis, f., *sickle.*
fāma, -ae, f., *report, tradition, reputation, fame.*
famēs, -is, f., *hunger.*
fānum, -ī, n., *shrine, sanctuary, temple.*
fascis, -is, m., *bundle ;* plur., *the fasces,* a bundle of rods with an axe carried before the magistrates as an emblem of authority.
fātum, -ī, n., *fate.*
Faustulus, -ī, m., *Faustulus,* a shepherd.
faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautūrus, *favour, support.*
favus, -ī, m., *honey-comb.*
fēlēs, -is, f., *cat.*
fēmina, -ae, f., *woman.*
fenestra, -ae, f., *window.*
fera, -ae, f., *wild beast, animal.*
ferāx, -ācis [ferō], *fertile, productive.*
ferē, adv., postpositive (435, n. 6), *nearly, almost, generally.*
feriō, -īre, *strike, kick.*
fermē, adv., *nearly.*
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *bring, bear, endure, carry off.*
ferōciter [ferōx], adv., *fiercely.*
ferōx, -ōcis, *fierce ; ferocious.*
ferrum, -ī, n., *iron, steel ; sword.*
ferus, -a, -um, *fierce, wild ;* as noun, *a wild beast.*
fētiālis, -e, *fetial,* pertaining to the college of priests who declared war and peace, etc.
fictilis, -e [fingō], *fashioned of clay, earthen.*
fidēlis, -e, *faithful.*
Fīdēnae, -ārum, f., plur., *Fidenæ,* a city.
Fidēnās, -ātis, m., *an inhabitant of*

fidēs, -eī, f., *faith, trust, fidelity, trustworthiness, assurance.*
fīdūcia, -ae, f., *confidence, assurance.*
fīdus, -a, -um, *faithful, trusty.*
figūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *fashion.*
fīlia, -ae, f., *daughter.*
fīlius, -ī, m., *son.*
fīnis, -is, m., *limit, end, boundary;* plur., *territory.*
fīnitimus, -a, -um [fīnis], *near, neighbouring;* plur., *neighbours.*
fīō, fierī, factus sum (supplies pass. to **faciō**), *be made, be done, become, happen* (484).
fīrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [fīrmus], *strengthen.*
fīrmus, -a, -um, *strong.*
flāgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *demand, entreat.*
flāmen, -inis, m., *priest.*
flamma, -ae, f., *flame.*
flāvus, -a, -um, *yellow.*
fleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētūrus, *weep.*
flōs, flōris, m., *flower.*
fluctus, -ūs [fluō], m., *wave.*
fluitō, -āre, -āvī, —— [fluō], *float.*
flūmen, -inis [fluō], n., *river, stream.*
fluō, -ere, flūxī, fluxūrus, *flow.*
focus, -ī, m., *hearth.* [*ful.*
foedus, -a, -um, *foul, horrible, shame-*
foedus, foederis, n., *treaty.*
fontanus, -a, -um [fons], *spring.*
fore, for **futūrum esse** (480).
forma, -ae, f., *shape, appearance.*
forte, adv., *by chance.*
fortis, -e, *brave.*
fortiter [fortis], adv., *bravely.*
fortūna, -ae, f., *fortune, good fortune.*
forum, -ī, n., *the forum,* the great open square at Rome, containing the market-place and the courts of law.
forus, -ī, m., *row of seats.*
fossa, -ae, f., *ditch.*
foveō, -ēre, fōvī, fōtus, *warm, cherish.*
fragor, -ōris, m., *crash, roar.*
frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctus, *break.*
frāter, -tris, m., *brother.*
frāternus, -a, -um [frāter], *of a brother, fraternal.*
fraudō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *cheat.*
fraus, fraudis, f., *fraud.*
fremō, -ere, -uī, -itūrus, *roar.*
fretum, -ī, n., *strait, sea.*
frīgus, -oris, n., *cold.*
frons, frondis, f., *foliage.*
frons, frontis, f., *forehead, head.*
frūmentum, -ī, n., *grain.*
fruor, -ī, frūctus sum, *enjoy.*
frustum, -ī, n., *bit, piece.*
[frux,] frūgis, f. (more common in plur.), *fruits of the earth.*
Fufetius, -ī, m., *Fufetius,* an Alban general.
fuga, -ae, f., *flight.*
fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, *flee, escape, avoid.* [*deserter.*
fugitivus, -ī [fugiō], m., *fugitive,*
fulgeō, -ēre, fulsī, ——, *shine, glitter.*
fulgur, -uris, n., *lightning.*
fulmen, -inis [fulgeō], n., *lightning, thunderbolt.*
fūmus, -ī, m., *smoke.*
fundāmen, -inis, n., *foundation.*
fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsus, *pour, pour out, scatter, rout.*
fūnereus, -a, -um, *funereal.*
fungor, -ī, fūnctus sum, *perform.*
fungus, -ī, m., *mushroom.*
fūnus, -eris, n., *funeral, corpse.*
furiōsus, -a, -um, *mad, raging.*
furtum, -ī, n., *theft.*
futūrus, -a, -um [sum], *about to be, future.*

G

Gabiī, -ōrum, plur., m., *Gabii,* a town of Latium.

Gabīnus, -ī, m., *an inhabitant of Gabii.*
Gabīnus, -a, -um, *of Gabii.*
galea, -ae, *f., helmet.*
Gallia, -ae, f., *Gaul.*
gallīna, -ae, *a hen.*
Gallus, -ī, m., *a Gaul.*
gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus sum (487), *rejoice.*
gaudium, -ī [gaudeō], n., *joy.*
gelidus, -a, -um, *cold.*
gelū, -ūs, n., *frost.*
geminātus, -a, -um, *doubled.*
geminus, -ī, m., *twin-born, twin.*
gemitus, -ūs, m., *lamentation.*
gemma, -ae, f., *gem.*
gemmātus, -a, -um, *set with gems, jewelled.*
gena, -ae, f., *cheek.*
Genava, -ae, f., *Geneva,* a town of the Allobroges.
gener, -erī, m., *son-in-law.*
genitor, -ōris [gignō], m., *father.*
gēns, -tis, f., *tribe, nation, clan, family.*
genu, -ūs, n., *knee.*
genus, -eris, n., *kind, class, race.*
Germānus, -ī, m., *a German.*
gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus, *manage, do, wage* (war) ; *wear, carry.*
Getae, -ārum, m., a tribe living on the Danube.
Geticus, -a, -um, *Getic, of the Getae.*
glaciēs, -ēī, f., *ice.*
gladius, -ī, m., *sword.*
glōria, -ae, f., *reputation, glory, fame.* [*boast.*
glōrior, -ārī, -ātus sum [glōria], *gradus,* -ūs, m., *step, grade.*
Graecia, -ae, f., *Greece.*
grandis, -e, *big, large, great.*
grātia, -ae [grātus], f., *favour, influence ;* plur., *thanks, gratitude.*
grātulor, -ārī, -ātus [grātus,] *congratulate.*
grātus, -a, -um, *grateful, pleasing.*
gravis, -e, *heavy, severe.*
graviter [gravis], adv., *heavily, severely.*
gutta, -ae, f., *drop.*
guttur, -uris, n., *throat.*

H

habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *have, hold, consider.* [*inhabit.*
habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *dwell, live,*
Haeduī, -ōrum, m., *the Hædui,* a tribe of Gaul.
haedus, -ī, m., *goat, kid.*
hāmus, -ī, m., *hook.*
hasta, -ae, f., *spear.*
Hastīlia, -ae, f., *Hastilia,* the name of the senate-house built by Hostilius.
haud, adv., *not.*
haurīō, -īre, hausī, haustus, *drink* (partic. as noun, *a draught*).
Helvētiī, -ōrum, m., *the Helvetii,* a powerful tribe in Gaul.
Helvētius, -a, -um, *Helvetian.*
herba, -ae, f., *grass, plant.*
hīberna, -ōrum, n. plur., *winter quarters.*
hīc, haec, hōc, demons. pron., *this* (252); as pers. pron., *he, she, it.*
hīc, adv., *here, in this place.*
hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [hiems], *pass the winter, winter.*
hiems, -mis, f., *winter.*
hilaris, -e, *merry.*
hinc, adv., *hence, from here ;* **hinc . . . hinc,** *here . . . there,* or *now . . . now.*
hirundo, -inis, f., *swallow.*
Hister, -tri, m., *the Danube.*
homō, -inis, m. and f., *a person, man.*
Horātiī, -ōrum, m., *the Horatii,* the brothers who fought the Curiatii.

Horātius, -ī, m., *Horatius,* a man's name.
horrendus, -a, -um, *horrible.*
horror, -ōris, m., *horror.*
hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *exhort, encourage.*
hortus, -ī, m., *garden.*
hospes, -itis, m., *host, guest, stranger*
hostis, -is, m. and f., *enemy.*
Hostius Hostīlius, -ī, m., *Hostius Hostilius,* who defeated the Sabines.
hūmānus, -a, -um, *human.*
humilis, -e, *low, lowly.*
humus, -ī, f., *ground, soil.*

I

iaceō, -ēre, -uī, ——, *lie* (low), *lie* (slain).
iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactus, *throw, hurl.*
iactō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *toss about, talk about.*
iam, adv., *now, already, at last;* **nōn iam,** *no longer.*
Iāniculum, -ī, n., *the Janiculum,* a hill of Rome (not one of the seven) west of the Tiber.
iānua, -ae, f., *gate, door.*
Iānus, -ī, m., *Janus,* the god of doors, passages, etc.
Iānus, -ī, m., *the temple of Janus.*
ibi, adv., *there, in that place.*
īcō, ere, īcī, ictus, *strike, form* (an alliance), *make* (a treaty).
ictus, -ūs [īcō], m., *blow, stroke.*
īdem, eadem, idem, demons. pron. (246), *the same.*
Īdūs, -uum, plur., f., *the Ides.*
igitur, conj., *therefore, then.*
i-gnōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *be ignorant of.*
īgnis, -is, m., *fire.*
Iliacus, -a, -um, *Trojan.*
ille, illa, illud, demons. pron., *that;* as pers. pron. *he, she, it* (254).
illīc, adv., *there.*
imāgo, -inis, f., *image, recollection.*
imbēcillus, -a, -um, ***weak.***
imber, -bris, m., *rain.*
imbuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, *imbue, affect.*
im-manis, -e, *huge, vast, dreadful.*
impedīmentum, -ī [impediō], n., *hindrance;* plur., *baggage, baggage-trains.*
impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *impede, hinder.*
imperātor, -ōris [imperō], m., *commander, general* (in chief).
imperītus, -a, -um, *unskilled, ignorant.*
imperium, -ī [imperō], n., *command, rule, supreme authority.*
imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *command, rule, order.*
impetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *gain a request, prevail.*
impetus, -ūs, m., *attack; force, fury.*
im-pius, -a, -um, *wicked.*
implicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, or -uī, -itus, *implicate, involve, fall* (sick), *be disabled* (by sickness).
im-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *place on.*
im-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *bring in, import.*
imprūdentia, -ae, f., *want of foresight, indiscretion, imprudence.*
īmus, -a, -um, *lowest* (with noun, *the bottom of . . .*).
in, prep. with abl., *in, on, in the time of;* with the acc., *into, to, with a view to, for.*
inānis, -e, *empty, useless, vain.*
incendium, -ī [incendō], n., *fire.*
incendō, -ere, -dī, -cēnsus, *set fire to, burn, inflame, excite.*
in-certus, -a, -um, *uncertain.*
inchoō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *begin, commence.*

incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *incite.*
inclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *cry out, call upon.*
inclīnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *incline, waver, give way.*
inclitus, -a, -um, *celebrated.*
incola, -ae, f., *inhabitant.*
incolō, -ere, -uī, *dwell, live in, inhabit.*
in-crēdibilis, -e, *incredible.*
increpō, -āre, -uī, -itus, *sound, rattle; upbraid, rebuke.*
incursiō, -ōnis [in-currō], f., *incursion, raid.*
inde, adv., *from there, thereupon, thence, from that time.*
index, -icis, m., *informer; index, sign.*
indicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [index], *indicate, declare.*
indīcō, -ere, -dīxī, -dictus, *declare* (war).
indignāns, -antis, *indignant.*
in-dignus, -a, -um, *unworthy, undeserving.*
in-docilis, -e, *untaught.*
indolēs, -is, f., *character, disposition, quality.*
in-dūcō, -ere, -duxī, -ductus, *induce, lead on, influence, apply.*
indulgentia, -ae, f., *indulgence, fondness, favour.*
in-dūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *harden.*
ineō, -īre, -iī, -itus, *go into, enter, begin, form* (a plan), *find* (a way).
in-ermis, -e [arma] (267, *b*), *unarmed.*
in-fāmia, -ae, f., *disgrace.*
īnfāns, -āntis, m., *infant, child.*
īn-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *bring upon, make upon, inflict.*
īnfēstus, -a, -um, *hostile.*
īn-firmus, -a, -um, *weak.*
īn-fit [in-fiō], impers., *begins, speaks.*
īn-fluō, -ere, -flūxī, -fluxūrus, *flow in.*
ingenium, -ī, n., *disposition, talents.*
ingēns, -entis, *great, huge, terrible.*
ingenuus, -a, -um, *free-born, delicate.*
in-gredior, -ī, -gressus sum [in-gradior], *advance, enter, undertake.*
inhiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *gaze at, long for, be eager for.*
in-hūmānus, -a, -um, *inhuman.*
in-imīcus, -a, -um [amīcus], *unfriendly.*
initium, -ī [ineō], n., *beginning.*
iniūria, -ae, f., *wrong, injustice, injury.*
iniūstus, -a, -um, *unjust.*
inopia, -ae, f., *want, lack.*
inquit, defect. verb, *he says,* used after one or two words of a direct quotation.
īn-sequor, -ī, -secūtus sum, *follow after, pursue.*
īnsīgnis, -e, *distinguished.*
īnsolenter, adv., *insolently, haughtily.*
īn-stituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus [in-statuō], *institute, appoint, set up, establish; train.*
īnstitūtiō, -ōnis [īn-stituō], f., *arrangement, custom, training.*
īnstitūtum, -ī [īn-stituō], n., *institution, custom.*
īnstruō, -ere, -ūxī, -ūctus, *draw up, arrange.*
īnsula, -ae, f., *island.*
in-sum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *be in, be on.*
integer, -gra, -grum, *unimpaired, fresh.*
intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus, *know, understand.*
inter, prep. with acc., *between, among.*
inter-clūdō, -ere, -sī, -sus [claudō], *shut off, block up, intercept, hinder.*
inter-dum, adv., *sometimes.*

intereā, adv., *meanwhile.*
interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [faciō], *kill.*
interim, adv., *meanwhile, in the meantime.*
interimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēmptus, *kill.*
interpres, -etis, m. and f., *interpreter.*
inter-rēgnum, -ī, n., *interregnum.*
inter-vallum, -ī, n., *interval.*
introrsus [intro-versus], adv., *inwards.*
intus, adv., *within.*
in-validus, -a, -um, *weak.*
in-vehō, -ere, -vēxī, -vectus, *carry in;* in pass., *be carried on, borne on; ride.*
in-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, *come upon, find, invent, discover.*
invidia, -ae, f., *envy, greed, jealousy, criticism.*
in-volvō, -ere, -vī, -volūtus, *wrap up.*
ipse, ipsa, ipsum, demons. adj. and pronoun, *self, very* (256 *a–d*).
īra, -ae, f., *anger, wrath.*
īrātus, -a, -um, *angry, enraged.*
irrītō, āre, -āvī, -ātus, *incite, stir up, irritate.*
is, ea, id, demons. pron., *this, that;* as pers. pron., *he, she, it* (245, 248).
iste, ista, istud, demons. pron., *that* (255).
ita, adv., *so, thus;* **ita . . . ut,** *so . . . that,* or *as to.*
Ītalia, -ae, f., *Italy.*
Ītalus, -ī, m., *an inhabitant of Italy.*
ita-que, conj., *and so, therefore.*
item, adv., *likewise, also.*
iter, itineris, n., *road, route, march, course.*
iterum, adv., *a second time, again.*
Īthacē, -ēs, f., *Ithaca,* the home of Ulysses.
iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iūssus, *order, bid.*
iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *judge, decide, consider.*
iugum, -ī, n., *yoke, yoke of oxen.*
iūmentum, -ī [for iugmentum], n., *yoke-animal, beast of burden.*
iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūnctus, *join, unite.*
Iuppiter, Iovis, m., *Jupiter,* the supreme divinity of the Romans.
iūs, iūris, n., *right, justice, law.*
iussū, abl. only, *by order.*
iussum, -ī [iubeō], n., *command.*
iūstitia, -ae, f., *justice.*
iūstus, -a, -um, *just, regular.*
iuvenca, -ae, f., *cow, heifer.*
iuvenis, -e, *young;* as noun, *young man, youth.*
iuventūs, -ūtis [iuvenis], f., *a body of young men, youth.*
iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtus, *help, aid.*

L

L. = Lūcius, -ī, m., *Lucius.*
Labiēnus, -ī, m., *Labienus,* Cæsar's lieutenant.
labor, -ōris, m., *labor, hardship.*
lābor, -ī, lapsus, *glide, slip, fall.*
labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *labor, work; suffer from.*
lacessō, -ere, -sīvī, -sītus, *provoke, attack, assail.*
lacrima, -ae, f., *a tear.*
lacteo, -ēre, *suck, be a suckling.*
lacus, -ūs, m., *lake.*
laetus, -a, -um, *glad, joyous.*
laevus, -a, -um, *on the left.*
lāmina, -ae, f., *plate* (of metal).
laniō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tear in pieces.*
lapideus, -a, -um [lapis], *of stone, stony.*
lapis, -idis, m., *a stone.*
largītiō, -ōnis, f., *lavish giving, bribery.*
lascīvus, -a, -um, *playful, mischievous.*

lateō, -ēre, -uī, ——, *lie hid.*
Latīnus, -ī, m., *Latinus*, a king in Latium.
Latīnus, -a, -um, *of Latium, Latin.*
Latium, -ī, n., *Latium*, a country of Italy.
latus, -eris, n., *side, flank.*
lātus, -a, -um, *wide, broad.*
laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [laus], *praise.*
laus, laudis, f., *praise.*
Lāvīnia, -ae, f., *Lavinia*, daughter of Latinus.
Lavīnium, -ī, n., *Lavinium*, a city founded by Æneas in honour of Lavinia.
lēgātiō, -ōnis, f., *embassy.*
lēgātus, -ī, m., *deputy, ambassador; lieutenant.*
legiō, -ōnis, f., *a legion.* [*read.*
legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus, *choose, select;*
lēnis, -e, *smooth, soft.*
lēnitās, -ātis [lēnis], f., *mildness, gentleness, lenity.*
leō, -ōnis, m., *lion.*
levis, -e, *light, unsubstantial.*
lēvis, -e, *smooth, bald.*
lēx, lēgis, f., *law, a stipulation, a (binding) agreement.*
libenter, adv., *willingly, gladly.*
liber, -brī, m., *book.*
līber, -era, -erum, *free.*
līberī, -ōrum, plur., m., *children* (64).
līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [līber], *free, liberate.*
lībertās, -ātis [līber], f., *liberty, freedom.*
Libycus, -a, -um, *Libyan, African.*
licet, -ēre, licuit or licitum est, *it is allowed, (one) may* (489).
lictor, -ōris, m., *a lictor*, an official attendant of a Roman magistrate.
līlium, -ī, n., *lily.*
līmus, -ī, m., *mud.*
Lingonēs, -um, plur., m., *Lingones*, a tribe of Gaul.
linō, -ere, līvī and lēvī, litus, *smear.*
linter, -tris, f., *a boat.*
liquidus, -a, -um, *liquid, pure.*
lītus, -oris, n., *shore, beach.*
lituus, -ī, m., *bugle, trumpet.*
locus, -ī, m., *place, position;* plur., n., **loca**, -ōrum.
longē [longus], adv., *long, far, by far, far away.*
longinquus, -a, -um, *long, long continued, long ago.*
longus, -a, -um, *long.*
loquax, -ācis, *talkative, twittering.*
loquor, -ī, locūtus sum, *speak, talk.*
Lūcius Tarquinius, -ī, m., *Lucius Tarquinius*, one of the kings of Rome.
Lucrētia, -ae, f., *Lucretia*, wife of Collatinus.
luctus, -ūs, m., *grief.*
lūdicrum, -ī, n., *sport, mockery.*
lūdus, -ī, m., *sport, game.*
lūmen, -inis, n., *light, a light.*
lūna, -ae, f., *moon.*
luō, -ēre, luī, *pay.*
lupa, -ae, f., *wolf, she-wolf.*
lupus, -ī, m., *wolf, he-wolf.*
lustrum, -ī, n., *a piece of five years.*
lutum, -ī, n., *mud.*
lūx, lūcis, f., *light, daylight, day.*

M

maculō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *spot, stain, soil.*
maereō, -ēre, *mourn.*
maestus, -a, -um, *sad, gloomy.*
magis, adv., *rather* (194).
magister, -trī, m., *master, director, leader.* [*officer.*
magistrātus, -ūs, m., *magistrate,*
magnificentia, -ae, f., *magnificence.*
māgnificus, -a, -um, *magnificent, splendid, lofty.*
magnitūdō, -inis [māgnus], f., *greatness, size, magnitude.*

māgnopere [abl. **māgno opere**, *with great labour*], adv., *very much, greatly, earnestly.*

māgnus, -a, -um, *great, large, big.*

male [malus], adv., *badly ;* with adj. or partic. = *not.*

male-dīcō, -ere, -dīxī, -dictus, *revile.*

maleficium, -ī, n., *harm, mischief.*

maleficus, -ī, m., *an evil-doer.*

mālō, mālle, māluī, —— [magis-volō], *wish rather, choose, prefer.*

malum, -ī, n., *pest, evil.*

malus, -a, -um, *bad.*

malva, -ae, f., *mallow.*

mandātum, -ī [mandō], n., *command.*

māne, indecl., n., *morning.*

maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, *wait, remain.*

mānēs, -ium, m. (pl. only), *ghosts, shades.*

Mānīlius, -ī, m., *Manilius*, a Roman family name.

Mānlius, -ī, m., *Manlius*, a Roman family name.

manus, -ūs, f., *hand ; a force* or *band* (of troops).

Mārcus, -ī, m., *Marcus*, a Roman personal name.

mare, -is, n., *sea.*

marmoreus, -a, -um, adj., *marble.*

Mārs, -tis, m., *Mars*, the god of war.

Martigena, -ae [Martem, gignō], m. and f., *child of Mars.*

māssa, -ae, f., *mass.*

māter, -trīs, f., *mother.*

māteria, -ae, f., *material, means.*

mātrimōnium, -ī [māter], n., *marriage, matrimony.*

mātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *hasten, make haste.*

Māvors, -ortis, m., *Mars*, the god of war.

māximē [māximus], adv., *mostly, most, especially.*

medius, -a, -um, *middle, midway, the middle of ;* as noun, *the middle.*

mel, mellis, n., *honey.*

memor, -oris, *mindful, remembering, desirous of.*

memoria, -ae [memor], f., *memory, record.*

mens, mentis, f., *mind.*

mensa, -ae, f., *table.*

mēnsis, -is, m., *a month.*

mercātor, -ōris, m., *merchant, trader.*

Mercurius, -ī, m., *Mercury*, the messenger of the gods.

mereor, -ērī, meritus sum, *merit, deserve.*

merum, -ī, n., *unmixed wine, wine.*

messis, -is, f., *harvest.*

mētior, -īrī, mensus sum, *measure, traverse.*

metō, -ere, messuī, messus, *mow, cut off.*

Mettius Curtius, -ī, m., *Mettius Curtius*, a Sabine chief.

metus, -ūs, m., *fear, dread.*

micō, -āre, micuī, ——, *flash, gleam, quiver.*

migrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *move, remove, migrate, go.*

mīles, -itis, m., *soldier.*

mīlitāris, -e [mīles], *military, warlike.*

mīlitia, -ae [mīles], f., *military service.*

mīlitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *serve as a soldier.*

mīlle, sing., indecl. num. adj., *a thousand ;* plur., noun, **mīlia**, -ium, n., *thousands.*

minae, -ārum, f. (plur. only), *threats.*

minax, -ācis, adj., *threatening.*

minimē, adv., *least.*

mīrābilis, -e [mīror], *wonderful, admirable.*

mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum, *wonder at, wonder ; admire.*

misceō, -ēre, -ui, mistus and mixtus, *mix.*
miser, -era, -erum, *pitiful, wretched, poor, miserable.*
mītigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [mītis], *soften, mitigate.*
mītio, -e, *soft, mild, gentle.*
mittō, -ere, mīsī, missus, *send.*
modo, adv., *only, merely; recently; now.*
modus, -ī, m., *manner, way.*
moenia, -ium, plur., n., *walls, fortifications.*
mōlēs, -is, f., *mass.*
mollis, -is, *soft, tender.*
moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *advise, warn.*
monimentum, -ī [moneō], n., *memorial, monument.*
monitum, -ī [moneō], n., *warning, suggestion.*
mōns, montis, m., *hill, mountain.*
monstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [moneō], *show.*
monstrum, -ī [moneō], n., *monster.*
mora, -ae, f., *delay.*
morbus, -ī, m., *disease, sickness.*
morior, morī, mortuus sum, *die.*
moror, -ārī, morātus, *delay.*
mors, -tis, f., *death.*
mortuus, -a, -um [morior], *dead.*
mōs, mōris, m., *habit, custom, disposition.*
mōtus, -ūs [moveō], m., *motion.*
moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *move, prepare;* in pass., *proceed.*
mox, adv., *soon.*
mūgītus, -ūs, m., *lowing.*
Mulciber, -eris or -erī, *Vulcan.*
mulier, -eris, f., *woman.*
multitūdō, -inis [multus], f., *multitude, great number; the people.*
multus, -a, -um, *much;* plur., *many.*
mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *fortify.*
mūnītiō, -ōnis [mūniō], f., *fortifying, fortification.*
mūnus, -eris, n., *duty, service; gift, entertainment.*
murmur, -uris, n., *murmur, moan.*
mūrus, -ī, m., *wall.*
mūs, mūris, m. and f., *mouse.*

N

naenia, -ae, f., *ditty, lullaby, charm.*
nam, conj., *for.*
nārrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *narrate, tell.*
nāscor, -ī, nātus sum, *be born.*
nāta, -ae [nascor], f., *daughter.*
nātus, -ī [nascor], m., *son.*
nauta, -ae, m., *sailor.*
nāvis, -is, f., *ship, vessel.*
-ne, enclitic, sign of question.
nē, conj., *lest, that not.*
nec, conj., short form of **neque** used before consonants, *and not; neither, nor.*
necesse, indecl. adj., *necessary, inevitable.*
necō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *kill.*
neglegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus, *neglect, overlook.*
negōtium, -ī, n., *business, trouble; instructions.*
nēmō, -inī, -inem (no gen. or abl.) [nē-homō], m., *no one, nobody.*
nemorōsus, -a, -um, *woody.*
nemus, -oris, n., *grove, wood.*
nepōs, -ōtis, m., *grandson.*
neque, conj. (shortened to **nec** before some consonants), *and not, neither;* **neque . . . neque**, *neither . . . nor.*
nēquīquam, adv., *in vain.*
ne-sciō, -īre, -ii, -ītūrus [sciō], *not to know.*
ne-scius, -a, -um [sciō], *ignorant, unconscious.*
nē-ve = **et nē.**
nex, necis, f., *death.*
niger, -gra, -grum, *black.*
nihil, or **nīl**, indecl., n., *nothing.*

nisi, conj., *if not, unless, except.*
niteō, -ēre, ——, ——, *shine, glisten.*
nītor, -ī, nīsus and nixus sum, *strive, labour, lean.*
niveus, -a, -um [nix], *snow-white.*
nix, nivis, f., *snow.*
nōbilis, -e, *well known, noble, excellent, high-born.*
nōbilitās, -ātis [nōbilis], f., *nobleness, excellence, nobility, fame.*
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —— [nōn-volō], *be unwilling.*
nōmen, -inis [nōscō], n. (that by which a thing is known), *name.*
nōn, adv., *not.*
nōn-dum, adv., *not yet.*
nōn-ne, see 56, 6 and *b.*
nōscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtus, *learn;* **nōvī,** *I have learned,* therefore *I know.*
noster, -tra, -trum, poss. adj., *our.*
notō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *mark.*
Notus, -ī, m., *Notus, the south wind.*
novemdiālis, -e, *of nine days, nine-day.*
noviens, adv. [novem], *nine times.*
novus, -a, -um, *new;* **novissimus,** *newest, latest, rear* (of army).
nox, noctis, f., *night.*
nūbēs, -is, f., *cloud.*
nūbō, -ere, nūpsī, nūptus, *marry.*
nūdus, -a, -um, *naked, bare.*
nūllus, -a, -um [nē-ullus], *not any, no, no one, none.*
Numa Pompilius, -ī, m., *Numa Pompilius,* the second king of Rome.
numerus, -ī, m., *number.*
Numitor, -ōris, m., *Numitor,* son of King Silvius.
numquam or **nunquam** [nē-um-quam], adv., *never.*
nunc, adv., *now.*
nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *announce, report.*
nūntius, -ī, m., *messenger, message.*
nūper, adv., *lately, recently.*
nūptiae, -ārum [nūbō], plur., f., *marriage rights, marriage.*
nūsquam [nē-usquam], adv., *nowhere.*
nūtriō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *nourish, bring up.*
nutrix, īcis, f., *nurse.*

O

obeō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus, *attend to, perform.*
obex, obicis [ob-iaciō], c., *barrier.*
ob-orior, -īrī, -ortus sum, *spring up.*
ob-ruō, -ere, -ruī, -rutus, *bury, cover.*
obsecrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *beseech, entreat.*
obses, -idis, m., *hostage.*
ob-sum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *be in the way of, hinder, injure.*
ob-testor, -ārī, -tātus sum, *implore.*
ob-tineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus [teneō], *hold, obtain.*
occīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus [ob-caedō], *cut down, kill.*
oc-cido, -ere, occidī, occāsurus, *fall, perish.*
occīduus, -a, -um [ob-cadō], *sinking.*
occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *seize, occupy, be beforehand with, surprise.*
oc-currō, -ere-currī, -cursūrus, *meet.*
Ocelum, -ī, n., *Ocelum,* a town in Gaul.
octō, num. adj., *eight.*
octōgintā, num. adj., *eighty.*
oculus, -ī, m., *eye.*
ōdī, -isse, ōsūrus, dep. verb, not used in the present system, 99, *b.*, *hate.*
odōrātus, -a, -um, *scented.*
offendō, -ere, -dī, -fēnsus, *offend, hurt* (*the feelings,* **animum**).
offēnsiō, -ōnis [offendō], f., *offense.*

ōlim, adv., *once, formerly.*
ōmen, -inis, n., *omen.*
omnis, -e, *all, every.*
onus, -eris, n., *burden, weight.*
opera, -ae [opus], f., *service, help.*
oportet, -ēre, -uit, *it behooves, it is necessary,* (*one*) *ought.*
oppidum, -ī, n., *town.*
opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus, *fall upon, press hard, crush.*
op-pūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ob-pugnō], *attack, besiege.*
[ops], opis, **f.,** *aid, power, might, resources;* **in plur., opēs,** opum, *riches.*
opus, -eris, n., *work;* **opus est,** *there is need.*
ōra, -ae, f., *shore, coast.*
ōrātiō, -ōnis [ōrō], f., *speech, oration, talk, argument.*
orbis, -is, m., *circle, world.*
orbus, -a, -um, *bereft, bereaved.*
ōrdō, -inis, m., *order, rank, line.*
Orgetorīx, -īgis, m., *Orgetorix,* a chief among the Helvetii.
orior, -īrī, ortus sum, *rise, arise, begin.*
ornō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *adorn.*
ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *plead, speak, entreat.*
ortus, ūs [orior], m., *east.*
ōs, ōris, n., *mouth, face.*
os, ossis, **n.,** *bone.*
ostendō, -ere, -dī, -tus, *show.*
ōtium, -ī, n., *leisure, rest, quiet, peace.*
ovis, -is, f., *a sheep.*
ōvum, -ī, n., *egg.*
ovō, -āre, ——, ——, *rejoice.*

P

P. = **Pūblius,** -ī, m., *Publius,* a personal name.
pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *pacify, subdue.*
pactum, -ī [pangō], n., *agreement.*
paene, adv., *almost, nearly.*
pāgus, -ī, m., *canton, district.*
palam, adv., *openly.*
Palātium, -i, n., *the Palatine,* one of the seven hills of Rome.
Palēs, -is, m., *Pales,* god of shepherds and cattle.
palūs, -ūdis, f., *swamp, marsh.*
pandus, -a, -um, *crooked-backed.*
papāver, -eris, n., *a poppy.*
pār, pāris, adj., *equal.*
parātus, -a, -um, *prepared, ready.*
parcus, -a, -um, *thrifty.*
parēns, -entis, m. and f., *a parent.*
pāreō, -ēre, -uī, ——, *obey.*
pariō, -ere, peperī, partus, *bring forth, lay* (an egg).
parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *prepare, get ready, procure.*
pars, -tis, f., *part, side; direction.*
parvus, -a, -um, *small.*
pāscō, -ere, pāvī, pāstus, *feed.*
passus, -ūs, m., *a step.*
pāstor, -ōris [pāscō], m., *a shepherd.*
patefaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factus [pateō], *lay open, reveal.*
pateō, -ēre, -uī, ——, *lie open, be evident, be exposed.*
pater, -tris, m., *father;* plur., *fathers, senators.*
paternus, -a, -um, *ancestral.*
patiens, -entis [patior], *patient, capable of enduring.*
patria, -ae [patrius], f., *native land, country.*
patrius, -a, -um [pater], *of a father, fatherly, paternal.*
paucī, -ae, -a, plur. only, *few.*
paulō, adv., *by a little, little.*
paulum, adv., *a little.*
pauper, -eris, adj., *poor.*
pavidus, -a, -um, *trembling, alarmed, in fright.*
pāx, pācis, f., *peace.*
pectus, -oris, n., *breast, heart.*

pecūnia, -ae, f., *money.*
pedes, -itis [pēs], m., *foot-soldier;* plur., *infantry.*
peditātus, -ūs [pedes], m., *infantry.*
pellis, -is, f., *skin, hide.*
pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus, *force, thrust, beat, drive, rout.*
pendeō, -ēre, pependī, pensūrus, *hang.*
penitus, adv., *deeply, utterly.*
penna, -ae, f., *feather, wing, pinion.*
peperit, see **pariō.**
per, prep. with acc., *through, during, over.*
per-agō, -ere, -ēgī, -actus, *go through, carry out; explain; work up, till.*
per-cutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussus [per-quatiō], *strike, hurt.*
per-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *lose.*
per-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead through, run* (a wall).
peregrīnus, -a, -um [per-ager], *foreign, strange.*
per-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [faciō], *accomplish, finish.*
perfidus, -a, -um, *faithless, treacherous, perfidious.*
perīculum, -ī, n., *trial, danger, risk, peril.*
perītus, -a, -um, *experienced, skilled.*
per-luō, -ere, -luī, -lūtus, *wash thoroughly.*
per-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, *move greatly, trouble.*
perniciēs, -ēī, f., *injury, ruin, destruction.*
per-opportūnē, adv., *very opportunely, very fortunately.*
perpetuus, -a, -um, *continuous, unbroken, perpetual.*
perpetuō, adv., *perpetually.*
per-sequor, -ī, -secūtus sum, *follow up, pursue.*
per-stringō, -ere, -inxī, -ictus, *run through, seize, move deeply.*
per-suādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsus, *persuade, convince.*
per-territus, -a, -um, *alarmed, frightened.*
per-tineō, -ēre, -tinuī, —— [teneō], *extend, reach, pertain to.*
perturbātiō, -ōnis, f., *alarm, disturbance.*
per-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventūrus, *come through, reach, arrive.*
pēs, pedis, m., *foot.*
pestilentia, -ae, f., *pestilence.*
petō, -ere, -īvī (-iī), -ītus, *beg, seek; make for, attack.*
Phineïus, -a, -um, *of Phineus* (a blind prophet who was tormented by Harpies).
pietas, -ātis, f., *devotion, loyalty, patriotism, piety.*
piger, -ra, -rum, *indolent, lazy.*
pignus, -oris, n., *pledge.*
pigritia, -ae, f., *disinclination.*
pilleus, -ī, m., *cap.*
pīlum, -ī, n., *javelin.*
Pistor, -ōris, m., *miller; Pistor,* a title given to Jupiter.
pius, -a, -um, *good, dutiful; right, fitting.*
placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *please.*
placidus, -a, -um, *calm.*
plangō, -ere, -nxī, -nctus, *strike.*
plānitiēs, -ēī, f., *plain.*
plēbs, plēbis, f., *the people, the common people, the plebeians.*
plēnus, -a, -um, *full.*
pluit, -ere, pluisse, impers., *it rains.*
plūma, -ae, f., *feather.*
plūrimus, -a, -um, *most, very much.*
plūs, plūris, *more.*
pluvia, -ae, f., *rain.*
poena, -ae, f., *punishment.*
poēta, -ae, m., *poet.*
pollex, -icis, m, *thumb.*
polliceor, -ērī, -itus sum, *promise.*
polus, -ī, m., *sky.*

Pōmētia, -ae, f., *Pometia*, a town of the Volsci.
pondus, -eris, n., *weight.*
pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus, *place, put, lay aside, pitch* (camp).
pōns, pontis, m., *a bridge.*
pontifex, -icis, m., *high priest, pontiff, pontifex.*
pontus, -ī, m., *sea.*
populor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *ravage, lay waste, destroy.*
populus, -ī, m., *people.*
portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *carry, bring.*
portus, -ūs, m., *port, harbour.*
poscō, -ere, poposcī, ——, *ask, beg, request, demand.* [*possess.*
possideō, -ēre, possēdī, possessus,
possum, posse, potuī, —— (480), *be able, can.*
post, prep. with acc., *after;* adv., *afterwards.*
posteā, adv., *afterwards.*
posterus, -a, -um, *following next;* **posterī,** plur., *posterity, descendants.*
postis, -is, m., *post, door-post.*
postquam, conj., *after.*
postulāta, -ōrum [postulō], plur., n., *things demanded, demands.*
postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *ask, request, demand.*
potēns, -tis [possum], *powerful.*
potentia, -ae [potēns], f., *power.*
potestās, -ātis [possum], f., *power, authority; opportunity, chance.*
potior, -īrī, -ītus sum, *get control.*
pōtus, -a, -um, *drunk.*
prae, prep. with abl., *before, in the presence of.*
praebeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus [for **praehibeō** from **prae-habeō**], *hold before, offer, furnish, show.*
praeceps, -cipitis [prae-caput], *headlong.*
praeda, -ae, f., *plunder, booty.*
prae-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [faciō], *put at the head of, put in command, appoint.*
prae-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *send ahead.*
prae-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *put in charge of.*
prae-scrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus, *prescribed for, direct.*
praesēns, -entis [praesum], *present.*
praesertim, adv., *especially.*
praesidium, -ī, n., *protection, guard.*
praestantia, -ae, f., *superiority.*
prae-struō, -ere, -struxī, -structus, *block.*
prae-sum, -esse, -fuī, *be present, be at the head of, have charge of, command, hold* (an office).
praeter, prep. with acc., *besides, beyond, except.*
praetereā, adv., *besides.*
praeter-eō, -īre, -iī, -itus, *go beyond, pass by.*
praeter-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *let go by, pass over.*
praetor, -ōris, m., *prætor, commander.*
prātum, -ī, n., *a meadow.*
precor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *pray.*
premō, -ere, pressī, pressus, *press, oppress.*
prēndō, -ere, prēndī, prēnsus, *seize, catch.*
prex, precis], f. (used mostly in plur.), *prayer, entreaty.*
prīmus, -a, -um (186, 1), *first.*
prīnceps, -ipis, m., *leader, chief.*
prīncipātus, -ūs, m., *leadership.*
prior, -ōris [prae], *former.*
priscus, -a, -um, *ancient.*
priusquam, conj., *sooner than, before.*
prīvātus, -a, -um, *private.*
prō, prep. with abl., *before, in behalf of, instead of, for, in proportion to.*

Procās, -ae, m., *Procas*, king of Alba.
prō-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, *go forward, advance, proceed.*
procul, adv., *from a distance.*
Proculus, -ī, m., *Proculus.*
prō-cumbō, -ere, -cubuī, -cubitus, *fall forward, fling down.*
prōd-eō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus, *advance, come forward, appear.*
prōdigium, -i, n., *omen, prodigy, monster.*
prōditiō, -ōnis, f., *treachery.*
proelium, -ī, n., *battle.*
prō-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *put forth.*
proficīscor, -ī, -fectus sum, *set out, start.*
prō-flō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *breathe out.*
pro-fugus, -a, -um [fugiō], *exiled.*
prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus [pro-habeō], *prohibit, prevent.*
proinde, adv., *therefore.*
prope, prep. with acc., *near, near to;* adv., *nearby, nearly, almost.*
properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *hasten.*
propinquus, -a, -um, *near, neighbouring; kindred, related; a relative.*
prō-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *set before, propose.* [*of.*
propter, prep. with acc., *on account*
prō-sum, prōdesse, -fuī, *be for, be helpful to, benefit, help.*
prō-videō, -ēre, -vīdī, -vīsus, *see beforehand, foresee, provide for, provide.*
prōvincia, -ae, f., *province.*
proximus, -a, -um (186, 1), *nearest, next, last.* [*wise.*
prūdēns, -entis, *foreseeing, sagacious,*
prūdenter (prūdēns), adv., *wisely.*
pūbescō, -ere, -buī, ——, *clothe one's self.*
pūblicē [publicus], adv., *publicly, as a people.*
pūblicus, -a, -um [for **populicus,** from **populus**], *of the people, public, common.*
pudor, -ōris, m., *shame.*
puella, -ae [puer], f., *girl.*
puer, -erī, m., *boy, slave;* **puerī,** plur., *children.*
puerīlis, -e, *boyish, suitable for boys.*
pugna, -ae, f., *battle.*
pūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *fight.*
pulcher, -chra, -chrum, *beautiful, honourable.* [*ian.*
Pūnicus, -a, -um, *Punic, Carthagin-*
pūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *punish.*
pūrē, adv., *simply, faultlessly.*
pūrgāmentum, -ī, n., *filth, dregs.*
purpureus, -a, -um, *purple, bright.*
pūrus, -a, -um, *pure, clean.*
putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *think, suppose.*

Q

quā, adv., *where.*
quadrāgintā, num. adj., *forty.*
quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītus, *inquire, ask.*
quālis, -e, (*such*) *as, what sort of?*
quam, conj., *than;* adv., *how.*
quam-diū, adv., (*as long*) *as, how long?* [*great?*
quantus, -a, -um, (*as great*) *as, how*
quārtus, -a, -um, num. adj., *fourth.*
quasi, conj., *as if.*
quater, adv., *four times.*
quattuor, num. adj., *four.*
-que, conj., enclitic (16), *and* (footnote 2, p. 83); **que . . . que,** *both . . . and.*
queror, -ī, questus sum, *complain.*
qui, quae, quod, *who, which.*
quīdam, quaedam, quoddam (quiddam), *a certain, some one* (402).
quidem, adv., postpositive (435, n. 6), *indeed, surely, to be sure;* **nē . . . quidem,** *not . . . even.*
quiēs, -ētis, f., *quiet, rest.*

quīlibet, quaelibet, quodlibet (quidlibet) *any one* (402).

quīnque, num. adj., *five.*

Quirīnālis, -e, *Quirinal,* one of the hills of Rome.

Quirīnus, -ī, m., *Quirinus,* a title of honour, given to the deified Romulus.

Quirītēs, -ium, m., *Quirites,* a name used in addressing Roman citizens.

quis (quī), quae, quid (quod), *who? which? what?* (233).

quis, qua, quid (quod), *any, any one* (402).

quisquam, ——, quidquam (quicquam), *any one (at all)* (402).

quisque quaeque, quidque (quodque), *each one, every* (402).

quīvīs, quaevīs, quodvīs (quidvīs), *any one* (402).

quoad, conj., *until, as long as.*

quōcumque, adv., *whithersoever.*

quod, conj., *because.*

quoniam, conj., *since.*

quoque, adv. (after an emphatic word, 435, n. 6), *also, too.*

quot, indecl. adj., (*so many*) *as, how many?*

quotiens, adv., *as often as.*

R

rāmōsus, -a, -um [rāmus], *branch-covered.*

rapidus, -a, -um [rapiō], *swift.*

rapīna, -ae [rapiō], f., *plunder.*

rapiō, -ere, rapuī, raptus, *seize, rob, plunder.*

ratiō, -ōnis, f., *scheme, plan.*

ratis, -is, f., *raft.*

raucus, -a, -um, *hoarse, hollow.*

recēnseō, -ēre, -uī, -sus, *review, inspect.*

recēnsus, -ūs, m., *a review.*

receptāculum, -ī [recipiō], n., *receptacle, reservoir.*

recessus, -ūs [re-cēdō], m., *corner, nook.*

re-cipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus [re-capiō], *take back, receive;* **sē recipere,** *to take one's self back, retreat, return.*

rector, -ōris [regō], m., *steersman.*

recuperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *regain.*

re-cūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *refuse, reject, object.*

red-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditus [re(d)-dō], *give back, return; render, make.*

red-eō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus [re(d)-eo], *go back, return.*

red-imō, -ere, -ēmī, -emptus, *buy back, redeem.*

redintegrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *renew.*

re-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead back.*

re-ferō, -ferre, rettulī, relātus, *bring back, report.*

re-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [faciō], *rebuild, repair.*

re-fluō, -ere, ——, ——, *flow back, overflow.*

rēgia, -ae [rēgius], f., *royal (palace).*

rēgīna, -ae [regō], f., *queen.*

regiō, -ōnis, *region, country, place.*

rēgius, -a, -um [rēx], *of the king, kingly, royal.*

rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [rēgnum], *rule, reign.*

rēgnum, -ī [regō], n., *rule, royalty, supreme power.*

religiō, -ōnis, f., *duty (to the gods), reverence, religion.*

re-linquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictus, *leave, abandon.*

reliquus, -a, -um, *left, remaining, the rest of.*

re-maneō, -ēre, -mansī, ——, *stay behind, remain.*

re-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *send back.*

re-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, *move back, remove, put aside.*

Remus, -ī, m., *Remus,* the brother of Romulus.

re-novō, -āre, -āvī, ātus [re-novō, from **novus,** *new*], *renew.*

re-nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *bring back word, report.*

re-pellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus, *drive back, repel.*

repente, adv., *suddenly.*

repentīnus, -a, -um, *sudden.*

re-periō, -īre, repperī, repertus, *find, discover.*

re-peto, -ere, (-īvī) -ī, -ītus, *seek anew, call to mind, demand back;* with **rēs,** *demand restitution.*

re-pleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, *fill up.*

re-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -itus, *put back, replace, place, put, lay aside.*

rēs, -eī, f., *thing, event, circumstance, affair, matter.*

re-scindō, -ere, -scidī, -scissus, *break down, demolish.*

re-sideō, -ēre, -sēdī, *remain seated.*

re-sistō, -ere, -stitī, ——, *resist, stop.*

re-solvō, -ere, -solvī, -solūtus, *melt.*

re-solvō, -ere, -solvi, -solūtus, *loosen.* [*back.*

re-spiciō, -ere, -spēxī, -spectus, *look*

re-spondeō, -ēre, -spondī, -spōnsus, *answer, reply.*

re-stituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus [statuō], *restore.*

re-tineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus [teneō], *retain, restrain.*

re-vertor, -tī, -sus sum [**revertī:** in perfect system, active], *turn back, return.*

revocāmen, -inis [re-vocō], n., *recall.*

rēx, rēgis, m., *king.*

Rhea Silvia, -ae, f., *Rhea Silvia,* the mother of Romulus and Remus.

Rhēnus, -ī, m., *the Rhine,* the river between Gaul and Germany.

Rhodanus, -ī, m., *the Rhone,* a river of Gaul.

rīdeō, -ēre, rīsī, rīsus, *laugh, laugh at.*

rīpa, -ae, f., *bank* (of a river).

rītus, -ūs, m., *ceremony, custom.*

rīvus, -ī, m., *stream.*

rōbur, -oris, n., *oak; strength.*

rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *ask, ask for.*

Rōma, -ae, f., *Rome,* the city founded by Romulus.

Rōmānus, -a, -um [Rōma], *Roman.*

Rōmānī, -ōrum, plur., m., *the Romans.*

Rōmulus, -ī, m., *Romulus,* the founder of Rome.

rosa, -ae, f., *a rose.*

rostrum, -i [rōdō], n., *beak.*

ruīna, -ae, f., *ruin.*

rūrsus, adv., *back again, again.*

rūs, rūris, n., *the country* (353, 354)

rusticus, -a, -um, *rustic.* *farm.*

rūtrum, -ī, n., *shovel.*

S

Sabīnus, -ī, m., *Sabinus,* a lieutenant of Cæsar.

Sabīnī, -ōrum, m., *the Sabines,* an Italian people.

sacer, -cra, -crum, *sacred;* **sacra,** -ōrum, plur., n., *sacred rites, sacrifices.*

sacerdōs, -ōtis [sacer], m. and f., *priest, priestess.*

saepe, adv., *often.*

sagitta, -ae, f., *arrow.*

salictum, -ī, n., *willow-plantation.*

salūber [or **-bris**], -bris, -bre, *healthful.*

salūs, -ūtis, f., *safety.*

salvus, -a, -um, *safe.*

Samos, -ī, f., old name of Cephalonia.

sanguineus, -a, -um [sanguis], *bloody, dipped in blood.*

sanguinolentus, -a, -um, *bloody.*

sanguis, -inis, m., *blood.*

sapiēns, -entis, *wise.*

sapor, -ōris, n., *taste, flavour.*
Sarmaticus, -a, -um, *Sarmatian.*
satis, adv., *sufficient, enough.*
Saturnus, -ī, m., *Saturn,* the ancient god of agriculture in Italy.
satyrus, -ī, m., *a satyr.*
Sauromatae, -ārum, m., *the Sarmatians,* a tribe living between the Don and the Vistula.
saxum, -ī, m., *a rock.*
scelerātus, -a, -um [scelus], *wicked, criminal.*
scelus, -eris, n., *crime.*
scienter [sciō], adv., *skilfully.*
scīlicet [scīre, licet], adv., *assuredly.*
scindō, -ere, scidī, scissus, *rend.*
sciō, scīre, scīvī, (sciī) **scītus,** *know.*
scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, *write.*
scūtum, -ī, n., *shield.*
sē, see **suī,** 240.
secō, -āre, secuī, sectus, *cut, intersect.*
sēcrētō, adv., *secretly.*
secundus, -a, -um [sequor], *following, second, favourable.*
sed, conj., *but.*
sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessūrus, *sit.*
sēdēs, -is [sedeō], f., *seat.*
sēditiōsus, -a, -um, *insurrectionary, seditious, reckless.*
sella, -ae, f., *chair.*
semel, adv., *once* (*a single time*). Cf. **ōlim.**
semper, adv., *ever, always.*
senātor, -ōris, m., *senator.*
senātus, -ūs [senex], m., *council of elders, senate.*
senex, senis, *old, aged man.*
senior, -ōris [senex], m. and f., *elder, senior.*
sensus, -ūs, m., *feeling.*
sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, *feel, realize, perceive.*
septem, num. adj., *seven.*
septimus, -a, -um, num. adj. ord., *seventh.*
sequor, -ī, secūtus sum, *follow.*
serō, -ere, sēvī, satus, *sow, plant.*
sērus, -a, -um, *late.*
serviō, -īre, -īvī, servītūrus [servus], *be a slave to, serve, give heed to.*
Servius Tullius, -ī, m., *Servius Tullius,* the sixth king of Rome.
servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *save, preserve, keep, exhibit.*
servus, -ī, m., *slave.*
seu . . . seu (or **sīve . . . sīve**), conj., *whether . . . or,* (sometimes) *either . . . or.*
sex, adj., *six.*
sī, conj., *if.*
sibi, reflex. pron., see 224.
sīc, adv., *thus, so, in such a manner.* Cf. **tam.**
siccō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [siccus], *drain.*
siccus, -a, -um, *dry.*
sīdus, -eris, n., *star, constellation.*
sīgnificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *show* (by signs), *indicate, signify.*
signō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *mark out.*
sīgnum, -ī, n., *sign, signal.*
silentium, -ī, n., *silence.*
silva, -ae, f., *forest, woods.*
Silvius, -ī, m., *Silvius,* the name of several kings of Alba. [*as.*
simul, adv., *at the same time, as soon*
simulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *pretend.*
sīn, conj., *but if.*
sine, prep., *without.*
singulī, -ae, -a, dis. num. adj., *one by one, one apiece, single, separate.*
sinister, -tra, -trum, *left* (hand), *unfavourable.*
sinus, -ūs, m., *bosom, bay.*
sistō, -ere, stitī, status, *stand, put.*
sīve, *see* **seu.**
socer, -erī, m., *father-in-law.*
societās, -ātis [socius], f., *alliance, association, society.*
socius, -ī, m., *associate, ally.*
sōl, sōlis, m., *sun.*

soleō, -ēre, solitus sum (semi-deponent), *be accustomed, be wont.*
solidus, -a, -um, *solid.*
sōlum (sōlus), adv., *only, alone.*
solum, -ī, n., *soil.*
sōlus, -a, -um, *alone, single, sole.*
solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtus, *loosen, break up, melt, pay* (debt); *solve.*
somnus, -ī, m., *sleep.*
sonitus, -ūs, m., *sound, noise.*
sonō, -āre, sonuī, sonitūrus, *sound.*
sonus, -ī, m., *sound.*
sōpiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *put to sleep; stun, render unconscious.*
sordidus, -a, -um, *filthy, soiled* (clothes) [worn as a sign of mourning], *sordid.*
soror, -ōris, f., *sister.*
sors, sortis, f., *lot, chance, fate.*
spatium, -ī, n., *space, time, opportunity.*
speciēs, -ēī, f., *brilliance, show, appearance.* [*spectacle.*
spectāculum, -ī [spectō], n., *show,*
spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *watch, witness, look at.*
spēlunca, -ae, f., *cavern.*
spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [spēs], *hope.*
spēs, -eī, f., *hope.*
spīculum, -ī, n., *sting.*
spīritus, -ūs, m., *breathing, breath, spirit; high spirit, pride, arrogance.*
spīrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *breathe.*
spoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *rob, plunder, spoil, despoil.*
spolium, -ī [spoliō], n., *booty, spoil.*
Spurius Tarpēius, -ī, m., *Spurius Tarpeius,* a commander of the guard at the Capitol.
squāleō, -ēre, ——, ——, *be rough, filthy.*
squālidus, -a, -um, *filthy.*
stans, stantis, pres. part., stō, *standing, prominent, protruding.*
statim, adv., *at once, immediately.*
stator, -ōris [stō], m., *the stayer, Stator,* an epithet applied to Jupiter (444).
statuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus [stō] (*make stand*), *set up, erect, station, place, determine, decree, decide;* **dē . . . statuere,** *to pass judgment upon.*
stella, -ae, f., *star.*
stimulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *spur on, incite, stimulate.*
stīpes, -itis, m., *log, trunk, tree.*
stipula, -ae, f., *stalk, straw.*
stīva, -ae, f., *plough handle.*
stō, -āre, stetī, statūrus, *stand, stand firm.*
strīdō, -ere, strīdī, *shriek, whistle.*
strīdor, -ōris, m., *hum, buzz.*
strix, -gis, f., *screech-owl.*
studeō, -ēre, -uī, ——, *be zealous for, strive for, devote* (one's self) *to, favour, desire, study, be interested in.* [*study.*
studium, -ī [studeō], n., *zeal, desire,*
stupeō, -ēre, -puī, *be bewildered.*
suādeō, -ēre, suāsī, suāsus, *advise, urge.*
sub, prep., with acc. after verbs of motion and abl. after verbs of rest, *under, at the foot of, near, up to.*
sub-eō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus, *come up, suggest itself.*
subitō, adv., *suddenly.*
Sublicius, -a, -um (*resting on piles*), *Sublician,* the name of a bridge at Rome.
sublīmis, -e, *uplifted, borne aloft, through the sky.*
sub-ministrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *furnish.*
sub-sīdo, -ere, -sēdī, -sessūrus, *sink.*
subsidium, -ī, n., *relief, assistance.*
sub-siliō, -īre, -siluī or -siliī, ——, *leap up.*

sub-sum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *be near.* [*up.*
sub-vehō, -ere, -vēxī, -vectus, *bring*
suc-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, *come near to ; succeed.*
Suēvī, -ōrum, m., *the Suevi*, a German tribe. [(240).
suī, reflex. pron., *of himself*, etc.
sulcus, -ī, m., *furrow.*
sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *be* (480).
summa, -ae, f., *sum, total.*
summus, see **superus** (186, 2).
sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, *take, assume, consume, spend.*
suō, -ere, suī, sūtus, *stitch, sew.*
super, prep. with acc. and abl., *over, above, upon, beyond.*
superbī [superbus], adv., *proudly, haughtily.*
superbia, -ae [superbus], f., *pride, haughtiness.*
superbus, -a, -um [super], *proud, haughty.*
superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [superus], *rise above, outdo, surpass, overcome, defeat.*
superstitiō, -ōnis, f., *superstition.*
super-sum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *be over, remain, survive, outlive.*
superus, -a, -um [super], *above, higher* (186, 2) ; *former* (in time).
supplicium, -ī, n., *punishment.*
sup-pōnō, -ere, supposuī, suppositus, *place under.*
sūprēmus, -a, -um, *highest, last.*
surgō, -ere, surrexī, surrectūrus [sub-regō], *arise.*
sus-cipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus [sub-capiō], *undertake, take up, begin, ordain ; undergo, incur.*
sus-piciō, -ere, -spēxī, -spectus [sub-speciō], *look up to, respect ; look at ; mistrust, suspect.*
suspiciō, -ōnis, f., *suspicion.*
suspicor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *suspect.*
sus-tineō, -ere, -tinuī, -tentus [sub-teneō], *hold up, sustain, hold out, endure, withstand.*
sus-tulērunt, see **tollō.**
suus, -a, -um, poss. adj., *his* (own), *her* (own), *its* (own), *their* (own) (241).

T

T. = Titus, -ī, m., *Titus*, a personal name.
tacitus, -a, -um, *silent, without speaking.*
tālis, -e, *such.*
tam, adv., *so, to such a degree.*
tamen, *nevertheless, yet.*
tamquam, conj., *as if, as it were.*
Tanaquil, -īlis, f., *Tanaquil*, the wife of Tarquinius Priscus.
tandem, adv., *at length, at last.*
tangō, -ere, tetigī, tactus, *touch, reach.*
tantum, adv., *only.*
tantus, -a, -um, *so great, such.*
Tarquinius, -ī, m., *Tarquinius*, the name of an early Roman family, of whom two, **Priscus** and Superbus, were kings of Rome.
Tartara, -ōrum, n. (plur. only), *Tartarus*, the infernal regions.
taurus, -ī, m., *bull.*
tēctum, -ī, n., *covering, roof, house, home.*
tegō, -ere, texī, tectus, *cover.*
tēla, -ae, f., *warp, loom.*
tēlum, -ī, n., *weapon.*
Temesaeus, -a, -um, *of Temese* (a town in S. Italy).
tempestās, -ātis [tempus], f. (*the state of the time*), *weather ; storm, tempest.*
templum, -ī, n., *temple.*
temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tempt, try.*
tempus, -oris, n., *time.* [*stretch.*
tendō, -ere, tetendī, tentus (tensus)

teneō, -ēre, tenuī, tentus, *hold.*
tener, -era, -erum, *tender, delicate.*
tepeō, -ēre, ——, ——, *be warm.*
ter, adv., *thrice.*
tergum, -ī, n., *back.*
ternī, -ae, -a, dis. num. adj., *three each, three together, triplets.*
terra, -ae, f., *land, earth, ground.*
terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *frighten.*
terror, -ōris [terreō], m., *terror, fright.*
tertius, -a, -um, *third.*
testa, -ae, f., *vessel, cup.*
testis, -is, m. and f., *witness.*
Tiberis, -is, m., *the Tiber*, a river of Italy.
tībīcen, -inis, m., *prop.* [*of.*
timeō, -ēre, -uī, ——, *fear, be afraid*
timidus, -a, -um [timeō], *timid.*
timor, -ōris [timeō], m., *fear, fright.*
tintinābulum, -ī, n., *a bell.*
Tīrynthius, -a, -um, *of Tiryns* (in Argolis).
Titūrius, -ī, m., *Titurius*, a lieutenant of Cæsar.
tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātus, *take up, pick up, raise.*
tonitrus, -ī, m., *thunder.*
torpescō, -ere, -puī, *grow numb, listless.*
torus, -ī, m., *couch.*
tot, indecl. adj., *so many, as many.*
totiēns, adv., *so often, as often.*
tōtus, -a, -um, *whole, total, entire, all.*
trābs, trabis, f., *beam, eaves.*
trā-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *hand over, give up, surrender; relate, hand down by tradition.*
trā- (or **trāns)dūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead across.*
trahō, -ere, traxī, tractus, *draw, derive.*
trāns, prep. with acc., *across, on the other side of, over.*
trāns-eō, -īre, (īvī) -iī, -itus, *go across, cross, pass over.*
trāns-fīgō, -ere, -fīxī, -fīxus, *pierce through, stab.*
trānsiliō, -īre, -uī, —— [trāns-saliō], *leap across* or *over.*
trāns-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *carry over, transport.*
tremō, -ere, -uī, ——, *tremble, shiver.*
trepidus, -a, -um, *anxious, alarming.*
trēs, tria, num. adj., *three.*
trīduum, -ī [trēs-diēs], n., *three days' time, three days.*
trīgeminus, -a, -um, *triple-born, triple; a triplet.*
trīgintā, indecl. num. adj., *thirty.*
trinōdis, -e, *three-knotted.*
triplex, -icis, *triple, threefold.*
tristis, -e, *sad, gloomy.*
triumphō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *celebrate a triumph.*
Trōia, -ae, f., *Troy*, an ancient city of Asia Minor.
Trōiānus, -a, -um, *Trojan, a Trojan.*
trucīdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *slaughter, murder.*
truncus, -ī, m., *trunk.*
tuba, -ae, f., *trumpet.*
tubicen, -inis, m., *a trumpeter.*
Tullus, -ī, m., *Tullus*, a personal name.
tum, adv., *then, at that time.*
tumidus, -a, -um [tumeō], *swelling, swollen.* [*tumult.*
tumultus, -ūs, m., *uproar, disorder,*
tumulus, -ī, m., *mound, hill.*
turba, -ae, f., *crowd, throng.*
turgeō, -ēre, tursī, *swell.*
turma, -ae, f., *a troop, squadron.*
turris, -is, f., *tower* (129).
tūtō [tūtus], adv., *safely.* [*tutor.*
tūtor, -ōris [tūtus], m., *guardian,*
tūtus, -a, -um, *safe.*
tuus, -a, -um, *thy, your* (241).

Typhoeus, -ī (acc. **Typhōea**), Typhœus (a fire-breathing giant, buried under Mt. Ætna).
tyrannus, -ī, m., (*absolute*) *ruler, tyrant.*

U

ubi, interrog. or rel. adv., *where.*
ubi, conj., *as soon as, when.*
ubique, adv., *everywhere.* [*ish.*
ulcīscor, -ī, ultus sum, *avenge, pun-*
ullus, -a, -um, *any, any one* (200).
ulmus, -ī, f., *elm.*
ulterior, -ius, *further* (186, 1).
ultor, -ōris [ulciscor], m., *avenger.*
ulva, -ae, f., *sedge.*
umbra, -ae, f., *shadow, shade, ghost.*
umerus, -ī, m., *shoulder.*
unda, -ae, f., *water, wave.*
unde, interrog. or rel. adv., *whence, from which.*
undique [unde], adv., *everywhere, on all sides, from every direction, from all sources.*
unguis, -is, m., *nail, talon.*
ūniversus, -a, -um, *all together, whole, entire; universal.*
ūnus, -a, -um, *one; alone, only* (202).
urbānus, -a, -um [urbs], *of the city.*
urbs, -is, f., *city.*
urgeō, -ēre, ursī, *press, press forward.*
urō, -ere, ussī, ustus, *burn.*
usque, adv., *still, ever.*
ūsus, -ūs, m., *use, advantage.*
ut, or **utī,** conj., *that, in order that; as, when.* [(200).
uter, -tra, -trum, *which* (of the two)?
uterque, -traque, -trumque [uter], *each* (of the two), *both* (200).
utinam, adv., *O that, would that.*
utrimque [uterque], adv., *on both sides.*
ūtor, -ī, ūsus sum, *use, employ, adopt.* [*or.*
utrum, conj., . . . **an,** *whether . . .*
ūva, -ae, f., *a bunch of grapes.*
uxor, -ōris, f., *wife.*

V

vacca, -ae, f., *cow.* [*without.*
vacuus, -a, -um, *vacant, destitute,*
vadum, -ī, n., *ford;* **vadō,** *by fording.*
vāgītus, -ī, m., *crying.*
valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, *be strong, be well; have influence.*
validus, -a, -um [valeō], *strong.*
vallēs, -is, f., *valley.*
vānus, -a, -um, *vain, groundless.*
varius, -a, -um, *various, varied.*
vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *lay waste, devastate.*
vastus, -a, -um, *immense.*
vehementer, adv., *vehemently, greatly.*
Vēientēs, -ium, plur., m., *the inhabitants of Veii.*
vel, conj., *or.*
vēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *veil.*
veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventūrus, *come.*
vēnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *hunt.*
ventus, -ī, m., *wind.*
verbum, -ī, n., *word.*
vērē [vērus], adv., *truly, really.*
vereor, -ērī, -ītus sum, *fear, dread, reverence.*
vernō, -āre, —— [vēr], *be springlike.*
verrō, -ere, verri, versus, *sweep, scour.* [*against.*
versus, prep. with acc., *towards,*
vertex, -icis, m., *head.*
vertō, -ere, -tī, -sus, *turn.*
vērus, -a, -um, *true, real.*
vēscor, -ī, ——, *eat.*
vesper, -eris, m., *evening.*
Vesta, -ae, f., *Vesta,* goddess of the *hearth.*
Vestālis, -e [Vesta], *Vestal.*
vester, -tra, -trum, *your* (241).
vestīgium, -ī, n., *footprint, track, trace.*

vestiō, -īre, -īī, vestītus, *clothe.*
vestis, -is, f., *clothes, a garment.*
vetō, -āre, -uī, -itus, *forbid.*
vetus, -eris, *old, veteran.* [*trouble.*
vexō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *harass,*
via, -ae, f., *road, street, way.*
vīcīnus, -a, -um [vīcus], *near, neighbouring, neighbour.*
victor, -ōris, m., *a conqueror, victor.*
victōria, -ae, f., *victory.*
vīcus, -ī, m., *village.*
vīdeō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsus, *see ;* pass. *be seen, appear.*
viduus, -a, -um, *widowed ;* as noun, **vidua**, -ae, *a widow.*
vigilantia, -ae, f., *vigilance, watchfulness.*
vigilia, -ae, f., *a watch, vigilance.*
vīgintī, num. adj., *twenty.*
villa, -ae, f., *farm-house.*
Vīminālis, -e, *Viminal,* one of the seven hills of Rome.
vincō, -ere, vīcī, victus, *conquer, overcome.*
vinculum, -ī, n., *fetter.*
vindicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *claim, demand.*
vīnum, -ī, n., *wine.*
viola, -ae, f., *violet.*
vir, -ī, m., *man, husband.*
virga, -ae, f., *rod, switch.*
virgō, -inis, f., *virgin, maiden.*
virgula, -ae, f., *rod, twig.*
viridis, -e, *green.*
virtūs, -ūtis [vir], f., *manliness, courage, virtue.*
vīs, vīs, f., *force ;* plur., *strength.*
viscera, -um, n. (sing. rare), *flesh.*
vīsus, -ūs [videō], m., *look, sight, vision.*
vīta, -ae, f., *life.*
vitiō, -āre, āvi, -ātus, *spoil, mar.*
vitis, -is, f., *vine.*
vitium, -ī, n., *vice, fault.*
vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *avoid, shun.*
vivō, -ere, vixi, victūrus, *live.*
vīvus, -a, -um [vīvō], *living, alive.*
vix, adv., *scarcely.*
vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *call, summon.*
Vocontiī, -ōrum, m., *the Vocontii,* a tribe in Gaul.
volāns, -tis [volō], *flying.*
volgō [volgus], adv., *among the multitude, generally, everywhere.*
volgus, -ī, n., *the people, the common people.* [*flit about.*
volitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [volō,] *fly,*
volnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [volnus], *wound.*
volnus, -eris, n., *a wound.*
volō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *fly.*
volō, velle, voluī, ——, *wish.*
Volscī, -ōrum, m., *the Volsci,* a people of Latium.
voltus, -ūs, m., *face.*
volucer, -cris, -e, *winged ;* also, as noun, *a bird.*
voluntās, -ātis [volō], f., *willingness, consent, good-will, wish, desire.*
voluptās, -ātis, f., *pleasure.*
volvō, -ere, volvī, volūtus, *roll.*
vōmer, -eris, m., *plough-share.*
vomō, -ere, -uī, -itūrus, *vomit, belch forth.*
voveō, -ēre, vōvī, vōtus, *devote to, vow, solemnly promise.*
vōx, vōcis, f., *voice, sound, speech, utterance.*
vulpēs, -is, f., *fox.*

Z

Zephyrus, -i, m., *Zephyr, the west wind.*

ENGLISH–LATIN VOCABULARY

A

a, or an, *usually not translated.*
able, *be able*, possum, posse, potuī.
about (*concerning*), dē.
about to (313, 1).
active, ācer, ācris, ācre.
advance, prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus.
advise, moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.
aid, auxilium, -ī, *n.*
all, omnis, -e.
allowed, be allowed, licet, licēre, [licuit.
alone, sōlus, -a, -um (200).
already, iam.
although, cum.
always, semper.
ambassador, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
ancestors, māiōrēs, *plur.*, *m.* (338, note 3).
and, et, atque (ac), -que (208, note 2).
and so, itaque.
announce, nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
answer, respondeō, -ēre, -dī, -spōnsus.
any, ūllus, -a, -um (200).
arms, arma, -ōrum, *plur.*, *n.*
ask, rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
at home, domī (354, 1).
at once, statim.
attack, *noun*, impetus, -ūs, *m.*
attack, *verb*, oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

B

battle, proelium, -ī, *n.*
because, quod.
because of, *expressed by abl.* (141).
become, fīō, fierī, factus sum.
better, *comp. of* bonus (184).
between, inter *with acc.*
black, niger, -gra, -grum.
blame, culpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
body, corpus, -oris, *n.*
bold, audāx, -ācis.
book, liber, librī, *m.*
border, fīnis, -is, *m.*
brave, fortis, -e.
bravely, fortiter.
bravery, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*
bring, portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
bring to, adferō, -ferre, attulī, adlātus.
broad, lātus, -a, -um.
brother, frāter, -tris, *m.*
build (*a bridge*), faciō, -ere, fēcī, [factus.
but, sed.

C

call, vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
camp, castra, -ōrum, *plur.*, *n.*
can (**be able**), possum, posse, potuī.
capture, capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus, *or* expugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
carry, portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
cavalry, equitātus, -ūs, *m.*, *or* equitēs, *plur. of* eques.
choose, dēligō, -ere, dēlēgī, dēlēctus.
citadel, arx, arcis, *f.*
city, urbs, urbis, *f.*
cohort, cohors, -tis, *f.*
come, veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventūrus.
commander, imperātor, -ōris, *m.*
commend, comprobō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus. [tus.
complete, cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fec-

conquer, vincō, -ere, vīcī, victus.
consent, voluntās, -ātis, *f.*
consul, cōnsul, -is, *m.*
country (*land*), terra, -ae, *f.*
country (*native land*), patria, -ae, *f.*
country (*opposed to city*), rūs, rūris, *n.*
courage, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*
cruelly, crūdēliter.

D

danger, perīculum, -ī, *n.*
dare, audeō, -ēre, ausus sum.
daughter, fīlia, -ae, *f.*
day, diēs, -ēī, *m.*
dear, cārus, -a, -um.
deep, altus, -a, -um.
defend, dēfendō, -ere, -dī, -sus.
deputy, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
desire, studium, -ī, *n.*
destroy, dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus.
difficult, difficilis, -e.
difficulty, difficultās, -ātis, *f.*
do, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus, *or* agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus.

E

eagle, aquila, -ae, *f.*
easily, facile.
easy, facilis, -e.
end, fīnis, -is, *m.*
enemy, hostis, -is, *m.* and *f.*
entire, tōtus, -a, -um (200).
entrance, aditus, -ūs, *m.*
envoy, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
esteem, dīligō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus.

F

farmer, agricola, -ae, *m.*
farther, diūtius.
father, pater, -tris, *m.*
fear, timeō, -ēre, -uī, ——, *or* vereor, -ērī, veritus sum.
fierce, ācer, ācris, ācre.
fight, pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
fire, incendium, -ī, *n.*; ignis, -is, *m.*
first, prīmus, -a, -um (186, 1).
flee, fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrus.
follow, sequor, -ī, secūtus sum.
foot, pēs, pedis, *m.*
foot-soldier, pedes, -itis, *m.*
fortify, mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus.
free, līber, -era, -erum.
free (*set free*), līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
frequent, crēber, -bra, -brum.
friend, amīcus, -ī, *m.*
friendship, amīcitia, -ae, *f.*
frighten, terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.

G

Gaul, Gallia, -ae, f.
gift, dōnum, -ī, *n.*
give, dō, dare, dedī, datus.
go, eō, īre, (īvī) iī, itūrus.
go from, exeō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus.
good, bonus, -a, -um.
grain, frūmentum, -ī, *n.*
great, magnus, -a, -um.
greatest, summus, -a, -um.
guard, custōs, -ōdis, *m.* and *f.*

H

harm, noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus.
have, habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.
head, caput, -itis, *n.*
hear, audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus.
heavy, gravis, -e.
help, auxilium, -ī, *n.*
hem in, contineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus.
high, altus, -a, -um.
higher (*in position*), superior (186, 2).
hill, collis, -is, *m.*, *or* mōns, -tis, *m.*
himself, ipse (256); sē (256, note).
hold, teneō, -ēre, -uī, tentus.
hold out, sustineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus.
home, domus, -ūs (210, *b.*), *f.*
hope, *noun,* spēs, spei, *f.*
hope, *verb,* spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

horse, equus, -ī, *m.*
horseman, eques, -itis, *m.*
hostage, obses, -idis, *m.* and *f.*

I

in, in *with the abl.*
induce, indūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus.
infantry, peditātus, -ūs, *m.; or plur. of* pedes, -itis, *m.*
inhabit, incolō, -ere, -uī, ——, or habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
inhabitant, incola, -ae, *m.* and *f.*
into, in *with acc.*

J

javelin, pīlum, -ī, *n.*
just, iūstus, -a, -um.

K

keeper, custōs, -ōdis, *m.* and *f.*
kill, interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus.
kind, genus, -eris, *n.*
king, rēx, rēgis, *m.*
know, sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus.

L

labour, labor, -ōris, *m.*
Laelius, Laelius, -ī, *m.*
large, magnus, -a, -um.
law, lēx, lēgis, *f.*
lead, dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus.
leader, dux, ducis, *m.*
learn, cōgnōscō, -ere, cōgnōvī, cōgnitus.
leave, relinquō, -ere, relīquī, relictus.
legion, legiō, -ōnis, *f.*
less, minor, minus (184).
letter, epistula, -ae, *f.*
lieutenant, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
light, lūx, lūcis, *f.*
live (*dwell*), habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
live (*be alive*), vīvō, -ere, vīxī, victus.
lofty, altus, -a, -um.
long, longus, -a, -um.
long (*a long time*), diū (195).
love, amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

M

make, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus.
make war upon, bellum īnferō, -ferre, intulī, illātus.
man, homō, -inis, *m., or* vir, -ī, *m.*
many, *plur. of* multus, -a, -um.
march, *noun,* iter, itineris, *n.*
march, *verb,* iter faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus.
master, magister, -trī, *m., or* dominus, -ī, *m.* (64).
may, *expressing a wish or exhortation* (397), *expressing permission,* licet (488).
messenger, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
month, mēnsis, -is, *m.*
most, plūrimus, -a, -um (184).
mountain, mōns, mōntis, *m.*
much, multus, -a, -um.

N

name, nōmen, -inis, *n.*
narrow, angustus, -a, -um.
nation, gēns, gentis, *f.*
near, ad *with acc.*
nearest, proximus (186, 1).
neighbour, fīnitimus, -ī, *m.*
neighbouring, fīnitimus, -a, -um.
neither, neque; *adjective,* neuter, -tra, -trum.
new, novus, -a, -um.
next, proximus (186, 1).
night, nox, noctis, *f.*
no, nūllus, -a, -um (200).
nor, neque (nec).
now, nunc; **now** (*already*), **now** (*at last*), iam.
number, numerus, -ī, *m.*

O

on, in *with the abl.*
once, at once, statim.
once (*formerly*), ōlim.
one, ūnus, -a, -um; **the one,** alter, -era, -erum.
Orgetorix, Orgetorīx, -īgis, *m.*
other (*another*), alius, -a, -ud (200).
other (*the other*), alter, -era, -erum (200).
ought, dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.
outer, exterior, -ius (186, 2).
own (*his, her, its, their*), suus, -a, -um.

P

part, pars, partis, *f.*
peace, pāx, pācis, *f.*
people, populus, -ī, *m.*
place, locō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
place (*a legion*), conlocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *or* cōnstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus.
place before, antepōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus.
plan, cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*
pleasing, grātus, -a, -um.
plow, arō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
poor (*pitiable*), miser, -era, -erum.
position, locus, -ī, *m.*
praise, laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
prefer rather, mālō, mālle, māluī.
protection, praesidium, -ī, *n.*
province, prōvincia, -ae, *f.*
prudent, prūdēns, -dentis.
punish, pūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus.

Q

quick, celer, celeris, celere.
quickly, celeriter.

R

raid, excursiō, -ōnis, *f.*
rapid, celer, celeris, celere.
rather, potius *or* magis.
reference, with reference to, dē, *with the abl.*
reject, recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
remain, maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus.
return (*come back*), redeō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus.
return (*give back*), reddō, -ere, reddidī, redditus.
river, flūmen, -inis, *n.*
road, iter, itineris, *n.*
rule, regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctus.

S

safety, salūs, -ūtis, *f.*
same, īdem, eadem, idem.
save, servō *or* cōnservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
sea, mare, maris, *n.*
see, videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsus.
seek, petō, -ere, petīī (-īvī), petītus.
seem, *passive of* videō.
seize (*a town or place*), occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
seize (*arms*), capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus.
send, mittō, -ere, mīsī, missus.
severe, gravis, -e.
shall, *sign of the future.*
ship, nāvis, -is, *f.*
sick, aeger, -gra, -grum.
side, pars, partis, *f.*
six, sex.
slave, servus, -ī, *m.*
slay, interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus.
so, ita; **and so,** itaque.
so (*in such a manner*), sīc.
so (*to such a degree*), tam.
soldier, mīles, -itis, *m.*
son, fīlius, -ī, *m.*
soon, mox.
spear, hasta, -ae, *f.*
spiritedly, ācriter.
state, cīvitās, -ātis, *f.*

station, cōnstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus.
struggling, labōrāns, -antis.
surpass, superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
swift, celer, celeris, celere.
sword, gladius, -ī, *m.*

T

take, capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus.
tall, altus, -a, -um.
teach, doceō, -ēre, docuī, doctus.
tenth, decimus, -a, -um.
than, quam (172).
that, *demons. pron.*, ille, illa, illud.
that, *rel. pron.*, quī, quae, quod.
that, *conj.*, ut.
thing, rēs, reī, *f.*
think, putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *or* arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum.
third, tertius, -a, -um.
this, hīc, haec, hōc.
those, *plural of* ille *or* is.
thousand, mīlle (202, *c*).
through, per *with acc.*
till, dum, dōnec.
too, *expressed by comp. deg.* (178).
town, oppidum, -ī, *n.*
tribe, gēns, gentis, *f.*
trust, crēdō, -ere, crēdidī, crēditus.
two, duo, duae, duo (202).

U

understand, intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus.
unwilling, be unwilling, nōlō, nōlle, nōluī.
urge, hortor *or* cohortor, -ārī, -ātus sum.
us. *See* ego (240).

V

very, *expressed by superl. deg.* (178).
veteran, vetus, veteris.
victory, victōria, -ae, *f.*
vigilance, vigilantia, -ae, *f.*
village, vīcus, -ī, *m.*

W

wage (*war*), gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus.
wait, maneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus.
warn, moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.
watchfulness, vigilantia, -ae, *f.*, *or* dīligentia, -ae, *f.*
weapon, tēlum, -ī, *n.*
well, bene.
what? quis, quae, quid?
what (*that which*), id quod.
when, cum.
where, ubī.
which, quī, quae, quod.
who, quī, quae, quod.
who? quis, quae, quid?
why, cūr.
willing, be willing, volō, velle, voluī.
wise, sapiēns, -entis.
wisely, sapienter.
wish, volō, velle, voluī.
with, cum, *with abl.*
without, sine, *with abl.*
woman, mulier, -eris, *f.*
work, labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
wound, volnus, -eris, *n.*
wounded, volnerātus, -a, -um.
write, scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus.

INDEX

Ablative, case, 21, *e*.
absolute, 334.
of accompaniment, 120.
of agent, 77.
of cause, 141.
of comparison, 172.
of description or quality, 392.
of manner, 119.
of means or instrument, 48.
of measure of difference, 180.
of place where, 354, 1 and *a*.
of place whence, 354, 3 and *a*.
of separation, 379.
of specification, 157, 158.
of time, 219.
with *opus* and *ūsus*, 380.
with *ūtor*, *fruor*, etc., 366.
-ābus, in dative and ablative, 51, note 2.
Accent, 17.
in contracted gen., and voc. of nouns in *-ius*, 44, *b*.
Accusative case, 21, *d*.
direct object, 30, 385.
double object, 377.
extent of time and space, 221.
subject of infinitive, 306.
Adjectives, first and second declension, 52, 53, 61.
third declension, 145.
irregular (gen. in *-ius*), 200.
as nouns, 243, note 1.
possessive, 241.
predicate, 86, *b*.
compared. See Comparison.
Adverbs, formation, 192.
comparison, 192, 193–195.
Agreement, of adjectives, 54.
appositives, 83.
predicate noun, 85.
relative pronoun, 236.
participles, 312.
verbs, 31.
Apposition, 82.
Assimilation, 267, *a*.
audiō. See Conjugation.

Base. See Root.

capiō. See Conjugation.
causā. See Vocabulary.
Characteristic vowels of the five declensions, 45; of the four conjugations, 103, *a*.
Comparative, declined, 169; special meaning, 178.
Comparison of adjectives, regular, 168, 176, 177; irregular, 184, 186; of adverbs, 192.
Compound verbs, 267.
Conditional sentences, 421–424.
Conjugation:
I, *laudō*, 28, 70, 74, 97, 271, 473.
II, *moneō*, 35, 70, 75, 97, 271, 476.
III, *regō*, 103, 111, 271, 477.
capiō, 107, 111, 271, 478.
IV, *audiō*, 479.
deponent verbs, 485, 486.
irregular verbs, 480–484.
Contraction in gen. of nouns in *-ius* and *-ium*, 44, *b*; in the perf. stem of verbs, 332, note 4.

cum, enclitic with pronouns, 239, note 3, and 241, *b*.
cum, with indicative, 279, *a* and *b*.; with subjunctive, 279, 1 and 2.

Dative, case, 21, *c*.
of indirect object, 40.
of possessor, 92, 93.
of service, 342.
with adjectives, 264.
with compounds, 341.
with intransitive verbs, 360.
with the gerundive, 314.
Declension, definition, 20, *a*.
I declension, 22.
II declension, 44, 60.
III declension, 118, 124, 129, 137.
IV declension, 210.
V declension, 216.
of adjectives, 52, 53, 61, 145–147, 200.
of comparatives, 169.
of pronouns:
personal, 240.
relative, 232.
interrogative, 233.
demonstrative, 245, 252.
Deponent verbs, 485, 486.
Derivative nouns and adjectives, 270.
deus, declined, 457.
domus, declined, 210, *b*; *domī*, 353.
dum, with present indicative, 415; with subjunctive, 415, *b*.

Enclitics, 16.
eō, 482.
esse omitted, 323, note 2.

Fables, 429–436.
Fearing, verbs of, 396.
ferō, 483.
fīō, 484.
Future active participle in principal parts of intransitive verbs, 108, note.

Gender, general rules, 19.
in first declension, 24.
in second declension, 63.
in third declension, 139.
in fourth declension, 211.
in fifth declension, 217.
Genitive case, general meaning, 21, *b*.
descriptive, 136.
limiting, 38 with *a*.
partitive, 188.
possessive, 38 with *a*.
with adjectives, 390.
Gerund, 318, 319.
Gerundive, as attributive adjective, 318, *b*; 319; with *ad*, 319, *a*; as predicate with *sum*, 312, *d*, 313, 3.

i-consonant, 8.
Imperative mood, 294, 298.
Impersonal verbs, 488.
Indefinite pronouns, *quis*, *aliquis*, etc., 402.
Indirect discourse, 307, *a*, *b*.
Indirect questions, 286, 287.
Indirect requests, 398, 399.
Infinitive, uses, 304–306; tenses, 409 and 411.
i-stems, 130, 138.
Iuppiter, declined, 457.

laudō. See Conjugation.
Locative case, form, 352, *a*, *b*; in what words used, 352, *a*, and 354.

mālō, 481.
mīlle, as adjective, 202, *c*; plur. as noun, 202, *c*.
moneō. See Conjugation.

nē with subjunctive, 273, 396.
-ne in questions, 56.
nōlō, conjugation, 481; *nōlī*, with infinitive, 347.
Nominative case, 21, *a*; as subject, 29; as predicate, 85.
nōnne in questions, 56.
Number, singular and plural, 21.
Numerals, 467.

Order of words, 41, *a*, *b*, 68, note 1.

Participles, formation, 311, *a-d*; uses, 312; tenses, 409, 410.
in deponent verbs, 486.
Particles, 20, *c*.
Passive voice, 75, *b* and *d*.
Periphrastic conjugation, 475.
Place where, whither, whence, 354.
plūs, declined, 185.
Possessive adjectives, 241.
possum, 480.
Postpositives, 435, note 14.
Predicate adjectives, 86, *b*, and 87.
nouns, 84, 85.
Principal parts of verbs, 97.
Pronouns, demonstrative, *is*, *īdem*, etc., 245–256.
indefinite, *quis*, *aliquis*, etc., 402.
interrogative, 233.
reflexive, 240, 241, *c*.
relative, 232.
personal, 240.
Pronunciation, 4–7.
Proper names, 112, *a*.
prōsum, 480.
Purpose, expressed by subjunctive, 273, 336.
by gerundive with *ad*, 319, *a*.
by supine, 321.

Quantity, 13.
-que, enclitic, 16; position, footnote 2, p. 83.

Questions, direct, 56.
indirect, 286.

***regō*. See conjugation.**
Roman History, 437–451.
Root, 22, *b*.
***rūs*, 354, 2; *rūrī*, 354, 1.**

sē. See *suī*.
Semi-deponent verbs, 487.
Sequence of tenses, 288–290, 405, 406.
Stem, defined, 22, *b*; in dec. I, 22, *b*; in dec. II, 44; in dec. III, 118, *a*, and 130, 138; in dec. IV, 210; in dec. V, 216.
in conjugation, 103, *a*; perfect, 100, *d*.
Story of Demosthenes, 154.
Story of Deucalion and Pyrrha, 227.
Story of Midas, 262.
Subjunctive, formation, 271, *a-d*; 285, *a*, *b*.
general use, 277.
hortatory subjunctive, 397.
in conditions, 423–425.
indirect discourse, 384.
indirect questions, 287.
indirect requests, 398, 399.
of purpose, 273, 336.
of result, 281.
with *antequam* and *priusquam*, 416, *b*.
with *cum*, 279.
with *dum*, *dōnec*, and *quoad*, 415, *b*.
with verbs of fearing, 396.
suī, declined, 240; distinguished from *is* or *ille*, 241, *c*, and 248, *d*; from *ipse*, 256, note.
sum, 81, 91, and 480.
Supine, 318–321.
suus, formation and meaning, 241; distinguished from *eius* or *illīus*, 241, *c*, and 248, *b*.

Syllables, 10, 15.
Synopsis, 474.
System, present, 99, *b*; perfect, 99, *b*.

Temporal clauses with indicative, 279, *a*; 415, 416, *a*; 419.
with subjunctive, 279, 415, *b*; 416, *b*.
Tenses, of subjunctive, 288–290, 405, 406.
of infinitive, 409, 411.
of participles, 409, 410.
Tense-signs, imperfect, 70, *b*; future, 70, *c*, and 103, *c*; pluperfect and future perfect, 99, *c*.
ut, meaning *as*, or *when*, with the indicative, 419, note.

Vocative case, 21, note; form, 44. *a*, *c*; use, 47.
Volō, 481.
Vowels, 4.

Wishes, 426.

44c
74